# ABU TAALIB

THE FAITHFUL OF QURAYSH

By:

Abdullah al-Khunayzi

Translated by:

Abdullah al-Shahin

Earlier Printed by:

Ansariyan Publications

Reprinted by:

Jafari Propagation Centre

94, Asma Manzil, Room No. 10, Bazar Road,

Opp. Khoja Masjid, Bandra (W),

Mumbai - 400 050.

E-mail: jpcbandra@yahoo.com

Website: jpconline.org

# 

# Index

[Dedication 6](#_Toc284923525)

[This Book 7](#_Toc284923526)

[Foreword 8](#_Toc284923527)

[At the Threshold 11](#_Toc284923528)

[Chapter One : THE ROUTE OF LIFE 54](#_Toc284923529)

[A House 54](#_Toc284923531)

[Personality 66](#_Toc284923532)

[Signs 71](#_Toc284923533)

[The spring 72](#_Toc284923534)

[With the Diviner 73](#_Toc284923535)

[You are blessed 73](#_Toc284923536)

[To Sham 74](#_Toc284923537)

[Marriage 79](#_Toc284923538)

[The Dawn of the Mission 81](#_Toc284923539)

[The First Dawn 81](#_Toc284923540)

[The Day of the Warning 84](#_Toc284923541)

[Jihad 90](#_Toc284923542)

[Ash-She’b and As-Saheefa 107](#_Toc284923543)

[At Dying 120](#_Toc284923544)

[Chapter Two : IN THE CONSCIENCE OF HISTORY 126](#_Toc284923545)

[After The Death 126](#_Toc284923547)

[Pleasant Mention 130](#_Toc284923548)

[The sayings of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) 130](#_Toc284923549)

[The Sayings of Imam Ali (a.s.) 140](#_Toc284923550)

[The Sayings of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) 147](#_Toc284923551)

[The Sayings of the Companions and Others 156](#_Toc284923552)

[A Stop with Ibn Abil Hadeed 169](#_Toc284923553)

[Fabrication and Distortion 182](#_Toc284923554)

[The First Verse 182](#_Toc284923555)

[The Second and the Third Verses 189](#_Toc284923556)

[The Narrators of the First Three Traditions 192](#_Toc284923557)

[The Narrators of the Two Last Traditions 200](#_Toc284923558)

[The Inheritance of Abu Taalib 241](#_Toc284923559)

[The Tradition of az-Zihzah 242](#_Toc284923560)

[The Narrators 244](#_Toc284923561)

[1. The first tradition: 244](#_Toc284923562)

[A Look at the Tradition 252](#_Toc284923563)

[Al-Mo’min (The Faithful) 264](#_Toc284923564)

[The Final Word about the Faithfulness of Abu Taalib (a.s.) 271](#_Toc284923565)

[Biography Of The Author 280](#_Toc284923566)

[His works 281](#_Toc284923567)

[Reference Books 283](#_Toc284923568)

# The Believer of the Pharaoh’s People

In the name of Allah, the Beneficent, the Merciful

And a believing man of Firon’s people, who hid his faith, said: What! Will you slay a man because he says: My Lord is Allah, and indeed he has brought to you clear arguments from your Lord? And if he be a liar, on him will be his lie, and if he be truthful, there will befall you some of that which he threatens you (with); surely Allah does not guide him who is extravagant, a liar.[[1]](#footnote-1)

And he, who believed, said: O my people follow me, I will guide you to the right course; O my people, this life of the world is only a (passing) enjoyment, and surely the hereafter is the abode to settle. Whoever does an evil, he shall not be recompensed (with aught) but the like of it, and whoever does good, whether male or female, and he is a believer, these shall enter the garden, in which they shall be given sustenance without measure. And, o my people! How is it that I call you to salvation and you call me to the fire? You call on me that I should disbelieve in Allah and associate with Him that of which I have no knowledge, and I call you to the Mighty, the most Forgiving; No doubt that what you call me to has no title to be called to in this world, nor in the hereafter, and that our turning back is to Allah, and that the extravagant are the inmate of the fire; So you shall remember what I say to you, and I entrust my affair to Allah, Surely Allah sees the servants. So Allah protected him from the evil (consequences) of what they planned, and the most evil punishment overtook Firon’s people.[[2]](#footnote-2)

# Dedication

To you; O the Prophet of humanity!

To you; O the hero of Islam![[3]](#footnote-3)

To both of you, who are but one soul!

To your exaltedness I offer this book, which is the least effort of him, who failed yet to support the religion ... the religion to which you had devoted yourselves ... the religion, to which the history had been unfair ... the religion, which the historians had wronged.

To you I offer it hoping to be near to Allah and to you in a day where nothing will be of use except that who comes to Allah with a heart free from evil.

28/8/1374 A.H.

22/4/1995 A.D.

Abdullah al-Khunayzi

# This Book

I have spent of my life, in order to write this book, a year or about a year since the first letter I put on the paper until the last point of it.[[4]](#footnote-4) During this period of time there was much search and research. Also there was some of time not so little elapsed without researching or writing a thing. Besides this and that...the time assigned to this book was not more than an hour a day.

What I mentioned here was not so important and I didn't intend to but I wanted to refer to that I visited Lebanon in the summer of 1956 and I presented this book to my friend Professor Boless Salama to write a foreword to it... a mere foreword that was to be away from any personal relations and not to pay any attention to other than the book itself. Upon this we agreed and he wrote this foreword, in which he criticized the book and referred to its defect concerning the linguistic usage.

The impartial criticism didn't fruit but good.

Hence I found enough time to examine the book again. I discovered some mistakes and I reworded some points. I quoted something else from the resources I referred to. I added something to some subjects that I thought it was required to show the truth fully especially in the chapter of (At the threshold).

Before this and that I don't pretend that I am infallible and perfect. This is my utmost trying and I hope it will achieve the aim. If there are some defects, they are definitely unintended.

The content of Allah is our intent.

27/5/1377 A.H, - 20/12/1957 A.H.

The Author

# 

# Foreword

By: Professor Boless Salama

Between al-Qateef[[5]](#footnote-5) and me there is a connection. The cause of it is the epic of (Eid al-Ghadeer), which I have written about Imam Abul Hasan (Ali), and this book is about the father of Imam Ali (a.s.). I have talked in the epic about the virtue of Abu Taalib, the notable sheikh of Quraysh,[[6]](#footnote-6) who secured the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) against his enemies and now I am just to preface this book with a swift word talking about the book itself.

The author began his book with showing the crimes of the Umayyads and refuting the accusations they ascribed to the Prophet’s family. Neither he failed nor became his pen confused. And it was no wonder because whoever took the side of Abu Turab[[7]](#footnote-7) would be powerful.

The son of the castle of al-Qateef knew that he was in a fort, against which the enemies were so active but they always were the weak and the fort was steadfast along the time.

It was well-known that the author arranged the accusations in a skilled way and he exaggerated them in order to show their atrocity and to show the ugliness of the lies fabricated against the Prophet’s family. In spite of his rush, the enthusiasm of the youth and the leap of his pen, nothing escaped him to follow the sayings of the great historians and the masters of Hadith and eloquence.

I think that the preface “At the threshold” was the defending-attacking front. The author thought to gather the fabricated lies, which collapsed easily and to show the opponent as band of Negro pigmies to let the greatness of Imam Ali (a.s.) shine like the light when the clouds dispelled.

As for the chapter following the preface, which was sayings, He was not to be blamed for that because he wanted to pave the way for showing the personality of Imam Ali (a.s.). He brought this personality out as the axis of Quraysh and it was really so.

How nice it would be if he used a language better than the elegant style he used in describing the different scenes of the life of the man (Abu Taalib). His eloquence didn’t ripen yet like most of the rising youth, but this branch, which grew on a large tree that gave much to the Arabic language, promise to give ripe fruits in the near future Inshallah.

The author did well when he showed the personality of Sayyid al-Batha’ ibn Shaybatul Hamd[[8]](#footnote-8) and cleared it, then he spread it throughout the chapters of the book and so the virtue of the guardian of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) grew side by side with the growth of the Prophet himself. The orphan (Muhammad) lived under the wing of his uncle (Abu Taalib) when child and young. When the sun of the orphan shone, the uncle walked in its light. He was so loyal to his nephew; the son of Abdullah. He strived to sacrifice his money, his sons and himself for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

In order to be fair to the author, we had to acknowledge that he was so skilled in his analysis. What confirmed this was his choosing and analysis of the verses said by Abu Taalib (a.s.) that proved his faith, although he (the author) criticized the poets, whom the poetic license led them to say what they didn’t want. He pleaded with a saying of one of them: (They may find something beautiful even though it isn’t).

But the virtue of the poetry appeared in what he chose of the verses of the father of Abu Turab in the chapter of “Ash-She’b and as-Saheefa”[[9]](#footnote-9) where Abu Taalib (a.s.) said:

They hope we give up but they will get nothing,

We strike and stab with our sharp swords.

... To the last of his verses, in which the firm faith, the burning heart and the furious sword mixed together.

Our friend didn’t miss the scientific classification in his book. You would see him detailing the evidences of Abu Taalib’s virtue during his life, when he was about to die and when he was dead. Then the author talked about what happened after his death. He proved the witness of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), Imam Ali (a.s.) and the Prophet’s family about the faith of Abu Taalib.

I thought that if the author had become a lawyer, he would have been among the leading group. He had good qualities of comparing and concluding. He could easily move from the premises to the conclusions and this would make him successful.

After all I am not to study and analyse because this is the job of the readers and the critics but just to preface a word about the book. The author could arrive at the aim he approached to; he researched, analysed, refuted and defended.

The many advantages of the book might intercede for the few defects occurred in the wording but the form wouldn’t affect the essence. In this book there were many pearls and a few shells.

I think that in saying my opinion about the book I am nearer to fair severity than to flattering. Yes, between me and al-Qateef there is friendship but the truth is worthier to be said.

Boless Salama

Beirut

25/2/1376 A.H.

# At the Threshold

I am now before a man’s biography, which the fancies played a great role to distort. The mercenary pens deviated from the way of rightfulness and threw a thick cover over the truth, exactly like what they did to every clear and shiny truth, just to defame and distort this great personality.

I am before a man, whose biography left prominent lines in history. He was one of the mujahidin, who stood in the first front. He was one of those, who supported the true principles and supported the prophets and the guides of the humanity.

A man, who supported the straight belief while all the hearts turned aside from him and all the eyes, looked askance at him. Those hearts and eyes scattered grudge, quivered with serious enmity, warned of resistance and disobedience to put out this fresh burning torch ... some hands stretched to do away with this (new Prophet), whose light had cured the sore-eyes.

But this strong fort (Abu Taalib) stood up to them towering, showing his powerfulness and challenging their reckless will. And then they turned back empty-handed. The grudge increased in the hearts against this supporter but it was as the grudge of the horses against the bridles.

A man, who watered Islam when it was a seed in a barren land, guarded it against the wind when it was soft and tender and then took care of it when it was young. It grew and became strong. The light spread from it. No enemy could achieve an aim until the loyal guard of this flowing spring left to the better world and until the flowing spring dried.

He was a man, who had a standing in Islam and left a fine impression and an eternal virtue. But the fancies wanted the eyes to be away from him or to look at him with a wrongful look. They tried their best to fabricate lies against him in order to distort the truth and to cover the virtue.

The age of the caliphate elapsed and it was full of the virtues of Abu Taalib; the great man of Islam. The age recorded the exploits of this man and the benevolent hands of him to give him some of his due.

Then the age of monarchy and tyranny came. This illegal authority wouldn’t last except by defaming the hero of Islam, Imam Ali (a.s.), because the tyrants had extorted the legal right of Ali and his sons and so the biography of his father was one side among others the authority tried the best to destroy thinking that it might destroy the personality of Imam Ali (a.s.) and attempting to turn the people’s attention away from the matter of extorting his right of the caliphate.

The rulers began to hire those of the filthy consciences and the opportunist hearts, who didn’t know a meaning of a virtue nor an end of vice. They would sell their consciences, break the covenants and promises, change the truth into falsehood, show the falsehood as true and sell their religion for a stolen dinar or an extorted property just to achieve their low intents, to satisfy their filthy consciences and to obtain the contentment of the rulers.

Such people wouldn’t be able to live except under the darkness because the bat wouldn’t fly during the brightness of the daylight. They wished the night to be so long so that the stage would be free for them alone.

The fancies played the role, changed the course of history and wanted to overthrow the present situation so they exploited the mercenaries to fabricate traditions according to the wishes of the rulers until fabricating traditions became sellable in the market of the state at those days. Many fabricators, whose hearts were full of aftermaths of the pre-Islamic age, began their attempts to destroy the religion in order to satisfy the rulers,

This black market was based upon three things; hiding the virtues of Imam Ali (a.s.), fabricating traditions against him and turning the Quranic verses concerning him to the others and turning the others to him and thirdly ascribing fabricated virtues to the other companions.

The (merchant) Mo’awiya[[10]](#footnote-10) encouraged this market to work for the benefit of him. It was the cornerstone of his rule. He followed every means to strengthen his rule especially when he saw the people believe whatever he fabricated for their faith was flickering and the religion didn’t reach farther than their tongues. Their old party spirit didn’t accept the new religion yet, the fancies were still ready in the chests, the personal hopes prepared to leap and the gold of Mo’awiya reigned in the hearts.

Those of the black aims and bad fancies followed this way because they found that it satisfied their greed.

The opportunist Mo’awiya found them as a tractable mount so he put those heavy loads upon their backs. They obeyed whatever he wanted and when he didn’t want, they themselves tried to flatter him.

He wrote to his governors: (We will never forgive anyone, who narrates something about the virtues of Abu Turab or any of his family).[[11]](#footnote-11)

The orators hurried to respond. They began to curse Ali (a.s.) on every minbar throughout the state. They declared their quittance from him and began to defame him and his family. The minbars, upon which Imam Ali (a.s.) was cursed, were more than seventy thousands.

The public responded to the orators and believed them. You may estimate how many men sitting before each minbar of those seventy thousands and how many women and children were behind each one of those men, who certainly would listen to his sayings as he listened to the orator’s sayings. Their flesh would grow with those fabrications and their blood would flow in the veins with them.

Then Mo’awiya wrote to his governors: (Don’t accept any witness of the followers of Ali or his family)[[12]](#footnote-12) to tighten the grip around the Shia, to disgrace them and to let them be liable to the oppressions of their enemies and to be a target for their arrows. Then Mo’awiya assigned great gifts and high positions for whomever narrated traditions ascribing virtues to Usmaan and his companions.

Once again he wrote to his governors: (Criticizing Usmaan increased and spread in every country and every side. When this book reaches you, invite people to narrate traditions talking about the virtues of the companions and the first caliphs. Don’t let any tradition narrated by any Muslim about the virtues of Abu Turab unless you fabricated same virtues to be ascribed to the companions. This will make me delighted and will refute the virtues of Abu Turab and will be harder to them (the Shia) than to mention the virtues and favors of Usmaan).[[13]](#footnote-13)

As soon as the book reached the hearings, the imaginations flew to invent news and to create traditions, some of which ascribed untrue virtues to the companions and the others defamed Ali (a.s.) and this was the main aim of the fabricated traditions.

We are not in need of saying or referring to the value of this muchness of traditions whether those that ascribed untrue virtues to the companions or those that defamed Ali (a.s.). They were full of excessiveness, ridiculous ignorance, deadly grudge and malicious enmity. Neither these traditions nor those had any value and they wouldn’t resist the hammer of criticism for a moment. They were born illegally and built upon a base of salt so as soon as moisture reached it, it melted.

But the situation of the ruling authority at that time and the decrees issued by the (merchant) Mo’awiya were the active cause of activating this market, whose goods didn’t face any recession. Mo’awiya looked forward to gain target (material) benefits from this market at the expense of the religious and moral principles. Those fabricated traditions were lectured from upon the minbars and were given to the teachers to be learnt by the children, who memorized them as they memorized the verses of the Holy Quran or better.

Hence those traditions became more spreading, more current and more effective and on the other side the profit would be more inclusive that each of the factory keeper, the exporter and the importer would get his share according to the commercial language. So the creator of the tradition, the speaker, the teacher and whoever surrounded them would share in the profit.

The (great merchant) Mo’awiya wrote to his governors throughout the state: (See if it is proved that someone loves Ali then you are to remove his name from the register of the treasury and to omit his livelihood).[[14]](#footnote-14)

He wasn’t satisfied with this severe pursuit, flagrant challenge and this economical war until he wrote another book saying: (You are to torture whomever you accuse of supporting those people (Ali and his family) and to tear down his house).[[15]](#footnote-15)

And thus he passed the blockade much more than before. He threatened every one showing a bit of love to this man and his family. Merely showing a bit of affection to these people by anyone would make that one face a bitter war. He would never be forgiven. He would be liable to every kind of aggression. His name would be omitted from the register of the divan. He would be prevented from his livelihood. He wouldn’t be equal to the other people. He had no right of option. He didn’t have to think with his mind. He would have to be unfree puppet driven without will or thinking. He would live without dignity or sense of honour, surrounded with danger, waiting for torture or for his house to be demolished upon his head at any moment.

Mo’awiya wouldn’t be satisfied with issuing those unjust orders, which killed the social justice, but he chose the ones, who would carry out those unjust orders. He appointed his illegitimate brother Ziyad bin Abeeh[[16]](#footnote-16) as the governor of Iraq to increase the pressure against the Shia because Ziyad knew them well for he had been near them before the grudge reigned in his heart.[[17]](#footnote-17)

Mo’awiya used every means to sell and buy these goods. He was that opportunist dealer, who didn’t leave any opportunity unless he would exploit it for his private interest selfishly.

Bribes, gifts and positions were insignificant prices to buy with them many consciences put forward in that black market! So it was easy for him to conclude a deal every day to buy a conscience, to sell a covenant and to do away with a belief.

Since the aim of all that was to fight Imam Ali (a.s.) to extort his right and to sit on the throne, so he would direct his action towards Ali himself. He would commit everything in order to achieve him aim even incredible things. He wouldn’t refrain from announcing among the people of Sham,[[18]](#footnote-18) who didn’t differentiate between the she-camel and the he-camel, that Imam Ali (a.s.) didn’t offer prayer and that it was he, who shed Usmaan’s blood and that they (the people of Sham) had to revenge Usmaan on this blood shedder.

No faith, no morals and no human qualities would make this man (Mo’awiya), who was free from all those good qualities; refrain from following his prevailing fancy. He gave free reign to his fancy and let it play its unruly role, diversify in committing abominable actions and no one to restraint, exceed in fabricating and no one to deny, exaggerate in lying and no one to prevent and pride upon unrightfulness and no one to be angry!

If someone was impudent, he would do whatever he liked!

He called for Samara bin Jundub,[[19]](#footnote-19) who was one of the traders of Hadith, and gave him one hundred thousand dirhams in order to fabricate a tradition showing that the following Quranic verses referred to Ali: ‘And among men is he whose speech about the life of this world causes you to wonder, and he calls on Allah to witness as to what is in his heart, yet he is the most violent of adversaries. And when he turns back, he runs along in the land that he may cause mischief in it and destroy the tilth and the stock, and Allah does not love mischief-making.[[20]](#footnote-20) and that the following verse referred to Abdur Rahman bin Muljam:[[21]](#footnote-21) ‘And among men is he who sells himself to seek the pleasure of Allah.’[[22]](#footnote-22)

Samara might find that this price was not enough for distorting one verse so how about two verses! Mo’awiya began to bargain with him. He offered him another hundred thousand dirhams... but all that was just a price for distorting one verse. They went on bargaining until they agreed upon four hundred thousand dirhams and then Samara narrated this tradition.[[23]](#footnote-23)

And thus with the wealth of Allah the saints of Allah were fought, with the wealth of Islam, Islam was attacked and with the wealth of the Muslims, the sanctity of their high belief was distorted.

Mo’awiya thought of hiring some people to fabricate traditions defaming Ali so he chose some of the Prophet’s companions and some of their successors, who were respected by the public and had sanctity because of their companionship with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), in order to be believed when fabricating traditions.[[24]](#footnote-24)

Among those, with whom he concluded a bargain, were Abu Hurayra, Amr bin al-Aas, the adulterer al-Mugheera bin Shu’ba and Orwa bin az-Zubayr.[[25]](#footnote-25) They created odious news to defame Imam Ali (a.s.) and to declare acquaintance from him in return for bribes given to them by Mo’awiya to satisfy their greed and to encourage the others to do the same as ibn Abil Hadeed, the author of Sharh Nahjul Balagha said.

Every one of them tried his best to fabricate traditions. Az-Zohri mentioned a tradition narrated by Orwa bin Zubayr saying: “Aaesha (the Prophet’s wife) said to me: “Once I was with the Prophet when al-Abbas and Ali came. The Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: O Aaesha, these two men will die unbelievingly.”

There was another tradition narrated by him also saying that the Prophet had said to Aaesha: “If you like to look at two men of Hell, look at these coming men.” Aaesha said: I looked and found that they were al-Abbas and Ali!”[[26]](#footnote-26)

Amr bin al-Aas, who was Mo’awiya’s friend and partner in his doings, narrated a tradition that he had heard the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) saying: “The family of Abu Taalib are not my guardians but my guardian is Allah and the good believers.”[[27]](#footnote-27)

When Abu Hurayra came to Iraq with Mo’awiya in the year of al-jama’a[[28]](#footnote-28) (the unity), he came to the Mosque of Kufa and was surprised with the great crowd of people, who had come to meet him. He knelt on his knees and hit his bald head many times saying: “O people of Iraq, do you pretend that I ascribe lies to Allah and his apostle to burn myself in Hell?[[29]](#footnote-29) By Allah, I had heard the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) saying: “Every Prophet had a sanctum and my sanctum is in Medina; from Eer to Thour.[[30]](#footnote-30) Whoever corrupts in it, a curse of Allah, the Angels and all the people will be upon him.” And I swear by Allah that Ali had done corruption in it.” When this saying reached Mo’awiya, he gifted Abu Hurayra and appointed him as the wali of Medina.

When Hurayz bin Usmaan was dying he mentioned Ali to end his life with this saying: “It was he, who violated the sanctum of the Prophet until it was about to collapse.”[[31]](#footnote-31) It was not strange of him after his saying: “The Prophet (s.a.w.a.), when he was about to die, ordered that Ali’s hand was to be cut.”[[32]](#footnote-32)

We don’t know! Perhaps Ali was, according to Hurayz’s opinion, one of the nightly thieves as the dissolute king al-Waleed bin Abdul Malik said when he mentioned Ali: “Allah may curse him. He was a thief and a son of a thief.” The people became astonished at him grammatical mistakes and his ascribing thieving to Imam Ali (a.s.) and said: “We don’t know which of them is more astonishing.”[[33]](#footnote-33)

And thus those people tried to diminish those high tops to the lowest slopes!

We may ask Hurayz about his thought of Abu Bakr, the first caliph of the Muslims after the Prophet (s.a.w.a.), when he didn’t carry out the order of the Prophet to cut Ali’s hand!

That war was kindled by Mo’awiya. He supplied its fuel with the monies of Islam and the Muslims. He extorted the monies from their possessors and gave them to others in return for a tradition they fabricated, a virtue they created and ascribed to so and so, a true virtue they hid or a Quranic verse they distorted (... to alter the words from their places...).

Besides this war there was another war. It was the pursuit of everyone, whose heart had a bit of love to Ali or his tongue murmured in praising him or mentioning him favourably. Whoever was found to be of those would be given the option to choose between the sword and the acquaintance from Ali.

Hujr bin Adi and his companions had showed the great example of sacrifice for the sake of the deep-rooted belief and the true faith, which would never be bent before the wind or be frightened by the assaulting sword.

Mo’awiya, who bought the rule of the Muslims and changed the caliphate into a hereditary monarchy, was not of that kind that his excessiveness of abusing Ali would be prevented by anything. He wanted it to be a lasting heresy recorded by the time every day with dark letters to be fixed in the history of this perfidious tyrant.

It was mentioned that some of the Umayyads advised Mo’awiya and said to him: “You have got what you want. Don’t you stop cursing this man (Ali)?” He said: “No, by Allah, until the child grows and the adult becomes old with it and until no one will mention a virtue of him.”[[34]](#footnote-34)

Mo’awiya wasn’t satisfied with cursing Ali but he exceeded to degrade the sanctity of the Prophet and his prophecy.

Mutrif bin al-Mugheera bin Shu’ba said: “I came with my father to Mo’awiya. My father talked with Mo’awiya and then he came to tell about him. He became astonished about him. One night he came and refused to have his dinner. I found that he was very sad. I thought that something might have happened to us or to our business. I wait for a moment and then I asked him: Why are you unhappy tonight? He said: O my son! I came from the most malicious and the most unfaithful one. I said: What happened? He said: I said to him (Mo’awiya) when we were alone: “O amirul mo’mineen, you have achieved you aims. Why don’t you do justice and good? You have become so old. You may pay attention to your brothers of the Hashemites and take care of them. By Allah, they have nothing today that you may fear!” He said to me: “How far! The man of Taym[[35]](#footnote-35) ruled and wronged and did what he did. By Allah, as soon as he died, his mention died with him. People may remember him and just say Abu Bakr. Then the man of Adi[[36]](#footnote-36) ruled for ten years. As soon as he died, his mention died with him. People may remember him and say Umar. Then our brother Usmaan ruled. No one had lineage like him. He did what he did and people did to him what they did. As soon as he died, his mention and what happened to him died with him. But the man of Hashem;[[37]](#footnote-37) everyday his name is announced five times (I witness that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)). So which thing will last after this? May be buried their mention!”[[38]](#footnote-38)

Could we say anything after this saying of Mo’awiya, whom the mention of the great Prophet (s.a.w.a.) on the minarets hurt him bitterly and pierced his mind like the arrow whereas he controlled the affairs of the Muslims and extorted their rights under the name of the Islamic caliphate, which he changed into unjust monarchy?

How could we be astonished at a man or a saying that made al-Mugheera, who was an adulterer and perfidious,[[39]](#footnote-39) so angry to a degree that his son noticed the signs of his anger as if something important happened to them or to their business although that nothing would affect al-Mugheera other than deposing him from a position or losing some money? But in spite of his wickedness he couldn’t tolerate the blasphemy of Mo’awiya and his defaming the Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

We don’t have to waste the time in tracking Mo’awiya’s sayings and doings, with which he resisted the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and contradicted him intendedly and that would make Mo’awiya out of the sphere of Islam. Islam is belief, saying and doing. Mo’awiya contradicted the all without being satisfied with one side away from the others.

If we follow the pen to track everything, we will go far away from the subject but we think it is better to let the reader refer to al-Ghadeer vol.10, which has a wonderful conclusive discussion. It mentions many of Mo’awiya’s breaches, which he committed intendedly and insistingly with bitter challenge and sarcastic mockery. The reasons behind that were latent spite, inherited polytheism, opportunist policy and barefaced enmity that he had inherited from the Umayyad house and from the polluted pre-Islamic environment against the honoured Hashemite house with its great guiding leaders and chiefs.

That Dark Age passed to be replaced with a darker one. An age came and cursing Ali became a rubric, which the fancies tried the best to made firm in the hearts. If once the public speaker forgot to curse Ali (a.s.), he would be taken from every side by shouting and crying of people: The Sunna! He would know then what a mistake he did and what a Sunna he left!

Mo’awiya had engraved in every heart of every Umayyad, whether in lineage or in tendency, this word, which would make the mountains crack and the heavens split, with which the speakers had to end their speeches of the Fridays: “O Allah, Abu Turab unbeliever in Your religion and kept people away from You way, so curse him with lethal curses and torture him with painful torture!”[[40]](#footnote-40)

It was not removed from the hearts or forgotten by the mouths except during the reign of Umar bin Abdul Aziz, the ascetic caliph.

But between the two ages there were many shameful sins and crimes and dark events that left bad consequences, changed the history and darkened the bright face of rightfulness.

The age of the perfidious tyrant, al-Hajjaj-the student of Mo’awiya-would never be forgotten at all. It was full of incredible crimes and calamities. He supported the oppressive construction of Mo’awiya and added to it many bricks that raised it high. Al-Hajjaj let his sword exceed with the necks of the Shia. He killed so many people patiently. He killed people without any guilt but just for suspicion and accusation. He committed crimes that were like the legends!

It was but a pray of Imam Ali (a.s.) when he prayed to Allah against the people of Iraq.[[41]](#footnote-41)

Al-Hajjaj was full of grudge against Imam Ali (a.s.) and he satisfied his filthy conscience, fury grudge and serious spite by cursing Ali and ordering people to curse him as his teacher Mo’awiya did before.

One day a man met al-Hajjaj in his way and said to him: “O emir, my parents had wronged me when they named me Ali. I am poor and needy. I am in need of your help.” This begging provoked al-Hajjaj’s latent spite and the dregs of his mean soul. He changed the man’s name and gave him a job.[[42]](#footnote-42)

Al-Hajjaj wanted to reward Abdullah bin Hani for he had participated in his battles. He decided to marry him to the daughter of Asma’ bin Kharija, the chief of the tribe Fazara and to the daughter of Saeed bin Qays al-Hamadani. He threatened the first with the whip and the second with the sword if they refused so they obeyed and married their daughters to Abdullah bin Hani unwillingly. What a legal marriage the emir of the Muslims performed!

After that al-Hajjaj began to remind Abdullah of what favors he did him. And suddenly this man stood up in front of al-Hajjaj to defend his favors by saying: “O Emir! Don’t say that. We also have virtues that no one of the Arabs has.” Al-Hajjaj said: “What are they?” He said: “Amirul mo’mineen Abdul Malik was never abused among us at all.” Al-Hajjaj said: “By Allah, it is a virtue.” He said: “Seventy men of us participated with Mo’awiya in the battle of Siffeen and no one of us supported Ali except one and he was, as I know, a bad man.” Al-Hajjaj said: “By Allah, it is a virtue.” He said: “No one of us was asked to abuse and to curse Ali unless he did and added to Ali, Hasan, Husain and their mother Fatima.” Al-Hajjaj said: “By Allah, it is a virtue.” He said: “No one of the Arabs has beauty and prettiness like us.” But al-Hajjaj didn’t consider this as a virtue because the sayer had so an ugly smallpoxed face, a swollen head, a slant mouth and a squint in his eye.[[43]](#footnote-43) This face was an opposite evidence for the virtue that al-Hajjaj stained to offer. He laughed and said: “O Abu Hani, as for this, please let it aside!”[[44]](#footnote-44)

Mo’awiya reached what he had hoped. Abusing and cursing Ali continued as a heresy, with which the child grew up and the adult became old, but he couldn’t distort the essence of the truth as he wished for. (Allah will perfect His light, though the unbelievers may be averse).

The sinful successors of those wicked ancestors came and diversified in creating heresies as their mean consciences wished.

Khalid bin Abdullah al-Qissri ascended the minbar in Iraq, when he was the emir during the reign of Hisham bin Abdul Malik, and cursed Ali by saying: “O Allah, curse Ali bin Abu Taalib bin Abdul Muttalib bin Hashem, the son-in-law of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and the father of Hasan and Husain.” Then he came to people drunkenly, where he created a new heresy when he cursed Ali in a way that couldn’t be interpreted to refer to other than him because he used full names and he asked people: “Did I surnamed?”[[45]](#footnote-45)

Another time he repeated the same odious image of Mo’awiya when he dared to defame the great Prophet (s.a.w.a.). He followed the same heresies of Mo’awiya, walked after his deviation and in that vicious soil, in which the cursed tree-the Umayyads-grew, he was brought up and was enslaved.

Another time, after cursing Ali in his speech to the people in one Friday and when he wasn’t satisfied with that unless he would prejudice the Prophet, he said: “By Allah, the Prophet employed him (Ali) and he knew well what kind of man he was but because he was his companions!”

Do you see how he dared to criticize the Prophet, the holiness of the mission and the infallibility of the prophecy? He considered the Prophet as an ordinary man acting according to his passion and fancy without caring for rightfulness and truthfulness. This was enough to drive the sayer out of the sphere of Islam. He defamed the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) just like what Mo’awiya had done before. Saeed bin al-Musayyab, who was famous of his deviation from Ali, was present. He felt sleepy for a moment when Khalid said his saying. He opened his eyes and he was terrified. He asked: “Woe unto you! What did this malicious say? I saw the tomb split and the Prophet said: “You are lying, o you the enemy of Allah!”[[46]](#footnote-46)

With these ignominious deeds and with this obscene style, which was far away from morals and humanity, they resisted the rightness, which they saw that it would prevent them from achieving their mean pleasures and would prevent them from the seats of the rule but definitely they would hold the seats of Hell!

History is full of such shameful deeds and if one wants to track the, he will be tried. But it is painful when you find that the leaders of the umma, who were called amirul mo’mineen[[47]](#footnote-47) or the caliphs of the Prophet sometimes, were either freed captives, hypocrites, stealers, adulteress, drunkard, deviator or dissolute... to the end of this empty circle of the corruption of those mean walis.

Mo’awiya the feed captive was amirul mo’mineen, Yazeed the drunkard was the caliph of the Prophet, Marwan the deviant and the son of the deviant was the caliph of the Muslims...until the turn of the tyrant Abdul Malik, Yazeed the deficient and Marwan the donkey.

Then we come back to find that these false sayings, fabricated traditions, distorted speeches and biases interpretations come out from lips saying: ‘We heard the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) saying...’

We searched for those of that falseness and fabrication and what a painful thing it was! We found that it was them, who were called the Prophet’s companions. This companionship was considered as an impregnable fence surrounding this falseness and guarding that fabrication and a protector covering those bad deeds and denied doings!

Whoever tried to cross this fence or to remove that cover would be accused of trespassing the rightness, talking about the Prophet’s companions with what was impermissible, being envious trying to deny their right of sacred companionship, whereas the truth was that those people had lowered themselves to the level of the stupid beats and they demolished with their own hands that high structure, destroyed with their picks the fence, which was constructed to protect them and tore with their fingers those ragged covers, behind which they had committed crimes and treasons away from the eyes thinking that the eyes were sleepy and inattentive.

They did whatever they could and received in return for their doings their fees from the wealth of the Muslims and the umma. Didn’t they know that their graves would be set to fire, their foreheads and sides would be branded and their skins would be changed into others after being burnt?

They got that money, which was scattered by the rulers, who didn’t care but for their thrones. In order to save their thrones, they used every means and spent every thing indifferently without paying any attention except to the results whatever the means was as long as the purpose would justify the means. But in spite of all that, they were considered as the leaders of the Muslims and the caliphs of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.)!

In this way they brought the umma to the abyss of deviation, finishing off the live conscience, mocking at the justice, opposing the rightness, devouring what was forbidden listening to lying and caring for nothing but their selfishness and greed. This one told lies, fabricated and distorted just to take in return for his (business) stolen gold or extorted silver as shameful bribes and that one paid openhandedly and it was not but a mean bait in order to control the rule and to humiliate the umma with all kinds of torture, disgrace and punishment.

Between this and that there were shed bloods, extorted rights, violated dignities, spread injustice, open sins and extreme poverty. All that was an inevitable result of that unjust Dark Age,

They passed away after they had foisted into the religion what they liked and ravaged and corrupted according to their mean fancies, obscene desires and beastly greed.

They passed away but the people, who came after them, accepted what was left and considered it as true but if they pondered a little and used their minds to search for the truth, they would discover the defects and the disadvantages of those ones, which might not trouble the clearness of the sphere and might not blacken the bright face of the religion.

They passed away after soiling the face of life and blackening the history. They passed away to be succeeded with others, who complicated the situation and added to the sins what firmed their structure. Among those successors were some, who weren’t satisfied with that falsehood but they exceeded in error and fabrication for there was no deterrent of religion, no watch of conscience, no restrainer from violating the rightness and no fear from punishment.

I expected to find much many lies and fabrications against Imam Ali (a.s.) since the age of Mo’awiya and throughout the ages of the kings of the cursed tree (the Umayyads) as it was called by the Holy Quran and the fabrications created by the mercenaries and those, who followed the Umayyads or held the same Umayyad tendency but I did never expect that as-Suyooti might tell of such a fabrication when he talked about the reason of the revelation of the following Holy Quranic verse: ‘O you who believe! do not go near prayer when you are intoxicated until you know (well) what you say.’[[48]](#footnote-48)

He mentioned this fabricated lie and he doubled his error by ascribing it to Imam Ali (a.s.) himself. He pretended that Imam Ali (a.s.), Allah forbid, had said: “One day Abdur Rahman bin Auf invited us. He served us some food and then he served us some wine. The wine affected our minds. When the time of the prayer came, they advanced me to lead them in offering the prayer. I recited (the sura wrongly): ‘Say: O unbelievers! I do not worship that which you worship and we worship what you worship’ then Allah revealed: ‘O you who believe! do not go near prayer when you are intoxicated until you know (well) what you say.’[[49]](#footnote-49)

We don’t want to argue with as-Suyooti about the source of the tradition he mentioned or about the fabrication itself, which had contradiction in the different ways of the narration or about distorting the name of that who offered the prayer and inserting the name of Imam Ali (a.s.) in this shameful way in spite of that some of those, who mentioned the tradition, ignored the name and didn’t mention Ali and some others mentioned names of other companions...

We don’t want to argue about this fabrication in any way but we just want to refer to its apparent collapse and contradiction to the clear Quranic verses and prophetic traditions talking about Imam Ali (a.s.).

Drinking wine was contradictory to the verse of purification ‘Allah only desires to keep away the uncleanness from you, O people of the House! and to purify you a (thorough) purifying.’[[50]](#footnote-50) which there was no any doubt or suspicion that Imam Ali (a.s.) was included in, in fact he was the first, to whom the verse was applied. Drinking wine was also contradictory to the verse of supplication ‘Say: Come let us call our sons and your sons and our women and your women and our selves and your selves, then let us be earnest in prayer, and pray for the curse of Allah on the liars.’[[51]](#footnote-51) that made Imam Ali (a.s.) as the same as the Prophet himself.

On the other hand it contradicted the certain facts of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s conduct, which no two would disagree upon. He had never been a polytheist since he had come out to existence so how would it be possible that he distorted the verse by reciting ‘We worship what you worship’ whereas it addressed the unbelievers?

We don’t have to discuss such a shameful collapse with more than to point to it remotely because if we want to track and detail, it won’t be possible to get to the aim through this book.

But we have to point out that someone mentioned the reason of the revelation of this verse and mentioned a person, who had offered the prayer with the drunken people but someone came to hide the name of that great companion to insert instead of him the name of Ali without fearing the end of fabricating lies and without caring about what would harm the Prophet when it harmed Imam Ali (a.s.) because they were but one self according to the Quranic verse.

Some of the interpreters said, when interpreting the verse, that the intoxication referred to by the verse was not the intoxication of wine but the intoxication of sleepiness.[[52]](#footnote-52)

We track something of what these bad successors of those bad ancestors created to widen the abyss of separation and alienation among the Muslims. Their fabricated lies weren’t based upon any bit of truthfulness, rightfulness or good will.

We track what they wrote unthinkingly to be astonished at al-Ghazzaali when he answered someone asking him about cursing Yazeed.

The person said: “Is he, who curses Yazeed openly, to be considered as a transgressor against the religion? Is it permissible to pray to Allah to have mercy upon him (Yazeed)?”

Al-Ghazzaali answered: “Whatever curses him will be transgressor and disobedient because cursing a Muslim, even cursing the animals, is impermissible. It was mentioned that the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had forbidden that. The sanctity of the Muslim is greater than the sanctity of the Holy Kaaba according to the saying of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.). Yazeed was a good Muslim and his order of killing al-Husain (a.s.) or his contentment about it was not true. As long as that was certain so it was impermissible to suspect him of it. Mistrusting a Muslim is haram. If the truth was not well-known, trusting the Muslim would be obligatory, besides that killing was not unbelieving but it was disobeying. Praying Allah (sw.t.) to have mercy upon him was permissible and it was desirable because he was one of the believers according to our saying in the prayer: O Allah, forgive the believing men and the believing women!”[[53]](#footnote-53)

Do you see the contradiction and the fraud behind it? Distrusting the Muslim was haram, killing al-Husain (a.s.) was not unbelieving and the sanctity of the Muslim was greater than the sanctity of the Holy Kaaba according to the Prophet’s saying! Cursing Yazeed was haram but al-Husain (a.s.) had no sanctity, there was no respect to his blood and no value of what the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said about him! Killing al-Husain (a.s.) would not affect the dignity of Yazeed’ the caliph of the Prophet and amirul mo’mineen! It didn’t harm his faith! He was included in the saying of the prayer: ‘O Allah, forgive the believing men and the believing women!’

How odd saying and what a trespass against the truth it was! How warmly al-Ghazzaali believed in the faith of Yazeed and how zealously he defended Yazeed, the drunkard, the dissolute, the reveller, the reckless, the shameless...!

But killing al-Husain (a.s.) by Yazeed was the first motive of the disgraceful situation of al-Ghazzaali, who defended Yazeed so defiantly.

It seemed that al-Ghazzaali had many situations towards defending the imamate of Yazeed bin Mo’awiya. He repeated his situations according to the need or with no need. He said in another situation: “If it is said: Is it permissible to curse Yazeed because he killed al-Husain (a.s.) or he ordered of killing him and the same was about cursing him because it was impermissible to ascribe a grave sin to a Muslim without inquiry.”[[54]](#footnote-54)

Again he uncovered what was hidden in his conscience. He wasn’t satisfied with defending Yazeed by denying the true evidence, which no one would deny unless he was a reluctant sticker or an idiotic ignorant. Considering Yazeed as innocent of killing al-Husain (a.s.) was not enough for him because he knew well how much misleading he committed as if he denied that the one was the half of the two.

He came back from another way to defend all of the killers of al-Husain (a.s.) even if he thought that Yazeed was one of them. He said: “If it is said: Is it permissible to say: Allah may damn the killer of al-Husain (a.s.) or Allah may damn him, who ordered of killing al-Husain (a.s.)? We say: It is better to say: Allah may damn the killer of al-Husain (a.s.) if he died before he repented because he might have died after repenting.”[[55]](#footnote-55)

He discussed the repenting of Wahshi[[56]](#footnote-56) as an evidence of impressibility of damning in spite of that Wahshi had never got rid of his beastliness[[57]](#footnote-57) for a day and he had ended his life with the wine until it overcome him completely that he couldn’t sober up.[[58]](#footnote-58)

But al-Ghazzaali in this situation tried his best in order that no curse would reach an unbeliever and a transgressor like Wahshi, Yazeed and their likes. This man, who strove to defend Yazeed and Wahshi and in fact he defended their chief Iblis, curse be upon him, when he said: “It doesn’t matter in not damning Iblis besides other than him”[[59]](#footnote-59) This man with all these disgraceful situations, with which he didn’t want even Iblis and his grandsons to be cursed, didn’t feel shy when he said his second calamity: “Cursing has more special from like saying” Curse of Allah may be upon the Jews, the Christians, the magi, the fatalists, the kharijites, the Shia, the adulteress, the unjust and the usurers. All of that is permissible.”[[60]](#footnote-60)

One might think that there was much contradiction between those two situations because here he permitted cursing all these groups while there he defended Yazeed and his band of killers of al-Husain (a.s.) after he thought that it didn’t matter not to curse their master Iblis! But with a little deliberation we find that there is no contradiction. In fact there is a firm connection between the two situations. His permission of cursing the Shia united with defending Yazeed at the same purpose and aim. Both were the inevitable result and the bitter fruit of the seed of the grudge against the pure family of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

We weren’t surprised when he put the Shia, the followers of the Prophet’s family, in one row with the fatalists and the Kharijites and permitted cursing the all because, according to his thought, the all were apostates and no good would be expected from them and on repentance would be accepted from them.

In fact if he declared his inner dregs, he would prefer all the deviated and illegal sects and groups to the Shia just because they were the followers of Ali and his sons and this was unforgivable crime and unwashable dirt!

There was a great difference between the situation of al-Ghazzaali in defending the low Yazeed when he killed al-Husain (a.s.) and the situation of al-Jahiz about this very point. It would be better to quote something of what al-Jahiz had said about the subject. The following passage came after the passage we quoted before, in which aj-jahidh had talked about the lie of the year of the unity (aam al-Jama’a). He said: “... then what was committed by Yazeed and his governors and followers, then the invasion against Mecca, hitting the Holy Kaaba by mangonels, violating Medina and killing al-Husain (a.s.) and most of his family, who were the lamps of darkness and the pillars of Islam, after al-Husain promised them to separate his followers and to go back to his country or to another place but they wanted either to kill him or that he was to submit to their rule.”[[61]](#footnote-61)

Then he discussed some doings done by Yazeed that proved his unbelieving until he said: “... then see his poetry, which was full of polytheism and unfaithfulness. And what about striking the front teeth of al-Husain (a.s.) with the bar, carrying the daughters of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) (s.w.t.) bareheaded on intractable camels, uncovering the private parts of Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.) when they hesitated about his adulteress; whether he had pubes or not in order to be killed or to be carried with the captives as the commander of the Islamic army did with the captives of the polytheists. And what do you say about the saying of Obaidullah bin Ziyad to his companions: “Let me kill him because he is the reminder of this progeny (the Hashemites progeny) to end this age, to get rid of this obstacle and to cut off this genealogy?

Would you tell us what all that severity and rudeness did mean after they had quenched their thirst by killing them (al-Husain (a.s.), most of his family and his companions) and achieved what they liked? Did that show enmity, bad thinking, grudge, hatred, polytheism, abnormality and unbelieving or show faith and love to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), obedience and true-heartedness? If he (Yazeed) was as we described, he would be deviant and unfaithful. This is the simplest thing to be said about him. The unbeliever is to be damned and he, who forbids cursing the damned, is to be damned.”[[62]](#footnote-62)

We don’t think that we need to comment on the saying of al-Jahiz. It has a good answer to confute the disgraceful situation of al-Ghazzaali in his defending the band of injustice, sins, vices and the cursed tree as called in the Holy Quran.

After we saw those shameful words that al-Ghazzaali, who was given the title of (Hijjatul Islam)[[63]](#footnote-63), uttered without feeling shy or embarrassed, we wouldn’t be surprised if we read his saying: “It is forbidden for the preacher and the others to narrate the story of the murder of al-Husain (a.s.) and what happened of quarrel among the companions because it leads people to hate and fault the companions, who were the great figures of the religion.

The quarrels happened between them were to be interpreted with good will. Perhaps it was mistake in interpretation the verdicts and looking forward to the rule and the pleasures of this life”.[[64]](#footnote-64)

It was clear why he defended Yazeed and his band with all that misleading and distortion. He forbade that the humanity had never forced the same and a tragedy that the human beings neither had seen before not would see the same at all. He considered Yazeed and his band as the great figures of the religion, which wouldn’t be straightened up without them and no one would criticize them save a doubtful or a liar.

Al-Ghazzaali here defended every unjust and oppressive one. He even defended Mo’awiya in his situation against Imam Ali (a.s.) that it was not for the sake of the authority or the pleasures of the worldly life although Mo’awiya himself had denied that when he said to the people of Kufa: “O people of Kufa, do you think that I fought you for the sake of prayer, paid Zakat and performed Hajj? But I fought you to have the authority over you and Allah granted me that although you were unwilling. Know well that any money seized and any blood shed in this sedition will be in vain and every condition I stipulated will be under my feet.”[[65]](#footnote-65)

We don’t have to stay long with every fabricated lie al-Ghazzaali said in his book Ihya’ul Oloom, which was full of foolishness, lies, deviation and deceit. We just wanted, by showing these examples, to give a clear image about those men, with whom the Islamic umma was afflicted, whereas they were just traders of the worldly life trading under the name of the religion. If it was not so, ibnul Arabi wouldn’t say: “Al-Husain was killed by the verdict of his grandfather (Muhammad).”[[66]](#footnote-66) He thought that Yazeed was the legal Imam and al-Husain (a.s.) revolted against him and hence killing al-Husain (a.s.) was the legal punishment according to the Sharia of his grandfather!

Ibnul Arabi was different from al-Ghazzaali in his frankness. They agreed upon the thought and the aim but the second offered the poison mixed with what he thought as honey... and the other offered it barely; its appearance showing its inner malice and wickedness.

Ibn Khaldoon wasn’t satisfied to defame one of the pure Prophet’s thundering words: “Ahlul Bayt[[67]](#footnote-67) (a.s.) deviated with beliefs they invented and jurisprudence they adopted by themselves... and all of that was invalid. The Kharijites also deviated with things like that but the public (they mean, when saying the public, the Sunni sects) didn’t pay any attention to their beliefs. In fact they denied them and slandered them so widely. We don’t know anything about their beliefs and we don’t read their books, which the Shia are available in the west (Morocco), the east and Yemen where their state was existing. The same is to be said about the Kharijites. Each sect has its private books and odd thoughts of jurisprudence.”[[68]](#footnote-68)

What a pride of ibn Khaldoon it was when he left aside the jurisprudence of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)! The Imams of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) hadn’t invented any heresy. If their sayings led to heretical beliefs, as ibn Khaldoon said, they were but derived from the Holy Quran, which purified them. So let the Holy Quran be the source of the heresies of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)!

Another pride of ibn Khaldoon: he made Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) equal to the Kharijites, who deviated from the religion, to give a conclusion that Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) had deviated from Islam like the Kharijites according to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), who informed of the deviation of the Kharijites in his traditions.

A third pride of him: he denied and slandered the belief of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.), which was the essence of Islam, so widely.

Some had exceeded in that until they contradicted the very Sunna, which they used to follow, just because the followers of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) (the Shia) followed, in order not to imitate anything the Shia did.

Here we have to show some of those contradictions, which were committed intendedly just because the Shia followed as a prophetic Sunna: the Sunna decided that the tomb must be level, as it was preferable by the Shafiites too, but there were some, who said: “Humping the tomb would be better because levelling the tomb became as a mark of the Shia.”[[69]](#footnote-69)

Al-Ghazzaali and al-Mawardi said about that: “Levelling the tombs was the legal thing but when the Shia adopted it, we turned to humping.”[[70]](#footnote-70)

The same was about the ring. According to the Sunna, it was to be worn on the fingers of the right hand but there were some, who said: “It was traditional to wear the ring on the fingers of the right hand but when the Shia took it as a token, we began to wear it on the fingers of the left hand.”[[71]](#footnote-71)

By this doing they intended to contradict the Shia, who followed the true Sunna, and to follow Mo’awiya, who was the first one to wear it on the left hand.

Many often you find impudent statements like these: “...but it became as a token of the Shia and it must be avoided.”[[72]](#footnote-72)

“...and it leads to be accused of Shiism.”[[73]](#footnote-73)

“The believer doesn’t have to imitate Yazeed the cursed, the Shia and the Kharijites.”

And many often we find that they justified leaving the Sunna aside because (it became as a token of the Shia)! “Leaving the Sunna aside is a part of the Sunna if it is taken as a token by the heretics, like wearing the ring on the right hand. Actually it was a part of the Sunna but when it became as a token of the unjust heretics, the Sunna imposed to wear the ring on the finger of the left hand in our time.”[[74]](#footnote-74)

And thus contradicting the Shia became as a followed base of the Sunna and a heresy, with which the true Sunna was contradicted, and no one denied that! Some said when talking about imitating the Shia: “...and hence some of the jurisprudents thought of leaving some of the preferable rituals, if they were tokens of them (the Shia). Even if leaving them (the rituals) was not obligatory, but performing them would lead to imitating the Shia and so the Sunni wouldn’t be distinguishing from them in order to dissent and contradict them was greater than the benefit of that preferable ritual.”[[75]](#footnote-75)

The questions are crowded and the question marks are many about these thoughts, which contradict the Sunna, resist the Sharia and wrong a faithful sect, which has no guilt except following the principles of the true religion, the orders of the Holy Quran and the Sunna of the great Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and submitting to the principles of the Pure family of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Was that contradiction a part of the Sunna? Would they contradict every doing done by anyone, who didn’t comply with their doings and sayings or it concerned Ahlul Bayt (a.s.), who was one of the two weighty things the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had left that whoever kept to would be guided, whoever stuck to would be saved and whoever opposed would be perished?

Was the Sunna of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) capable of being distorted and changed?

Wasn’t what Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) permitted lawful and what he forbidden unlawful until the Day of Resurrection?

What would be the answer to that who said: this thing was a part of the Prophet’s Sunna but I forbade it in order that we are to be distinguished from the followers of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)?

The Shia offer the prayers, give the zakat and not only do the obligation but also they so many of the Mustahab[[76]](#footnote-76) duties in order to obtain the contentment of Allah, so does whoever wants to contradict them have to leave all what they offer and do of the religious duties or does he-at least-have to do something opposite to the true Sunna in order not to imitate the Shia?

After we knew this bare confession of permissibility of contradiction the Sunna, we found that some had accused the Shia of the same thing! Such situations towards the followers of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) were very usual.

Thus the Islamic umma was afflicted with such people, who didn’t use knowledge for the sake of rightfulness and to prosper the human beings but they used it as a pick to destroy everything good and as a seed that would give a bitter fruit of separation. They didn’t direct their minds to clear the truth but they tried to distort it and all that was because of their greed for positions, ranks and wealth.

If we wondered at those, who fabricated traditions and lies or at Mo’awiya and his likes, who bought the consciences, broke the promises, violated the covenants, gnawed the wealth of the Muslims like the camel when gnawing the plant of spring, overcame the umma and extorted its rights, we would wonder much more at these, who added fuel to the fire, and who considered those malicious doings as great deeds that could never be criticized and mentioned those fabricated lies as if they were true traditions said by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)...Allah forbid!

Our wonder at these people wouldn’t be put at an end for they fabricated what they fabricated after they had sold their afterlife, their conscience and their humanity and bought their worldly life. They received the low price; glowing gold and snow-white silver.

As for the buyer, he was a trader, who had nothing to do with virtues or morals. He didn’t know except the low desires, after which he panted following every means whatever the price would be, and whatever morals and values he would lose! According to his thought, the end justified the means even if the means would destroy the pillars of the religion and dagger it in the heart and would finish off the last spark of the human conscience to muffle the voice of justice and to perish its echoes.

The opportunist policy they followed was enough to extract all the values and concepts that might try to delay their progress towards their low aims.

The Abbasid king said near the tomb of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “The rule is sterile! If he, who is in this tomb, disputes with me about it, I will strike his nose with this sword!” He said this while he was holding the reigns of government, appropriating the rights of the umma and threatening its dignity under the name of the Islamic caliphate, that caliphate, which the true Islamic religion was too far from and calling for jihad to do away with it in order to get it back to the one, who would be well qualified to undertake that important position.

This saying indeed explained the reality of his ancestors and caliphs even though it was not said by other than him but their hearts pulsed with it and their doings confirmed it.

Your heart will be split with pain when you dive into the books, which were put to write the history of one of the ages or to gather the scattered traditions the narrators narrated from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in order to save the heritage... When we refer to those books in order to research a subject we want to remove the dirt attached to or to see what fabrication adjoined it to distinguish the truth from the falsehood, we find ourselves like a drowner surrounded by the waves from every side and the darkness prevents every ray of light that he can’t see any spark may give him a bit of hope in living. These books are full of lies, funny superstitions and fabricated traditions. The author knew the truth but he wrote his book for this king or for that vizier or to present it to that notable man in order to gain what satisfied his foolish desire or to satiate his mad greediness. He tried to fill his book with all what would satisfy the fancies of that, whom the book was written for, to get his wage in full. If he didn’t satisfy that one, even if he would discontent Almighty Allah and the rightness, he wouldn’t satisfy his greediness and wouldn’t achieve his expectations.

This was the direct reason behind what happened of confusion and flounder. What we refer to a subject in a book, we will find the opposite in the other book until the researcher becomes unable to see his way.

Hence we found that an author wrote down an idea in this book whereas he opposed and contradicted it so strongly in his other book. That was because each book was written according to the fancy of the one, whom the book was written for. When he wrote the other book for the other one, whose desire and fancy contradicted that one’s fancy, the subject here would be different and the clear truth there would be falsehood here undoubtedly!

We don’t want to show examples in order not to be far away from our subject, which we want to pass this threshold to get to.[[77]](#footnote-77)

But here we present one example to show the confusion and the flounder existed just to satisfy the fancies and desires of some figures even if the truth would be distorted, the reality would be denied and the rightness would be violated.

No one would deny that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had cursed al-Hakam bin Abul Aas and his progeny, and would a carrion produce but stinks? The Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said when al-Hakam brought his son Marwan, who had just been born then: “He is the deviant and the son of the deviant. He is the damned and the son of the damned.”[[78]](#footnote-78)

Aaesha (the Prophet’s wife) said that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had cursed al-Hakam while Marwan had been not born yet, so Marwan was a leftover of the curse of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had expelled al-Hakam from Medina. When the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) went to the better world, Abu Bakr and then Umar became the caliphs. When someone came to them interceding for al-Hakam, they refused and scolded him severely. They said: “Do we safeguard whom the Prophet had expelled? Do we unite a knot that the Prophet had knotted?”[[79]](#footnote-79)

Umar said when Usmaan had interceded for al-Hakam: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had expelled him and you ask me to let him be back! By Allah, if I let him be back, people will say that Umar changes the age of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). By Allah, if I am split into two like the palm leaf, it will be better to me than to contradict an order of the Prophet! O ibn Affaan[[80]](#footnote-80), beware of asking me for this again after this day!”[[81]](#footnote-81)

No one might think after all that ash-Shihab al-Khafaji would come to talk about the repentance of al-Hakam and about his interior sincerity.[[82]](#footnote-82)

Then who, without the money of Mo’awiya, would talk about the faithfulness of Abu Sufyan, who was the bitter enemy of the Muslims and the Prophet of Islam and who didn’t become a Muslim except when he was obliged to?

Al-Abbas brought Abu Sufyan to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) after insuring his life. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to him: “Woe unto you Abu Sufyan! When will you believe that there is no god but Allah?” Abu Sufyan said: “How merciful, patient and generous you are! By Allah, I think if there was another god besides Allah, he would suffice me.”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Woe unto you Abu Sufyan! When will you believe that I am the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)?”

Abu Sufyan said: “How merciful, patient and generous you are! As for this, I still doubt about it.”

Al-Abbas said to him: “Woe unto you! Declare the shahada or your head will be cut!”[[83]](#footnote-83)

This was the way that Abu Sufyan became a Muslim as it was mentioned by the historians. It was but surrender lest his head would be cut. From time to time he uncovered the dregs of polytheism and grudge deep-rooted inside his conscience and soul.

Once he saw the people walking behind the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). He envied him and whispered to himself: “Would I gather my assistants against this man again!”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hit him on his chest saying: “Allah may disgrace you!”

Then think of his answer, which showed what was hidden inside his soul: “I haven’t believed that you are the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) until this moment.”[[84]](#footnote-84)

But he even after this moment had never believed nor had faith known any way towards his heart. The bitter thing that hurt him was to hear a statement showing acknowledgement of the prophecy of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). He said to al-Abbas when he saw the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) among his great army surrounded by the battalions of the Ansar: “O Abul Fazl (al-Abbas), by Allah the rule of your nephew has become so great today!”[[85]](#footnote-85)

One day he looked at the Prophet in the Mosque with a look full of what his heart had of meanness, grudge, hatred, intriguing and fatal regret that he couldn’t defeat the Prophet to do away with his mission. He said to himself sorrily and admonishingly: “Would I know with what he had defeated me!”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t let him wait long when he patted on his shoulder answering: “With the support of Allah I had defeated you.” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) turned over Abu Sufyan’s material account when he thought that muchness would lead to victory and littleness would cause defeat.

As soon as he heard that Usmaan became the caliph, he came to him asking: “Is there anyone not of your family among you?” When he became certain that the sphere was clear, he said: “It came to you after Taym and Adi[[86]](#footnote-86) so turn it like the ball and make the Umayyads its pegs. By what Abu Sufyan swears[[87]](#footnote-87), I am still wishing it for you. Let it be the heritage of your boys. It is but the rule and I don’t know what Paradise and Hell mean!”[[88]](#footnote-88)

Then he went towards the tomb of Hamza (the Holy Prophet’s uncle) to put out a flame of hatred that was still burning inside him. He kicked the tomb and said spitefully: “O Abu Imara, the matter you forced us to with the sword became in our boys’ hands. They play with it.”[[89]](#footnote-89)

His soul was satisfied then with what he did more than the day of Wahshi and the livers-eater had done.[[90]](#footnote-90)

But while you are researching in the books of Hadith, you find a special chapter talking about the virtues of Abu Sufyan!

Those fabricators weren’t satisfied with the false virtues of Abu Sufyan, after his pretense of being a Muslim or being ascribed to Islam by force, until they saw that he had a favor unto Islam! Perhaps this favor was because of his plots against Islam and his fighting against the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in bloody wars! They weren’t satisfied with all of that until they fabricated this bald lie, which was like the baldness of Abu Hurayra where he ascribed this wonder to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “Who is like Abu Sufyan? The religion was assisted by him before he became a Muslim and after he became a Muslim. Who is like Abu Sufyan? As soon as I came from Allah the Almighty, I met Abu Sufyan. He had a ruby cup. He said: O my beloved friend! Drink! I would be proud of Abu Sufyan. He would get contentment after contentment. May Allah have mercy upon him.”[[91]](#footnote-91)

We give up commenting on this bare lie for the life of Abu Sufyan was full of what might confirm this lie...! The pages of history are full of such filths put to satiate the desires of the tyrants and we don’t have to bother ourselves commenting on them. As you find this chapter inside the books, as you find that the books are crowded with praising the adulterer al-Mugheera bin Shu’ba, the cursed deviant Marwan bin al-Hakam, the two Imams of deviation[[92]](#footnote-92); Amr bin al-Aas and Mo’awiya, the son of the livers-eater and the likes of the freed captives, the illegitimates and the prostitutes...

Ibn Hajar also wasn’t satisfied with his book as-Sawa’iq al-Muhriqa, in which he tried to show that the caliphate of Mo’awiya was rightful until he wrote a book and gave it this big title: “Purifying the heart and the tongue from criticizing our master Mo’awiya bin Abu Sufyan.”[[93]](#footnote-93)

What a frightening title! You have to purify your heart and tongue from mentioning anything may defame this purified man and the son of the purified people, the master of ibn Hajar and his likes of the traders, who traded under the pretense of knowledge!

But as for his (Mo’awiya’s) wrongful war against Ali, shedding the Muslims’ bloods, creating the heresy of cursing Ali, murdering Ammar bin Yaasir, Hujr bin Adi and his companions, poisoning Imam Hasan, Malik al-Ashtar and others, acknowledging the brotherhood of Ziyad and much many of other malicious deeds... as for all these he was to be considered as a mujtahid, who would be rewarded for what he had done and he was the seventh trustee with the revelation or the third as in another tradition.[[94]](#footnote-94)

As you read some lines in this book, your heart is about to be split painfully and jealousy when you see that the truth is distorted and the rightness is despised and killed! You find in this book some traditions, in which the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had dispraised Mo’awiya but the author tried his best to interpret them as he liked to change them into praises and virtues for Mo’awiya.

The book is full of fabricated traditions ascribed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and Imam Ali (a.s.) to justify the situation, the war and the cursing of Mo’awiya against Imam Ali (a.s.).

But I Excuse ibn Hajar since he had written his book according to the (insistive demand of Sultan Humayoun, the great sultan of India)

If we find an excuse that may justify the doings of those traders, who has bought their consciences and distorted the truth and the reality in order to keep up with the false rule and the unjust rulers in return for wages and bribes extorted from the umma and the weak people...and if we find someone excusing them that perhaps some of those authors said what they said and fabricated what they fabricated for fear of the policy of violence and torment with every means... and these, no doubt, are weak excuses that they neither defend them nor justify their shameful situations because they alone were responsible for that fabrication and distortion for it was them, who put the bases of that unjust structure and then it was occupied by the unjust extorter and was inherited by the learned and the ignorant, who widened it as they could during those dark ages... but what excuse may be given to that, who walks in the sinuous thorny way after the research and security have uncovered the distorted facts and the despised rightness... what excuse may be given to that, who lives this age, which is called the age of light and freedom, but he still ruminates the cud of that distorted dark past without letting himself research scrutinize and check?

If the corrupted policy at that time required that destroying situation and rewarded whoever held the pick if destruction and separation, had a mercenary pen and used science and knowledge to establish the pillars of a tottering and collapsing structure...and if the kings of the Muslims, who were called caliphs but they weren’t, preceded to use the policy of “divide and rule” ... the age of today is not the same age of yesterday, the situation is not the same of yesterday and the Arab rulers are not the same of that age.

Today we are seriously in need of rapport and unity, tenacity, unified strive to confront the common enemy, forgetting the inherited grudges and clearing the sphere, which some ones wanted to overcast with dark clouds, to let the sun shine to light the existence and then the water will be cleared and he, who used to fish in the troubled water, will lose.

Whoever wants to get to the true reality and sift the heritage, which was mixed with adventitious blemishes, has to be free from his fanaticism and inherited traditions and has to work sincerely, honestly and patiently. His work must be for the sake of Almighty Allah alone. He is to look for the bright truth and the shiny rightness.

He, who doesn’t have these qualities, has to forget the past. He is not to talk about what he doesn’t know and not to accuse the others according to his fancy or furious passion without depending upon reason, science, perceiving and well-informedness otherwise he will crumble the tenacious unity and he will just serve the lurking enemy knowingly or unknowingly, intendedly or unintendedly. At the same time he will discontent his God and violate the rightness and the religion.

But, and we say it painfully, this age; the age of civilization and progress, the age of science and atom, the age of researching in the unknown and for the unknown, is afflicted with some people living in it with their bodies only while their minds still live in the darkness of the past. They ravage the umma, deceive the simple people and distort science and knowledge.

We don’t try here to argue against them but we are to ask: What led ar-Rafi’ee (for example) when arguing against a non-Shia writer in his book “Under the Banner of the Quran” to defame the Shia and accuse them falsely unless there was something inside him?

And why did one like Dr. Ahmad Ameen insist upon defaming the Shia in some of his books, which he pretended that he had written to record the history of Islam whereas he distorted the history of Islam by ascribing lies and fabrications to the Shia in spite of that he had apologized to Imam Kashiful Ghita’ justifying that he had never referred to any source nor depended upon any reference[[95]](#footnote-95) when criticizing the Shia. His excuse was worse than his offense. He promised to expiate that in his new writings but he doubled his cursing and abusing.

For whose benefit Abdullah al-Qusseimi[[96]](#footnote-96), Muhammad Rasheed Reza[[97]](#footnote-97), Mohibbuddeen al-Khateeb[[98]](#footnote-98) and their likes of the mercenaries poured their deadly poison, deep-rooted hatred and burning spite on the Shia? It showed that their psychologies were full of complexities and educational and hereditary diseases either domestic or environmental. All that reflected inside them reactions, which they tried to believe by writing books full of lies, fabrications and foists, by which they increased the disagreement and separation at the time that imposed upon every sincere person to do away with the causes of that disagreement and dispute.

Wouldn’t it be better for them to be sincere to their religion and life if they did what they had to do and if they exploited their knowledge and abilities to content Allah (s.w.t.), the people, their consciences, their religion and the rightness and thus they would come back to the pure source of religion, which flew with love and goodness, spread peace and called for cordiality and tenacity?

But unfortunately they followed a dubious desire and walked in a crooked way until they missed the straight way, deviated from the rightness and were lost in the mazes of separation and all that produced these bitter fruits, whose bitterness we suffer now.

In spite of all that, they thought that they had done the best of their duties, but if they pondered with a little of prudence, they would be shocked by the bitter reality and they would find themselves so far away from the pure religion.

By saying so we don’t deny those, who devoted themselves to purify the religion from the blemishes attached to it and to defend it against the doubts and distortions the biased fabricators tried to mix it with. Those devoted people did their duties in the best way for no personal desire or aim save the sake of Allah and the rightfulness. They announced the truth loudly, supported the unity of the Muslims, uncovered, as possible as they could, what those mercenaries had done to separate the Muslims into groups, to split their unity, to distort the truth, to change the realities and to reserve the events.

It was not of our subject to detail this side by talking about these great people, who presented their loyal efforts for the sake of Almighty Allah and His people.

This was a subject that we had to review as we were about to talk about Abu Taalib. We had to know the matter of fabricating traditions since Abu Taalib was one of their victims!

After we knew what Mo’awiya had done against Imam Ali (a.s.) and how he had fought him with the sword and the tongue, so it was definitely that some of that flood of accusations would have reached Abu Taalib.

If Abu Taalib hadn’t been Ali’s father, he wouldn’t have been defamed nor been accused of anything but just because he had been Ali’s father as our respected father said.

There was no wonder at all after we knew the cause and motives that led to hide the truth, which was about to be perished unless it was saved by the care of Almighty Allah. And there was no wonder when the history took that hostile situation when facing the life of this hero and took that bad situation against him when he was dying and his soul was about to leave for the better world. His eye was delighted and his conscience was content with supporting the mission of the Heaven.

He wouldn’t pay attention to the wrong he got from the history, which showed no interest in his mention except a little. The history ignored his great deeds, his bold situations and his defending the mission defiantly, paving the way for the hearts to receive that new belief, chanting with the mission of God and priding himself upon the Prophet’s human exploits.

If the history sometimes mentioned something of that, it would in many times contradict what it had mentioned. There was something in the inner between the history and this hero that he was the father of Ali! So its walk would be crooked and the straight ways would be curved due to a need that was to be satisfied.

But whatever the clouds cumulate, the sun must shine and send its rays through the clouds and the darkness never stays as long as the sun is in the sky.

So you find, in spite of the shameful situation of the history towards this wronged man, what clears his life on a pure page, in a bright line or in a shining letter.

I thought at the first that the task would be difficult and the burden would be heavy when I found that the sources were few or in fact when I saw the shameful situation of history.

But as I started some steps in my way, I met much of this man’s history scattered in the books. I gathered it from the reliable books, upon which the firm writer, who looked for the pure truth, could depend upon.

Then I said: The rightfulness won’t be bereaved of supporters and the false saying won’t last long! Allah may perfect His light, though the unbelievers may be averse.[[99]](#footnote-99)

Even if the cloud stays long, the wind must come to drive it away and even if the sky is covered with heavy clouds, clearness will come soon or late. And with none but Allah is the direction of my affair to a right issue; on Him so I rely and to Him do I turn.[[100]](#footnote-100)

# Chapter One

# THE ROUTE OF LIFE

## A House

In a dark milieu and ignorant environment ... a milieu that fell under obscurity and unenlightenment concerning the religious view where the idols were so many that every tribe had its gods and every family had its gods! In fact every person had his or her god that no one participated him/her with.

In that milieu and in that environment where the feeling was inactive, the sense was lost and the eyes were closed to see every sign showing that God was but one and only with on participant in His rule.

In that milieu where the strong wind invaded to change the divine religion and the true belief of Abraham to the worship of pieces of stone and wood, which didn’t hear, see or perceive and didn’t benefit or harm. Man hewed his god with his hands to be his intercessor with Allah.

In that milieu where the night covered with its darkness and from among those message of people with their closed eyes, locked hearts and dead senses, who lived in that darkness and that abyss of unenlightenment ... from among thousands and thousands of people a man might break the rule and from among millions of houses a house might be different.

Among these and those of the crowded masses of people a man might excel to see with a new eye and a full-blown heart a ray of light, which would light his way through that darkness ... he would read in the divine books to quiet his heart and conscience after long doubting where he passed by a critical stage, which was the worse stage of change and development with all its fears and fatigues.

He read in those books to find that they brought good news about a new Prophet. He saw the nature informing of a new Prophet to be sent. He found everything around him referring to the necessity of the existence of that Prophet and confirming that his expected coming would be soon.

He found in the books what defined the land of that Prophet. Was it but Mecca, from which that light would shine? His heart frisked and his soul became refreshed. He wished he would be one of those, who would get a bit of that shining ray and to defend that guiding light.

And from among these and those ... and from among those houses, which no one of them was without a piece of stone or wood that every one in the house had to prostrate himself or herself before and to tend to servilely. It was the last thing to be farewelled and the first thing to be received when one was to travel. From this still god they expected help and success. The same hands, which made this god, extended towards it praying, begging and fearing so much. That was the utmost decline of the intellectuality, the human values and the creative mind of man.

From among those houses there was one house that no thread of that darkness entered and the lamp, which Prophet Abraham (a.s.) had lit, was still alight and no wind could put it out. This house still believed in the true belief of Abraham. This house never doubted about the truthfulness of the mission of Abraham, by which he had proved the monotheism of the One and Only God.

This house, which was related to Abraham in two ways; the ways of progeny and fatherhood and the way of faith and monotheism, was but continuance of the mission of Abraham (a.s.).

In this faithful house, which neither ignorance nor polytheism had soiled ... in this honoured house Abu Taalib opened his eyes towards the route of life. He saw in this house a life different from the life he saw among people and he lived a life different from that people lived.

He saw in the chief of this house – his father Abdul Muttalib – a man different from the other man. He didn’t see in those people save masses of fleshes and bones or dolls without a bit of reason. He opened his eyes to see as what Di’bil[[101]](#footnote-101) later on would open his eyes to see and to cry:

“I open my eyes towards many, but I see none!”

He saw in his father, Abdul Muttalib, the obeyed leader and the respected man, who carried out whatever he said and judged and no one would deny his judgement. He saw so generous. He used to serve banquets that even the rider would get his share from upon his camel. Some food was put on the tops of the mountains that birds and beasts might eat from until he was called ‘the profluent’ and ‘the feeder of the birds of the sky’.

He prayed Almighty Allah and Almighty Allah responded to his prayers. He was pleased with by Allah in the heaven and was praised on the earth; therefore he was called ‘Shaybatul Hamd; the old man of praise’.

He saw in his father many excellences that no one other than his father had. Abdul Muttalib enacted many laws that showed his guidance, sublimity, purity of inner self and the great faith that he compiled with what Abraham (a.s.) had preached at. He forbade himself from drinking wine, forbade marrying the mahrams,[[102]](#footnote-102) limited the circumambulation around the Kaaba with seven turns after it was unlimited, forbade circumambulating around the Kaaba nakedly, ordered to cut the stealer’s hand, forbade adultery, forbade burying new-born girls alive, forbade gambling, forbade eating from the meat of the animals sacrificed for the idols and enacted carrying out the vow.[[103]](#footnote-103)

Islam came and ratified all those rules enacted by Abdul Muttalib.

Abdul Muttalib associated with Harb bin Umayya bin Abd Shams – the father of Mo’awiya – for some time. One of the Jews was under the protection of Abdul Muttalib. One day this Jew spoke roughly to Harb in one of the markets of Tehama. Harb became angry. He incited someone to assassinate the Jew. He inherited treachery from his grandfather Abd Shams. Treachery was a characteristic of this family along the ages.

When Abdul Muttalib knew about the doing of Harb, he deserted him for he didn’t want to associate with a treacherous man. But he didn’t let Harb get free. He forced him to pay one hundred she-camels to the killed Jew’s cousin as blood-money.[[104]](#footnote-104)

Besides all that Abdul Muttalib refused to lower his head to prostrate before an idol, to worship a solid stone or a ragged piece of wood where he was of high reason, prudence and acumen.[[105]](#footnote-105)

He was the first to devote himself to God in the cave of Hara’. When the month of Ramadan came, he went up the mountain to worship for some nights and to think about the loftiness and the greatness of Allah (s.w.t.).

Abraaha, the king of Yemen, came to destroy the Kaaba. He seized some camels of Abdul Muttalib. Abu Taalib saw his father when asking Abraaha for his camels but not mentioning anything about the Kaaba, which Abraaha had come to destroy.

Abdul Muttalib was about to be lowly before his son but he answered as a certain faithful to Allah: “I am the lord of my camels and the Kaaba has its Lord to guard it.”

Abdul Muttalib went to the Holy Kaaba. He held the ferrule of the gate of the Holy Kaaba and began to talk to his God reciting:

O my God! I don’t hope but you.

O God! Save Your sanctuary from them!

The enemy of the House (Kaaba) is Your enemy,

So prevent them from destroying Your courtyard![[106]](#footnote-106)

Then he recited again in a way that he was certain about the result:

O Allah! Man strives to defend his baggage,

So defend Your possession!

Let their cross and their cunning not defeat Your cunning.

If You do, it will be a doing that You complete Your doings with

It is You, Whom we hope when oppressors come.

They will flee with disgrace or You will perish them there.

I have heard of no more obscene than them at all.

They brought all of their people and the elephant to captivate Your people.

They intended to plot against your sanctum not heeding Your loftiness.

If You will leave them alone with Your Kaaba, it is Your will.

Then he said: “O people of Quraysh, he can never destroy the house (the Holy Kaaba). It has a Lord, Who will protect it.”

Then he prayed Almighty Allah and Allah (s.w.t.) sent flocks of birds throwing stones upon Abraaha and his soldiers’ heads. Those stones were quicker in killing than the atomic bombs but they only killed the criminals without harming any innocent one not like the atomic bombs when annihilating the innocent nations for these were made by man while those were made by the Creator.

\* \* \*

Abu Taalib (a.s.) was among his nine brothers when his father Abdul Muttalib taught them his valuable lessons, ordered them to obey the divine orders, forbade them from committing bad doings, ordered them to avoid injustice and oppression, encouraged them to keep to the nobilities of character and warned them of a day where everyone would get one’s reward according to what one had done whether good or bad. Abu Taalib often heard his father saying like this: “No unjust one leaves this life unless he is revenged on and is afflicted with punishment.”

Someone defied Abdul Muttalib when an unjust man of Sham died without facing any evil throughout his life. Abdul Muttalib answered: “By Allah, there is another world after this world, in which the benevolent will be rewarded for their benevolence and the evil doers will be punished for their evil doing.”[[107]](#footnote-107)

Abu Taalib saw his father Abdul Muttalib when he was informed that his son Abdullah (Abdul Muttalib’s son) had begot a new-born baby ... this new-born baby, which the universe had been waiting for to receive the shine of its brightness. As soon as this baby faced the universe, the grandfather was informed. He came to the baby’s mother asking her to tell him of all what she saw during the giving birth to her baby. Then he took the baby to the Holy Kaaba to pray Allah (s.w.t.) and to thank Him for this great favor. He began to recite:

Praise be to Allah, Who granted me this good boy

He masters over all the boys although he is yet in cradle

I pray Allah to protect him until I see him be a man

I pray Allah to protect him from the evil of every spiteful and every envier.[[108]](#footnote-108)

Abdul Muttalib took much care of this orphan (Muhammad) (s.a.w.a.) and tried his best to bring him up. He looked at this boy with a deep inspective look piercing through the future and seeing that this orphan would make the earth; east or west, submit to his greatness and would make the hearts pulse with his love and follow his mission and the tongues speak of him and praise him with the signs of honouring constantly.

A carpet was spread for Abdul Muttalib, the respected leader, the glorified man among Quraysh and the obeyed chief among the Arabs, around the Holy Kaaba and he was surrounded by the chiefs of Quraysh but no one of them could tread on an end of his carpet rather than to sit with him upon it. But this orphan child came, with his ambition and determination, overstepping all of the people to sit beside his grandfather or sometimes he might precede and sit in his grandfather’s place and when his grandfather came and they wanted to make this orphan away from his place, Abdul Muttalib would scold whoever dared to put this great child aside! Once he said: “Leave him alone! He will be of great importance.”

Abdul Muttalib seated this orphan child beside him and patted on his back and the signs of cheer, contentment and happiness appeared on his face. He would never disappoint the fresh hope in this child’s heart! Once again he said to the one, who wanted to prevent Muhammad from sitting on his grandfather’s carpet: “Let my son sit! He feels that he will be an important man. I hope that he will reach a high glory that no one of the Arabs had reached before him no any one will reach after him.”

A third time he said: “Return my son to my seat! He forefeels of a great rule. He will be of great importance.”[[109]](#footnote-109)

Once he recommended Abu Taalib (a.s.) to take care of him: “Protect him and keep to him. Be as mother to him. Don’t let anything bad happen to him.”[[110]](#footnote-110)

Abdul Muttalib was not of those, who spoke at random, nor would he ramble or rave with what he didn’t know. He knew well that his grandson would have a great standing ... and what a standing it would be!

There were many evidences showed that Abdul Muttalib had predicted with his sharp insight that his grandson would be of great importance. In fact his own life and honest conduct was one of those evidences of the importance of his grandson. He was certain of what he had predicted for all the surrounding and phenomena certified his feeling.

Some people of Midlaj,[[111]](#footnote-111) who knew about archaeology, said to Abdul Muttalib: “Take much care for Muhammad. We haven’t seen any foot more similar to the foot (of Abraham) in the shrine.”[[112]](#footnote-112)

When Sayf bin Thi Yazn al-Himyari became the king of Abyssinia two years after the birth of Muhammad, the delegations of the Arabs set out to congratulate him after restoring the rule of his ancestors. In the front was the delegation of Quraysh, whose chief was Abdul Muttalib.

Abdul Muttalib stood up to do his speech in front of Sayf. His speech was a sign of eloquence that made Sayf bow before this nonesuch personality and glorified leader. Sayf welcomed them warmly and they became his guests.

It happened that their stay lasted somehow long with Sayf as guests until a month passed. Sayf bin Thi Yazn approximated Abdul Muttalib to him. He wanted to tell him about an important secret thinking that Abdul Muttalib hadn’t known about it. He wanted to tell him about something that would have the dignity of life and the virtue after death for all of the human beings and that Abdul Muttalib would have the better share and the best luck of it. He said to him: “If a boy is born in Tehama having a mole between his shoulders, he will be of great importance and you will have the leading by virtue of him until the day of punishment.” Then he added after saying something to Abdul Muttalib: “His name is Muhammad. His father and mother die. He is adopted by his grandfather and his uncle.” Then he removed the cover and disclosed the secret: “I swear by the House (the Kaaba) that you are his grandfather definitely, O Abdul Muttalib!”[[113]](#footnote-113)

Then Abdul Muttalib prostrated himself before his God thanking Him for this great blessing. He raised his head happily and smilingly to tell the king about something of the life of this great Prophet: “His father and mother died and I and his uncle have adopted him.”[[114]](#footnote-114)

Those were some evidences Abdul Muttalib saw besides many others that the life of his grandson was full of. And if there was but one evidence, it would be enough to prove that his grandson Muhammad was the very one, who would be that expected Prophet, about whom the divine Book of the previous prophets had talked.

Some barren passed. The rain stopped and the water became rate. The green grass yellowed and that torrential milk of the udders dried. Life became so difficult. Grief overcame the faces. Fear of the unknown darkened the eyes. No one was to intercede for them save Abdul Muttalib. With his great spirit they asked him to intercede with God. The heaven rained heavily and life refreshed again. The prayer of the intercessor was responded by his God to revive those dying souls after the loss of monies and the death of cattle.

A vision in the sleep had led them to this man, who was notable near Allah (s.w.t.), to intercede for them and that his intercession wouldn’t be denied. It was a vision that talked about honoured qualities and amiable descriptions.[[115]](#footnote-115)

Abdul Muttalib, surrounded by a halo of cadets and groups of phratries of Quraysh, kissed the corner of the Holy Kaaba on their ways to the top of Mountain Abu Qubays. He took his grandson Muhammad with him. His lips uttered with prayers coming out of a sensitive faithful heart: “O Allah, these are your slaves and sons of your slaves and your bondmaids and daughters of your bondmaids. You see what we are afflicted with. The barren years exhausted us. They did away with all the cattle and they are about to do with the selves. O Allah, take away the barrenness and bring us rain, fertility and revival!”

What a truthful prayer it was! As soon as it ascended to the Heaven, the Beneficent God responded to it.

As soon as they left the mountain, the sky was covered with heavy clouds bearing fertility and revival and driving away the barrenness. It began to rain and the valleys were filled with goodness. The lips smiled, the hearts danced and the eyes shined with happiness ... but nevertheless some faces frowned, some lips writhed, some hearts were disgusted and some eyes scattered rays of grudge!

The caravan was about to reach Mecca when a sweet sound came out of one of the houses of Mecca expressing joy and happiness after Allah had responded to the prayer of Abdul Muttalib. It was Raqeeqa bint Abu Sayfi bin Sham, whose lips announced her sweet verses:

By Shaybatul Hamd Allah irrigated our country

After we lost the means of life and the rain retarded much.

The valley flowed with water where cattle and trees revive.

It was a blessing of Allah and thanks to this man that Muzar had never newsed with better than.

What a blessed name it was that Allah made the clouds rain for the sake of him, who had no similar among people at all.[[116]](#footnote-116)

When it rained, the valleys were filled with water and the pastures became green but the country of Qays and Muzar had no chance of having a share of that. The clouds didn’t water their lands.[[117]](#footnote-117)

Their chiefs and notable men met to discuss the matter. They agreed that no one but Abdul Muttalib, whom they would resort to. It was he, to whose prayer Almighty Allah had responded and watered Mecca from the heaven and the earth.[[118]](#footnote-118) Almighty Allah wouldn’t refuse a prayer coming out of the heart of this old man, who had a high position near Him. They said: “We have been in such difficulty of living and barrenness. Allah (s.w.t.) has watered people according to the prayer of Abdul Muttalib so let’s go to him that he may pray to Allah (s.w.t.) to have mercy upon us!”

They reached Mecca and went to Abdul Muttalib. He welcomed them. Their speaker stood up to inform Abdul Muttalib of their want by saying: “Barren years have afflicted us and we have heard about your effectiveness and about what you have done. We have come to you that you may intercede for us with Him, Who has responded to you and made the clouds water your people.”

Next day Abdul Muttalib went to achieve his promise to them. He went towards Mountain Arafat surrounded by his sons and people. Among them was his beloved orphan grandson Muhammad. He took his seat and his honoured grandson was in his lab. He raised his hands towards the Heaven. His eyes shone with faith; his heart pulsed with sincerity and his tongue prayed submissively: “O Allah, the God of the swift lighting, and the God of the pealing thunder, the God of the gods and the Solver of the difficulties! These are Qays and Muzar,[[119]](#footnote-119) who are the best among the peoples. Their heads are dishevelled and their backs are hunched. They complain to You their weakness and the loss of selves and monies! O Allah, give them thundering clouds and pouring sky to make their land smile and their damage disappear!”

As soon as he uttered these words, a thundering dark cloud was traveling towards him, as a response for his pray, on its way towards the barren country of those people. Then Abdul Muttalib said to them: “O people of Qays and Muzar, go back! You are watered.”[[120]](#footnote-120)

Abu Taalib began to recite:

Our father was the intercessor, by whom people were

watered by heavy thundering clouds.

Before they were about to leave the place, they saw the

rain-clouds coming with goodness.

Qays came to us after distress and disaster ...

after it was bitten by a bad time.

They didn’t leave until Allah rewarded their lands

responding to Shayba[[121]](#footnote-121) Rains came to turn their lands green.[[122]](#footnote-122)

The life of Abdul Muttalib went on shiningly with the signs of the expected Prophet, about whom he had read in the divine books, and when he knew that it was his grandson, he embraced him to his chest and became his merciful educator.

Abdul Muttalib wouldn’t forget his orphan, who occupied his heart and became more preferable even to his own sons, for a moment. He wouldn’t forget him even in the last moment of his long life, which lasted for one hundred and twenty years according to one saying and more than eighty-five according to another saying.

When he was dying, he turned his eyes towards his sons, who surrounded him, to choose one among them in order to entrust him with a task that busied his mind too much. It was not an ordinary task. He had to choose the most suitable one for the task to die with delighted eyes. His sight roved here and there until it met Abu Taalib, whom no one was better than to undertake this heavy task, besides that he had participated in carrying out the task since the light of this shinning lamp had shone:

O Abd Manaf[[123]](#footnote-123) I entrust you with this alone one after me.[[124]](#footnote-124)

Abu Taalib accepted this task willingly and delightfully. He recited:

You don’t need to recommend me to my duty,

I have heard of the most of wonders,

from every bishop and scholar.

The monk’s saying - by the virtue of Allah - became true.[[125]](#footnote-125)

Abdul Muttalib said again to Abu Taalib: “O Abu Taalib!! Take much care of this alone one, who had neither smelt his father’s smell nor tasted his mother’s pity. Consider him as the liver to your body! I have left all my sons to trust you with him because you are the son of his father’s mother. Know[[126]](#footnote-126) that you are to follow him as possible as you can and to support him with your tongue, hand and money. By Allah, he will be the master over you and he will rule as on one of my ancestors had ever ruled. Do you accept this?”

Abu Taalib said: “I accept and Allah is the witness of this.”

He stretched his hand and patted on his son Abu Taalib’s hand. He said his last word to receive the death with comfortable conscience after being assured about this important task: “Now death becomes easy to me.” He began to flood him with kisses of pity and sympathy of a merciful father saying: “Witness that I have never seen among my sons one more beautiful or more sweet-smelling than you.”[[127]](#footnote-127)

## Personality

In that great highbred house and under the care of that merciful father, from whose high instructions and great school Abu Taalib had graduated, He entered from the wide gate of life armed with the high principles of the great house and the glorious past of his fathers.

Since heredity had important effect in forming the personality of man, as the psychologists said, so Abu Taalib had made infinite use of this heredity.

Abu Taalib was a clear image of a bright past. He had qualities of his father Abdul Muttalib, his grandfather Hashem and his great grandfathers that made of him that bright wonderful image.

No one would deny that Abu Taalib, as Almighty Allah willed, was the adopter of the Prophet of Islam, who was the perfect image of man and the ideal copy of humanity.

No one would deny that the Prophet had grown, been brought up and spent his youth, which was the greater and the more effective, critical, sensitive and affective stage of man’s life, under the care of Abu Taalib.

Hence many qualities gathered into the personality of Abu Taalib; greatness, exaltedness and self-making. He was the adopter of the orphan Muhammad, the protector and supporter of Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and the believer in Muhammad’s mission. He was Sheikhul Batha’ and Bayzatul Balad.[[128]](#footnote-128)

It had been decided by the Heaven that Abu Taalib would undertake this task and he carried out the task in the best way. He supported the mission of the Heaven as possible as he could.

No one would deny that Abu Taalib had participated his father in the leadership when he was alive to be the first personality after his father Abdul Muttalib. He also participated in taking care of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.)[[129]](#footnote-129) and finally, after the death of his father, he was alone with the two tasks; the leadership (of Quraysh) and the taking care of the orphan Muhammad. So he became the only leader and the only guardian without any partner.

A splendid past and a bright present formed a virtuous life that produced ripe fruits and spread fragrance that perfumed the space for the friend and the enemy as the sun when sending its rays to the caves and to the tops of mountains. But the colded nose wouldn’t smell the redolent fragrance and the sore-eye wouldn’t see the rays of the sun!

Leadership and sovereignty wouldn’t be gained without plenty of money but although Abu Taalib was not so rich, he was the respected leader, the first master and the obeyed chief and this might be the characteristic of Abu Taalib alone and no one else other than him.[[130]](#footnote-130)

Even though he was empty-handed but he had a great rich spirit. He was so great with his qualities and virtues and no one would ever replace him.

He inherited his father’s qualities. He forgave without being asked for and gave open-handedly without considering it as doing favor. He often gave people in burdened himself with debts lest he would leave a favor his father used to do before.

He began to water the pilgrims as his father had been doing before after he had dug the well of Zamzam. He often added dates and raising to the water in order to make it taste sweet.

Once a difficult year came, Abu Taalib became needy. He found himself unable to keep on his tradition. At the same time he wouldn’t give up his father’s noble deeds. He borrowed from his brother al-Abbas ten thousand dirhams to be paid back in the next year.

The next year came and he couldn’t pay his debt back to his brother. He found himself in a bad situation that he might not be able to serve the pilgrims. He decided to borrow fourteen thousand dirhams from his brother again. But al-Abbas in this time wouldn’t lend him the money except on a condition that if he couldn’t pay the debt in the next year, he would have to give up watering the pilgrims and to let al-Abbas undertake it ... and it was so.[[131]](#footnote-131)

The loss of watering the pilgrims didn’t affect his high position nor harmed his leadership that he was the fount of goodness in Mecca and he, whose prayers were always responded to, was the point of connection between the Heaven and the earth.

He had so much high qualities that made him a leader surrounded by honour and glory and made him as a fortress that no defame might reach him nor he might be shaken before a wind.

His qualities imposed upon us to believe that he had followed the belief of Prophet Abraham (a.s.).[[132]](#footnote-132) The pre-Islamic age with all its filths, evils and sins wouldn’t affect him or make him deviate from the right way he had followed.

Neither the environment he lived in could adapt him nor was he affected by its evils. He still had had his exalted thinking, his high insight, his virtuous soul and all his inherited good qualities. All these made him so strong that he wouldn’t be drifted by the sins of the milieu he lived in. Nevertheless he was so firm enough to educate that low society with high lessons of morals and principles.

It was so necessary for such a man to be existed in a period between two prophets or after the cease of the Divine Revelation lest Almighty Allah wouldn’t be answerable before his people.[[133]](#footnote-133)

The existence of Abu Taalib after Abdul Muttalib was an inevitable necessity. Such deportment had to be a sign for a divine mission, which would shine to drive the dark cloud prevailing over the existence away. But it might be surprising for those, who used to live under the darkness and that it might be too difficult for them to open their eyes before a bright lamp.

There must be a lamp sending a ray as a good omen of shining light later on and there must be a star to guide those, who walked under the darkness of the night lest they fell into an abyss of deviation ... so there must be one like Abu Taalib to be as evidence of Allah before His people. And really he was. He was the educator of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and one of the signs leading to the near appearing of the prophecy.

No one would deny that the personality of Abu Taalib had all the qualities of the well-qualified leader, the virtuous aspects and the high excellences, which made him distinguished from all around him and surrounded him with a halo of respect and admiration.

He was the fount of goodness and the respective fortress, to which wronged and weak people resorted. He was the generous, from whose hand the destitute ladled. He was the one, whom people entreated when the Heaven held its rain.

He was so humane towards his relatives. He hurried to relieve the distressed. He was merciful, pious, generous, determined, eloquent, heart some, certain, handsome, respected, honoured and glorified.[[134]](#footnote-134)

He knew much about divine laws. He was of comprehensive knowledge and science. He forbade himself from drinking wine, committing sins[[135]](#footnote-135) and all of the dirt of polytheism and evils of the low milieu around him. His soul was high in a wide exalted horizon flying in a pure space.

He was the first one, who enacted the law of ‘qassama’[[136]](#footnote-136) when Amr bin Alqama was killed. Later on the prophetic Sunna confirmed it.[[137]](#footnote-137)

There was a spiritual phenomenon in Abu Taalib’s life happened during the war of al-Fijar between Hawazin and Kinana.[[138]](#footnote-138) Whenever Abu Taalib attended with Muhammad the victory became on the side of Hawazin but whenever he was absent Hawazin would lose much. So Hawazin asked Abu Taalib not to be absent in order to obtain victory and he did.[[139]](#footnote-139)

Ibn Assakir mentioned in his book that Jalhama bin Arfata had said:[[140]](#footnote-140) “Once I came to Mecca where it was a year of rainlessness. Some said: Let’s go to al-Laat and al-Uzzaa.[[141]](#footnote-141) Another said: Let’s go to Manat.[[142]](#footnote-142) A prudent handsome old man said: Why do you turn away whereas the remainder of Abraham and the progeny of Ishmael is among you? They said: As if you mean Abu Taalib! He said: Yes, I do.

They all and I was with them, went to Abu Taalib. We knocked at the door. A pretty-faced man wearing loincloth came out. They rushed to him and said: O Abu Taalib, the valley became rainless and people became miserable. Would you please pray to Allah for rain?

Abu Taalib went out with a little boy; it was Muhammad, who was as a sun appearing among dark clouds. Abu Taalib took the boy and stuck his back to the Holy Kaaba. The boy pointed to the Heaven with his finger suppliantly. There was no a bit of cloud in the sky. The clouds began to come from here and there. The valley was filled with water and the ground became green and fresh.”[[143]](#footnote-143)

With these high qualities, virtues and excellences Abu Taalib had had his high position and made the hearts submit to him lovingly, surround him with respect and glorification and let the leadership to be for him alone ... and who would be better than him for that? He was like his father; a carpet was put to him around the Holy Kaaba and he sat on it alone. Muhammad came and sat with his uncle on the carpet. Abu Taalib said: “My nephew feels blessedness or great glory.”[[144]](#footnote-144)

## Signs

The poetry of Abu Taalib had evidence showing that he had known about the prophecy of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) before he was sent as Prophet according to what the monk Buhayra had told him and according to many other signs. The knowing of Abu Taalib about the prophecy of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was mentioned by many historians besides that it was understood through his poetry.

Imam Abdul Wahid as-Safaqissi[[145]](#footnote-145)

Abu Taalib said: “My father read all of the books. He had said: From among my progeny there will be a Prophet. I wish I live until that moment to believe in him. Whoever of my progeny attains him is to believe in him.”[[146]](#footnote-146)

Abu Taalib was not in need of this saying to show new evidence about the prophecy because his belief was deep-rooted and his faith was firm. He had many evidences even that one of them was enough to prove his intent. These clear evidences confirmed the faith of Abu Taalib, who had never been hesitant at any moment.

He had known definitely and without any bit of doubt that his nephew would be that expected Prophet, about whom he and his father had read in the divine books and the divine missions had talked about since the first days of their revelation.

Besides that certain knowledge Abu Taalib saw clear signs and bright evidences that no one would but to submit to. He saw some of those signs while his father Abdul Muttalib was still alive. Abdul Muttalib often saw some of those signs and informed Abu Taalib of them. But today as he was the first guardian of his orphan nephew, he would see many many of those signs, which no day passed or no cloud travelled away unless he would see a sign of the prophecy through its folds.

He saw in his nephew things, aspects and qualities that would never be of an ordinary man, who would live and die as if nothing had happened... certainly not! He saw in his nephew the most perfect image of the creation of Allah since the creation of Adam until the Day of Resurrection. He saw that his nephew was the ideal copy of the exaltedness of man with the highest values.

Among those many signs (rather than the spiritual and moral signs) there were many touchable signs that even the materialists, who didn’t see but by their eyes and didn’t touch but by their hands, would easily feel them so how about the prudent, the discerning and the faithful persons!

We don’t want to wedge the signs and evidences available in the different books in this book for it needs a long time but we just want to show the reader some of them as examples.

### The spring

The historians mentioned that among the signs that preceded the prophecy of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was that one day Muhammad was with his uncle Abu Taalib in Thul Majaz.[[147]](#footnote-147) Abu Taalib felt thirsty and there was no water with them at all. He told his nephew about his thirst. Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) kicked a rock with his leg and water began to flow. Abu Taalib drank and then Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) kicked the rock again and it returned to its previous state.[[148]](#footnote-148)

### With the Diviner

A man of Lihb[[149]](#footnote-149) was a diviner. Whenever he came to Mecca, the men of Quraysh came to him with their boys to predict about them. One of those men was Abu Taalib, who had come with his nephew Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). The diviner looked at Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and then he became busy with another thing. When he finished he said: “The boy! Bring me the boy!”

When Abu Taalib saw that the diviner paid much attention to the boy, he became afraid and felt there was something. He thought that he had to hide his nephew so that the diviner’s piercing eyes wouldn’t glance at him. The diviner shouted: “O you! Bring me the boy, whom I just saw. By Allah, he will be of great importance!”[[150]](#footnote-150)

This word of the diviner was not new for Abu Taalib because he knew well that his nephew would be of great importance.

### You are blessed

Abu Taalib saw a clear thing showing a bright sign since Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) had joined his family after the death of Abdul Muttalib. Abu Taalib’s family was numerous and he was not wealthy. This wouldn’t let his family be satiated when having their meals. But whenever Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was among them at the meal, the all would be satiated and some food would remain yet. So Abu Taalib often said to his family when it was the time of the meals and he didn’t see his nephew among them: “Don’t eat until my son comes!”

Anyone of his family would drink the entire cup of milk but Abu Taalib took the cup to let Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) drink first and then the all would drink from the very cup. Then Abu Taalib said to his nephew: “You are blessed.”[[151]](#footnote-151)

## To Sham

Abu Taalib’s care for Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) reached an extent beyond description. Their two souls united that it was difficult for each of them to separate from the other. When Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) saw that his uncle was preparing to travel, he became upset and uncomfortable that the travel might be long. He wouldn’t tolerate this separation and it wouldn’t be easy for him to resort to a fortress protecting him from the gales save this merciful old man. If he travelled, then who would pat upon his shoulder, who would join him to his warm chest, who would grant him pity and sympathy to make him forget his orphancy?

As soon as Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) saw his uncle stepping towards his sumpter, his tears began to fall from his eyes towards his cheeks.

When this merciful old man saw the tears of the orphan falling down, his compassionate heart began to beat and couldn’t tolerate his nephew’s words: “O uncle, to whom will you leave me? Neither a father nor a mother I have.”

Abu Taalib couldn’t but to say: “By Allah, I won’t go without him. I won’t part from him nor will be part from me at all.”

He took him on the same sumpter to be near to each other always. The caravan went on through the desert until it reached Busra; a country in Sham. They stopped to rest after a long travel.[[152]](#footnote-152) There was a monk called Buhayra living in his cell. But it was the first time for the caravan to see this monk. As much as they travelled through this land but they hadn’t met or talked with this monk.

The monk came out of his cell and saw the caravan. There was something that drew his attention. There was a cloud moving to shadow one of those in the caravan. When the caravan stopped, the monk noticed another thing. He noticed that the tree, which they stopped near, bent it branches to shadow the same one, who had been shadowed by the cloud.

He was so astonished but when he remembered who was there between the lines of the holy Book he had, his astonishment left his prudent mind. He came down from his cell, ordered his companions to serve food and invited the caravan saying: “O people of Quraysh, I have served some food for you. I like that all of you; the little boys and the old men, the servants and the masters to come.”

One from among the caravan said: “O Buhayra, by Allah you have something in your mind today. We passed by you times and times but you did never do such a thing for us. What is the matter today?”

They accepted his invitation and came with him except one, who was the very point of the monk’s attention. It was Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), who stayed under the tree with the baggage.

The monk’s eyes roved hear and there but they didn’t see what they looked for.

O Buhayra, all of them were here except a little boy. He stayed with the baggage.

But the questions of Buhayra wouldn’t stop unless that little boy came. Some one went to bring the boy. The deep examining looks of the monk began to check some things of the boy’s body to find the description he had read in the holy Book about this great boy.

When they finished eating their food, Buhayra began to ask Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) some questions to be sure about what he had in his mind.

The Monk turned to Abu Taalib asking: What relation is between you and this boy?”

Abu Taalib said: “He is my son.”

The monk said: “He is not your son. His father must not be alive.”

Abu Taalib said: “He died while his mother was pregnant with him.”

The monk said: “You are true. Go back with your nephew to your country and be careful of the Jews. By Allah, if they see him and know what I know, they will do their best to do away with him. Your nephew will be of great importance. Hurry up with him to your country.”[[153]](#footnote-153)

Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) came back with his uncle after seeing different sides of life and after roving through a new world rather than Mecca, in which he lived and grew.

Abu Taalib came back with his nephew more carefully, surrounding him with care and love. He strived with caution to protect him from that fatal group, the wicked Jews, who intended if they could to cut this bud before blooming.

These images wouldn’t leave Abu Taalib’s imagination. They were engraved inside his mind. He wanted to record them in order to be engraved upon the forehead of the time to be read by all the generations so he documented them in his poetry:

The son of Aamena,[[154]](#footnote-154) Muhammad to me

was much lovelier than my sons.

When he clung to the rain I pitied him

whereas the camels were about to set out

my eyes rained with tears like scattered pearls.

I considered his close relation and regarded the will of

the grandfather.

I asked him to travel with generous, brave uncles,

who moved to the farthest known place,

until they reached Busra and saw a monk,

who told them a truthful talk about him,

who must be protected against the enviers;

the Jews, who strived to kill Muhammad when seeing the signs.

Abu Taalib recorded this event with his verses and showed the situation of Buhayra the monk when he stood against the three Jewish rabbis, who plotted to kill Muhammad, the expected Prophet:

They came deciding to kill Muhammad

but he prevented them by showing what the Torah had.

He said to them: you intend the worst of aims;

do you want to kill Prophet Muhammad?

Then you be disgraced with your sins!

Your evil will never be.

There is a One to protect him against every intrigue!

That is one of his signs,

and the light of day is not like the darkness.[[155]](#footnote-155)

After all that we don’t doubt that Abu Taalib was certain about the great future of his nephew after he had seen all those signs, which he paid his full attention and care for, because what happened wouldn’t make anyone indifferent to because what happened were extraordinary things.

All those signs and evidences Abu Taalib saw in his nephew, he wouldn’t see in anyone else.

Why the diviner asked him to bring him back the boy whereas he had met many many others? Why did he say: “He will be of great importance?”

Then the care of the monk Buhayra towards the caravan whereas the caravan used to pass by the cell since a long time without attracting a bit of Buhayra’s attention so why it was so that day?

And the conversation between Buhayra and Abu Taalib, which had firm evidence ... Abu Taalib said that he was his son but Buhayra answered with no any doubt that he was not Abu Taalib’s son and that his father would not be alive and then he warned him of the Jews because he would be of great importance! They were clear signs on doubt!

These evidences, besides what he had heard from his father Abdul Muttalib, the blessedness of this boy when he participated them in their meals, the flowing water from the rock, which this boy had kicked, the cloud that travelled with the caravan to shadow this boy and the branches of the tree when bending to shadow this blessed boy made Abu Taalib believe definitely that his nephew would be greater than the others at all.

Abu Taalib saw all that in his nephew besides the personal qualities and virtues such as his truthfulness, honesty, ideality of morals, kindness, gentleness, eloquence ... to the infinite chain of good aspects and high qualities he had. This made Abu Taalib think a lot about this boy, whose qualities were not found in that low society with its bad traditions and low habits. Not only Abu Taalib had noticed these nonesuch qualities in his nephew but also all the people of Mecca. They called him the truthful, the trustworthy. They all accepted him to judge between them. He talked and they believed and he ordered and they obeyed.

## Marriage

That successful trip made Abu Taalib, who had a big family and whose income was not enough, ask his nephew to look for a job in order that he might help his somehow needy uncle in his big family’s expenses. Moreover he thought that a great future awaiting his nephew and he didn’t want him to be dependent or inactive.

He thought that it would be better for his nephew to work in trade for one of those wealthy people of Mecca. The position and the high qualities his nephew had would make everyone happy to employ him. In fact the merchants would complete to win him.

Khadeeja[[156]](#footnote-156) heard of what conversation was between Abu Taalib and his nephew. She sent for him and she would be very happy to employ such truthful and trustworthy man to undertake her trades.

Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) came back with great profits. This made him have a good position in Khadeeja’s good heart until she loved him and wished if he would be her spouse. She wouldn’t find anyone better than him in his handsomeness, morals, honesty, truthfulness and pure deeds.

Khadeeja, since that moment when she listened to her servant Maysara, who accompanied Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) in his travels, when telling her about every sign happened to Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) on their way to Sham, began to think of him and ignored everything else. She found that he was the perfect man that she would never accept to be a wife of other than.

But how would she achieve her aim whereas many traditions and obstacles blocking her way towards her sweet expectation?

The traditions decided that the man, who had to propose to engage the woman and it was not possible for the woman to do so.

Would she submit to the traditions to lose her hope? Or would she overstep this dam before her heart broke and her life lost when Muhammad would be the share of other than her?

She thought of an idea that no one would feel that she had trespassed the traditions. She sent a woman called Nafeesa bint Munya to tell Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) about the wish of Khadeeja. Khadeeja waited for her woman that she might bring her good news.

Nafeesa brought the good news and Muhammad hurried to his uncle full of delight.

The wedding took place. The leader of Quraysh and the master of the Arabs, at that time, Abu Taalib stood up to do a speech. He said:

“Praise be to Allah, Who has made us of the progeny of Abraham and the descent of Ishmael and the origin of Mi’add and the race of Muzar. He has made us the guardians of His House and the guards of His Sanctum. He has made for us a House, to which people intend from everywhere, made for us a safe sanctum and had made us the rulers over the people.

My nephew Muhammad bin Abdullah isn’t compared with a man unless he will be preferred to him in honour, nobility, virtue and reason. If he has a little money; money is a transient shadow, a changeable thing and a paid back debt.

Here is Muhammad. You know his lineage well.... He proposed to engage Khadeeja bint Khuwaylid and paid her dowry as so and so....

By Allah, he will be of high position and great importance.”[[157]](#footnote-157)

This speech of Abu Taalib showed two things;

He began his speech with praising Almighty Allah for making them of the progeny of Abraham and the descents of Ishmael that the idolatry had never polluted them with its filths and that they -the Hashemites- were a continuous origin and a remainder ray connected with the first light of Abraham so they were an eternal symbol of the divine mission of Abraham (a.s.).

This quality that distinguished them from the rest of people made them the guardians of the Holy House (the Holy Kaaba), which had been built by their father Abraham on the order of Almighty Allah. Hence they alone were the guardians of the Holy Kaaba; therefore they became the rulers over the people.

Then he went on showing the excellence of his nephew. He declared that his nephew was the most perfect man and he was preferable to the all in the scales of morals and values. No one would be comparable to him in his qualities and excellences at all.

After all that he would be -in the near future- greater and higher than what he was at that day. Abu Taalib swore by Allah and definitely his swear had its meaning and value when he said: He will be of high position and great importance.

It was not but the divine mission, with which he had guided the human beings to end the page of prophecy with the brightest ray and the best shining light.

Abu Taalib looked farther than his day and beyond the reality, in which he lived, to announce to the delightful party about that great importance (the Prophecy) so that they wouldn’t be surprised with it.

## The Dawn of the Mission

### The First Dawn

The orphan, who had spent those years of his life under the wings of his uncle, became a muscular man today. He became a master of a family and a father of children. Although he was not of so much money, his family lived happily and safely to the full.

Did the task of Abu Taalib end now? Did he carry out the will of his father Abdul Muttalib concerning his orphan grandson? Did he fulfill his duty towards his nephew to turn towards his own family and children, who hadn’t got their sufficient share of their father since he had been busy with his nephew with all of his heart and mind?

Certainly the answer would be NO!

The answer might be YES if the orphan was not the son of Abdullah bin Abdul Muttalib. The answer might be YES if the orphan was anyone else, not this one, who would change the line of history and who would spread the light all over this dark universe.

As the orphan was the son of Abdullah so the task of Abu Taalib wouldn’t end even now when the orphan became the husband of Khadeeja and the father of smiling flowers.

In fact the task would begin since now; since this day when Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) had passed the forty years of honoured life!

It was the expected day where Abdul Muttalib wished from his deep heart to be alive to see its shining sun and to follow its guiding rays but when he saw that he was about to leave for the other world, he recommended his lovely son Abu Taalib to save the man of this great day and asked his other sons, whoever of them would remain until this day, to believe in him; the man, who would be chosen by the Heaven for the great mission.

Since the death of Abdul Muttalib, Abu Taalib had been waiting for the dawn of this day impatiently for he didn’t know whether his life would reach this day or his page would be folded. He was afraid that the death might attack him as his father without attending the dawn of this day and he would miss the honour of believing in its rightness, glory and greatness.

Yes, that day came with its smiling face and Abu Taalib’s face shone, his heart delighted and his soul countered to see with his eyes the dawn of that expected day.

And now Muhammad the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) went to his uncle al-Abbas, Abu Taalib’s brother, and said to him: “Allah has ordered me to announce my mission.” He asked his uncle to support him, but al-Abbas found that he was not able to undertake this heavy task so he apologized to his nephew saying: “... but you ask your uncle Abu Taalib because he is the eldest of your uncles and if he doesn’t support you, certainly he won’t disappoint you or betray you.”

When Abu Taalib saw them both, he thought that there was something important. He asked: “What is the matter? What made you come at this time?

He listened to his brother al-Abbas telling him of what matter their nephew had brought. As soon as Abu Taalib heard that, his eyes shone delightfully and said his saying, which would fill the heart of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) with happiness, courage and power to go on carrying out the order of his God stably, courageously and faithfully because he got a good assistant and a strong fortress, to which he would resort if any storm faced him. Abu Taalib said: “O my nephew, set about! You are exalted, defended by a great party and honoured of a great father. By Allah, no one confutes you, unless he will be confuted with sharp tongues and sharp swords. By Allah, the Arabs will submit to you. My father had read all the books and he often said: “There will be a Prophet from my progeny. I wish I would live till that day to believe in him. Whoever of my children lives till that day has to believe in him.”[[158]](#footnote-158)

Abu Taalib encouraged Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) to go on his mission and promised to defend him, to support him and to sacrifice for the sake of the mission. Then he remembered what his father had said to him and to his brothers in his will. The expected day came and Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) became the Apostle of Allah so Abu Taalib had to believe in him and to support him to achieve the will of his father so that the soul of Abdul Muttalib would content and his eye would delight.

This was the first evidence of Abu Taalib’s faith in Muhammad’s mission, otherwise he would be the first to deny it and refute what Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) pretended. He could do that whereas Muhammad was his foster-son besides that his mission was not yet active or accepted by anyone. It was still a seed without a stem yet. It was easy for him to perish it without any difficulty or at least he could let his nephew alone without promising to support him or to encourage him so enthusiastically.

But we found that Abu Taalib was waiting for that expected event to occur in a moment or another and when he saw the first sign of the prophecy he didn’t become surprised; therefore as soon as al-Abbas ended his talk with his nephew, Abu Taalib encouraged Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) to announce his mission without any hesitation.

If Abu Taalib hadn’t believed in his nephew’s pretense, he wouldn’t have encouraged him to spread it and he would have taken a different situation. But his faith and certainly about the mission led him to assist his nephew so enthusiastically for the task he would undertake was so heavy that he had to assist and defend as possible as he could because he knew well that it was the very divine mission, which the Holy Books had talked about as Abdul Muttalib had read.

### The Day of the Warning

Another day came. It was not less important than that day of the revelation of the mission.

When the Holy Quranic verse of the Warning ‘And warn your nearest relations...**’**[[159]](#footnote-159) was revealed to the Prophet believed in the mission, to invite the close relatives of Quraysh and to tell them about the purpose of this invitation but the crowed separated without any use.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) tried again to gather them. And as soon as he finished his speech, his uncle Abu Taalib said to him: “How much we like to assist you, to accept your relatives gathering and I am one of them but I am the first of them to do what you like. Follow what you are ordered of. By Allah, I will still be your guard and protector but my self doesn’t obey me to give up the religion of Abdul Muttalib.”[[160]](#footnote-160)

Abu Lahab[[161]](#footnote-161) objected to Abu Taalib by saying: “By god, this is the evil! Prevent him (Muhammad) before he will spoil the others.”

Abu Taalib answered him: “By Allah, we will defend him as long as we are alive.”[[162]](#footnote-162)

Then he turned to his nephew and said: “O my Master! Get up and say whatever you like. Inform of your God’s mission. You are the most truthful, the most honest.”[[163]](#footnote-163)

What a faith that overcame Abu Taalib to make him rush from among more than forty persons, who were seized by ignorance and whose eyes were covered by a haze that they couldn’t see the light shining from the mission of this new Prophet.

It was Abu Taalib, who offered his support, who accepted the advice and who believed what his nephew had said. Wouldn’t this refer to the deep faith, the true submission and the reasonable obedience of him, who could distinguish between the truth and the falsehood?

If Abu Taalib hadn’t believe in the Prophet’s mission, he would have adopted another situation like that of Abu Lahab and he wouldn’t confute Abu Lahab so severely until he said to him: “Be silent, O you to say so ... !?[[164]](#footnote-164)

Weren’t Abu Taalib and Abu Lahab two brothers and both of them were uncles of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.)? So why did each of them have a different situation?

This defended, assisted, encouraged the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and strived against the arrogant of Quraysh with a sharp tongue and that defamed the Prophet, prevented people from believing him, distributed his speech and mocked his mission.

Wasn’t the faith-alone-that imposed upon Abu Taalib his situation, which he had never deviated from? And wasn’t the polytheism-alone-that imposed upon Abu Lahab his situation, which he had never given up?

After Abu Taalib showed the arrogant of Quraysh that he had submitted to the mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), he saw some eyes looking askance at him and trying to devour him grudgingly. He thought that he had to mystify his real situation to be free in working for the sake of the mission without being restrained by any one of those arrogant. This explained his saying: “... but my self doesn’t obey me to give up the religion of Abdul Muttalib.”

But what was the religion of Abdul Muttalib? It was the very religion of Abraham (a.s.) was but a continuation of that religion and a completion of all those previous divine religions.

This was the way that Abu Taalib decided to follow in order to confuse the arrogant of Quraysh about the truth of his real belief. He said to his nephew: “Get up O my Master!” This word (my master) was certain evidence that Abu Taalib had believed in the mission of his nephew. My master was a word that Abu Taalib addressed his nephew; the orphan, whom Abu Taalib himself had brought up, whereas it was Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), who had to say it to his uncle with his many years of old, but it was the prophecy that made Abu Taalib say it! But Allah gave Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) many excellences when He had chosen him for the mission that were above uncle ship, oldness, bringing up and guarding.

All that Abu Taalib had perceived when he said to his nephew: “Get up my Master!” He was his master as long as he was the Holy Prophet. He had to believe in his mission, to obey him and to submit to his orders. Then he added after saying: “... my master ... Say whatever you like and announce your mission. You are the most truthful and the most trustworthy.”

As long as Abu Taalib thought that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was the most truthful one, so how would he deny his mission? But he noticed some eyes winking and some tongues backbiting with sarcasm and mockery until he heard someone saying: “He ordered you to obey your son.”[[165]](#footnote-165) They meant Ali (a.s.) when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had appointed him as his guardian.

But Abu Taalib didn’t pay any attention to what they said. In fact he answered them with a word that disappointed them and supplied his son Ali with a great power of encouragement: “Let him (Ali) alone. He would never fail to assist his cousin (Muhammad)....[[166]](#footnote-166)

This was not the first word that Ali (a.s.) had heard from his father showing his contentment with his supporting his cousin; the master of the humanity. Abu Taalib had seen Ali (a.s.) offering the prayer behind the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in the first moment of the mission in a secret place for fear of the polytheists. Then Ali (a.s.) answered his father: “O father! I have believed in Allah and His Apostle. I have believed in all that the Prophet has said. I have offered the prayer with him and followed him.”

Abu Taalib said to his son: “As long as he invites you for goodness, you are to keep to him.”[[167]](#footnote-167)

What a fine word it was that showed a deep faith rooted in the heart of its sayer. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would invite but to goodness and so every reasonable one had to keep to him. This was also evidence showing the faith of Abu Taalib otherwise he wouldn’t encourage his son to keep to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) with his mission. If it was not so, he would prevent his son from following Muhammad and to deny his mission and to direct his son to the right way according to his own thought. Abu Taalib was certain that his nephew was inspired by the Heaven; therefore he encouraged his son to keep to him.

This was not the only line in the shining page of Abu Taalib’s history but there were many other bright lines.

It was mentioned that Imam Ali (a.s.) had said: “My father said to me: O my son! Keep to your cousin for you will be safe from any immediate or later evil. Then he recited:

The best of deeds is keeping to Mohammad,

So be firm in that O Ali, with all of your power.[[168]](#footnote-168)

Another once he saw the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) offering the Prayer and Ali (a.s.) was beside him on the right hand. He noticed his son Jafar and shouted at him, ‘keep the side of your Cousin and offer the prayer at his left hand.’[[169]](#footnote-169)

Then Abu Taalib recited some verse of poetry, in which he mentioned his two sons, Ali and Jafar as his trusted man against the difficulties of life and he chose them for a great task, the task of supporting their cousin.

Ali and Ja’far are my trusts

whenever the time brings distresses and disasters.

O you both! Support your cousin and don’t fail him.

He is my blood-brother’s son.

By Allah I won’t fail the Prophet

Neither will any of my sons.[[170]](#footnote-170)

It was a clear confession of Abu Taalib when saying: “By Allah, I won’t fail the Prophet.” It was a great swear that Abu Taalib had really been loyal to and had done his best to carry out. Neither he nor any of his sons tried to fail the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) a moment throughout their lifetime. They supported him until the last moment of their lives.

Once again Abu Taalib invited his brother Hamza (Abu Ya’la)[[171]](#footnote-171) to spread the religion of Allah and encouraged him to tolerate the distresses he would face in the way of this great task and asked him to assist his nephew, whom Allah (s.w.t.) had entrusted with this mission, with all power he had. He recited:

O Abu Ya’la! Be patient with the distresses you face

in revealing the mission of Ahmad.[[172]](#footnote-172)

Strive to firm this religion!

Surely you will succeed with your hard attempt.

Follow him, who has been sent by Allah, sincerely and

determinedly

O Hamza, don’t be unbeliever!

I as so happy when you say: I am a believer,

so be a supporter of the Prophet for the sake of Allah

Talk to Quraysh about what you believe in,

and say loudly to them: Ahmad has never been a

magician![[173]](#footnote-173)

Abu Taalib was an Islamic propagandist, who seized any opportunity to express what there was there was in his heart. He would be very happy when Hamza would say: I am a believer. Declaring this, he had to support the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for the sake of Allah (s.w.t.) and not for the kinship because faith and religion would be above anything else according to Abu Taalib’s thought!

It would be better to end this chapter with a word by al-Barazanji. He said: “It was mentioned so recurrently by many of the historians that Abu Taalib loved the Prophet (s.a.w.a.), guarded him, supported him, assisted him in revealing the mission, believed in all what he had said and ordered his sons like Ali and Ja’far to follow him and support him.” Then he added: “These facts showed clearly that Abu Taalib’s heart was full of faith in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).”[[174]](#footnote-174)

## Jihad

The mission of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became so active and spread its rays here and there for the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had a strong fortress saving him from the storms. His uncle Abu Taalib had promised Allah to support His religion, which his nephew had been entrusted with by his God. Abu Taalib tried his best to save and support his nephew even if he would be to sacrifice his sons or himself for the sake of the Prophet’s mission.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) began to announce his mission openly after being surrounded by this guard and support. He set out courageously and bravely without fearing anything as long as he had a fortress he could resort to.

Now a new bright page of Abu Taalib’s history opened. After the page of believing, the page of jihad and firm defense began its shining lines in the way of the real sacrifice for the true belief. He defended the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) against the arrogants of Quraysh and made the way free for him to spread his mission. Abu Taalib not only defended the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) but he also defended anyone who had believed in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), against the tormenting of the oppressive polytheists of Quraysh.

It was a page full of sacrifice, true jihad and steadfast defending. Would life have a meaning without a firm belief, deep-rooted faith, steadfast jihad and a truthful brave tongue? If the tongue couldn’t carry out the task alone, there would be sharp swords, muscular hands and great wills.

Hence the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became so active in his mission and his voice became so loud. Quraysh began to fear this new mission, which invited the people to profess in the unity of the One and Only God and to discard those idols, which were made of wood and stone by their own hands and which didn’t hear or see and didn’t benefit or harm. People stood up before those idols tied up like subservient slaves losing power, option and reason in front of dead substances. It didn’t show save the ossification of minds, the death of senses and the stupidity of traditions.

The new mission spread widely and the believers increased. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) began to announce his mission openly. He mocked the idols, around which there were flocks of beastly people ready to sacrifice themselves for. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) began to make them think about their dark and bitter reality they lived in and invited them to come out of their sphere. But alas! The blind wouldn’t know what light was as the bat, which wouldn’t fly during the brightness of the day!

The people of Quraysh became so angry when Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) defamed their idols. They didn’t find save Abu Taalib to make reparation to them. A group of notable men of Quraysh went to Abu Taalib complaining against his nephew. They said: “O Abu Taalib! Your nephew abused our gods, faulted our beliefs, stultified our traditions and considered our forefathers as deviants. So either you prevent him from doing that or you leave him alone to us. And as you are in disagreement with him as we are, so we will relieve you of him.”[[175]](#footnote-175)

Abu Taalib answered them leniently and gently until they left but the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) kept on spreading his mission.

But when they didn’t find any result for their complaint, they decided to go to Abu Taalib complaining again: “O Abu Taalib! You are so old and you have honour and high position among us. We asked you to prevent your nephew from keeping on his doing but you didn’t. By Allah, we won’t tolerate abusing our forefathers, faulting our traditions and defaming our gods. So either you make him refrain from his doings or we will fight him and you until one of the parties will be defeated.”

Abu Taalib stopped between two difficult situations; each of them was so serious. He was afraid if he declared the war against his people that it would do away with the young and the old and at the same time he could never fail the divine mission where he had promised to support hid nephew, the Apostle of Allah (s.a.w.a.); moreover he had been recommended by his father Abdul Muttalib to support Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and to believe in him when he would be chosen by the Heaven.

He made up his mind. He called for his nephew and told him of what the delegation of Quraysh had said to him. He wanted to be sure about the determination of his nephew in carrying out the mission. Then he said to him: “Save yourself and save me and don’t burden me with what I can’t bear.” He didn’t notice of his nephew but determination, strictness, firmness and seriousness. His nephew said: “O uncle! If they put the sun in my right hand and the moon in my left hand to give up this matter, I will never do until Allah (s.w.t.) makes it overcome or I die for it.”

He had a look at his nephew as he got up to leave and a deep pain was inside his heart thinking that (as some historians mentioned) his uncle would betray him or would leave him alone without any support so some tears fell down from the Prophet’s eyes ....[[176]](#footnote-176)

Abu Taalib noticed that and became uncomfortable ... a moment passed and he became more determined and firm. He determined to support the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his mission even if he would confront all of Quraysh or even the Arabs all in all.

He had to strive as long as the divine will had chosen him to be the guardian of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) since the first day and since the first dawn of the mission.

“O my nephew! Come one!”

With this word Abu Taalib broke the silence and the long pondering of his nephew. He added: “O my nephew, go ahead! Say whatever you like! By Allah, I will never betray you whatever happen.”[[177]](#footnote-177)

Then he recited:

By Allah they won’t reach you whatever numerous they were

until I am buried under the ground.

Announce your mission and never mind anything,

and let your eyes be delighted.

You invited me and I knew that you were sincere to me.

You are the most truthful, the most honest.

I have known that the religion of Muhammad

is the best of religions among all of the people.[[178]](#footnote-178)

We don’t have to pass by these verses without paying attention to them. These verses showed clearly the faith of Abu Taalib in wonderful images and certain concepts that couldn’t be distorted or misworded.

After the conversation occurred between Abu Taalib and the delegation of Quraysh, Abu Taalib wanted to relieve his nephew and to reassure his heart so he recited these verses to show his nephew that his uncle was still the supporter, the assistant and the defender as ever as he had been and as ever as he would be until he would meet his God after contenting his conscience, achieving his promise and carrying out his father’s will.

He would never fail his nephew or leave him alone. He assured him that he would never mind for the deviate flocks of Quraysh for no one of them would harm him until Abu Taalib would be buried under the ground. The last verse confirmed Abu Taalib’s faith in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)’s mission after he had encouraged his nephew to announce his mission openly in the previous verses.

These verses showed the true faith of Abu Taalib (a.s.) besides his full knowing about the other religions when saying that the religion of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was the best of religions at all.

But the evil fancies and the bad intentions didn’t want to let the brightness of these verses spread easily so they tried to throw some ashes upon it. They added another verse to distort the pure image that expressed the faith of Abu Taalib. They fabricated the following verse:

Lest I will be blamed or it will be shameful to me,

I may declare believing!

You can see clearly the great difference between this verse and the verses you have just read above.

Ahmad Zayni Dahlan said about this further verse: “It was said that this verse was fabricated and added to the poetry of Abu Taalib. It was not of his actual saying.”[[179]](#footnote-179)

And if we agreed with those, who ascribed the verse to Abu Taalib, who hadn’t said it; nevertheless it wouldn’t serve their aim and wouldn’t satisfy their purpose. The meaning of the verse would be thus: if he didn’t fear to be blamed or abused, he would be able to declare his faith in the mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) openly in front of the people of Quraysh and wouldn’t keep it secret. It didn’t mean that if he didn’t fear to be blamed, he would be a believer. If it had this meaning so it would definitely contradict the meaning of the previous verses, in which he had confirmed his believing in his nephew when he had invited him to his mission.

Till now everyone, even those who tried to distort the real image of Abu Taalib said that Abu Taalib was acute, prudent, quick-witted, eloquent and sharply discerning. Would it be acceptable for him to contradict himself within a few lines of poetry?

Quraysh knew the real situation of Abu Taalib towards the new mission and towards the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). They became so angry that he had this firm situation and that all their attempts failed. They asked him to prevent his nephew from abusing their gods but he didn’t. They asked him to leave Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) alone to them but they found that he encouraged Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) to spread hid mission and that he promised to support and to defend him.

After all of that the polytheists of Quraysh found a new way to conclude a deal with Abu Taalib. They came to Abu Taalib bringing with them Imare bin al-Waleed. They said to him: “O Abu Taalib! This is Imara bin al-Waleed. He is the best young man and the most handsome of Quraysh. Take him as your son and give us your nephew, who denied your religion and your forefathers’ religion, separated the unity of your people and mocked their traditions. We kill him and it will be a man for a man.”

If Abu Taalib didn’t know how to behave in the serious situations, he would send a loud laugh scornfully and slightingly towards this silly word but he said prudently and bravely: “By Allah! What a bad deal it is! Do you give me your son to feed him for you and I give you my son to be killed? By Allah, this will never be at all!”

What silliness it was indeed. It showed the devaluation, the irrationality and the unintellectuality of those people.

Then al-Mut’im bin Adi bin Nawfal bin Abd Manaf, who was the ally of Abu Taalib, said: “O Abu Taalib! By Allah, your people have been fair to you. They try to rid you from what you hate ... but I don’t see that you want to accept their attempt ...!”

Abu Taalib answered him: “By Allah, they haven’t been fair to me. But you failed me and supported them against me. Do whatever you like!”[[180]](#footnote-180)

Then Abu Taalib recited a poem criticizing al-Mut’im bin Adi about his betraying and then he criticized everyone betraying him of the family of Abd Manaf[[181]](#footnote-181) and everyone of Quraysh bearing enmity against him.

Abu Taalib thought, after declaring his situation towards Quraysh that he had to armor himself and to be ready for the emergencies he might face from Quraysh after they knew his situation. He didn’t find save the Hashemites to depend upon in his struggle against Quraysh.

He invited them to be with him to defend the new religion and to protect the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) against the evil doers of Quraysh if they would try to do any harm to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). All the Hashemites compiled with his invitation except that deviate brother Abu Lahab, the cursed.

Abu Taalib became so delighted when he saw the great situation of the Hashemites that he would not worry much about the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). He thanked his kin and praised them for their support and assistance. He poetized this gratitude and praise in a poem to be eternal throughout the generations. He had to mention Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), who had the great honour and glory that no one else than him had. He recited:

If one day Quraysh gathers to pride,

Abd Manaf will be their best and purest essence.

And if Abd Manaf gets the honour,

Hashem will be the most honourable among them,

And if the Hashemites pride one day,

Muhammad will be their most glorified essence.

Quraysh, all in all, rushed against us,

but they failed and lost their reason.

We have never accepted any unfairness, and if they show haughtiness, we are always humble to people.

We defend our sanctuary whenever there is a danger,

and strike whoever try to harm a rock of it.

With us the withered plant becomes fresh.

and under our shadow it grows and lasts.[[182]](#footnote-182)

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his mission became so strong and the disagreement increased between the Hashemites and Quraysh. Abu Taalib began to fear for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) from Quraysh more than before. He began to care much for him and tried not to let him alone so that he might be hurt by anyone of Quraysh.

Once, Abu Taalib missed his nephew. He looked for him but he didn’t find him. He became so worried and upset. He determined to revenge after hearing that Quraysh intended to assassinate the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to do away with the new mission.

He called for the young men of the Hashemites and ordered each of them to hide a weapon under his cloths. He ordered each one of them to stay beside a chief of Quraysh and agreed with them upon a certain sign that if he failed to find Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), they would revenge Muhammad’s blood upon those men of Quraysh at the same moment.

The young men took their places as they were ordered by the old man. He went to look for his nephew. When he found him safe, he took him by the hand and stood before the people of Quraysh shouting: “O people of Quraysh! Do you know what I have intended to do? ...” He told them about his plan and his young men’s intention and asked his young men to show their weapons. He challenged them by showing them his powerfulness. The defeat appeared upon the faces of Quraysh especially the arrogant Abu Jahl.

Abu Taalib said to them: “By Allah! If you kill him, I will never let any of you alive. It will be the war until we or you are perished.”[[183]](#footnote-183)

Then Abu Taalib recited some verses praising his nephew after criticizing the bad situation of Quraysh. He declared for Quraysh that he was the guardian of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and his family:

Inform Quraysh wherever they are,

even though that everything of them is but haughtiness,

that I am, with swearing by the reciters,

the books and the scientists,

a sincere guardian of Muhammad’s family.

My heart and conscience love them.

I won’t give up my kin and sons,

even if the war brings its disasters.

Do they order their people to kill Muhammad so unfairly?

I swear that Quraysh will gain nothing,

where their reason is lost.

My nephew is my heart-root.

Will the young men drink pure water,

while Ahmad will be in the grave?

O you, the son of the master of Qussay![[184]](#footnote-184)

As if your face is like the full moon.[[185]](#footnote-185)

There was another event, in which Abu Taalib had proved his powerfulness and sovereignty over Quraysh.

One day while the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was offering the prayer, Quraysh wanted to mock at him and to disturb his prayer. They asked Abdullah bin az-Ziba’ra to undertake this mean task. He took some feces and blood of an animal and stained the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) while he was prostrating in his prayer.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hadn’t save Abu Taalib to resort to. He went to his uncle heartbrokenly and his eyes were full of tears. It was a great insult.

His uncle became very angry about what happened to his nephew. He had to revenge him on them and to repay them the insult.

He, holding his sword, rushed towards them with his nephew. His face was overcome with rage and the signs of revenge were talking loudly until he reached the meeting of the people. They were afraid of his angry look. They tried to run away before him but he nailed them in their places with a sudden word: “By Allah, if any of you moves from his place, I will cut him with my sword.”

They stuck to the ground as if they lost their will. He approached to them and asked his nephew: “My son! Who is the doer?”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) pointed to Abdullah bin az-Ziba’ra. Abu Taalib approached to him and hit him on his nose. Then he stained the people’s faces, beards and cloths with feces and blood. He scolded and insulted them severely. Then he turned to his nephew saying victoriously: “O my nephew! Are you satisfied now? Do you know who you are? You are Muhammad bin Abdullah (he detailed his lineage). By Allah, you have the most honoured ancestry and the highest rank among the all. O people of Quraysh! Whoever of you wants to move, let him do. You know well who I am!”[[186]](#footnote-186)

Then Abu Taalib recited:

You are Muhammad the Prophet,

a generous master and a son of generous masters.

They are the highborn and so are you.

The best of the origin was the root; Amr[[187]](#footnote-187)

who crumbled bread in the bowels,

when the life of Mecca was miserable!

How are you wronged while I am still alive?

I am the brave, the powerful!

And your men, as if they are lions!

I have known that you are truthful;

You haven’t said but the truth since you have been a child![[188]](#footnote-188)

Abu Taalib began his poem with a clear confession that would let no way for anyone to argue or to object ... so what was the difference between saying the shahada ‘...and I witness that Muhammad is His Apostle’ and Abu Taalib’s confession ‘You are Muhammad the Prophet?’ There was no difference, for both showed confessing the prophecy of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). But the black hearts and the filthy consciences had their own purposes when distorting the truth and changing the reality.

After he praised his ancestors and mentioned the deeds of Amr (Hashem, their grandfather) who enacted feeding the pilgrims when Mecca was afflicted with some years of bannerness. He satiated the hungry stomachs and relieved the distressed hearts.

After that Abu Taalib showed his sympathy towards his nephew and assured that his nephew wouldn’t be defeated as long as he was surrounded by lions that would tread upon whoever thought of doing any evil against him. Then he ended his poem with two verses, in which he certified the truthfulness of his nephew and that he had never heard him saying but truth and rightness since his earliest childhood and he had never found him deviate from the right way at all.

This was but a clear confession of the Prophet’s mission by Abu Taalib as a divine mission. It showed the definite faith of Abu Taalib.

It would be better to quote these verses too to show the reader the real thinking of Abu Taalib towards Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and his encouraging him to keep on carrying out his task determinedly.

Before these verses ibn Abil Hadeed said in his Sharh Nahjul Balagha: “... and from among his (Abu Taalib’s) famous poetry are these verses, in which he addresses Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), clams his heart and orders him to announce his mission.”

Never let those sinuous hands and cawing voices

Prevent you from the rightful task you carry out.

My hand is yours whenever you face your opponent,

and my soul is sacrificed for yours in the disasters.[[189]](#footnote-189)

If we investigate all the poetry of Abu Taalib about this subject, our way will be so long and ramified but let’s go back to our main subject.

Abu Taalib wouldn’t support Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), as he had done since his childhood until he was chosen by the Heaven for the divine mission, as a kin but he supported the very mission, in which he believed, and he supported everyone, who believed in it. He wouldn’t be tranquil if any one of Muhammad’s follower was harmed because of the mission.

He had many shining pages of such support that we wouldn’t pass by without referring to some of them.

The polytheists of Quraysh tortured Usmaan bin Maz’oon al-Jomahi when he became a Muslim they wanted to deviate him from the right way he had chosen. When Abu Taalib heard of that, he revenged Usmaan on Quraysh. Then he recited:

Is it because you remember untrustworthy time,

you are sad and you cry with agony?

Or you remember impudent people,

wronging whoever invites to faith?

Didn’t you see, o Quraysh – Allah may degrade you all,

that we revenged for torturing Usmaan bin Maz’oon?

We fight injustice and face whoever wants to harm us

with every sharp weapon in our hands.

Sharp swords, as if they are mixed with salt,

relieve our avengement on the mad’s heads,

until the men of no reason submit,

and become lenient after haughtiness,

or until they believe in a wonderful divine book revealed

to a Prophet like Moses o Jonah.[[190]](#footnote-190)

What did he mean in his last verse by a wonderful book revealed to a Prophet like Moses or Jonah? Would it be but believing in the Holy Quran? It was a divine book revealed to a Prophet among the prophets, whom Almighty Allah had chosen.

After all these things, could any one deny the faith of Abu Taalib unless that one was a deviate enemy?

Besides the evidence this poetry had that proved the faith of Abu Taalib, it certified what we have said before that Abu Taalib had known much about the previous religions that preceded the mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), which confirmed the continuity of the Religion of Abraham (a.s.) otherwise Abu Taalib wouldn’t mention these religions.

Then he wasn’t satisfied with that until he invited the polytheists to follow this new religion. He made them choose either to be stricken by the sharp swords or to believe in this wonderful book.[[191]](#footnote-191)

Describing the Holy Quran as (wonderful book) had its similar thing mentioned in the Holy Quran itself: ‘Surely we have heard a wonderful Quran, guiding to the right way, so we believe in it.’[[192]](#footnote-192)

Quraysh tortured many Muslims in order to make them give up Islam. Among those, who had been tortured, was Abu Salama bin Abdul Asad al-Makhzoomi, who didn’t find save Abu Taalib to resort to in order to be saved from the torture of Quraysh.

When the tribe of Makhzoomi knew that Abu Taalib had protected their man, they sent a delegation to him. They said to Abu Taalib: “O Abu Taalib! You have protected your nephew Muhammad from us then why do you protect our man from us?”

He answered them: “He resorted to me and he was my nephew (sister’s son; because Abu Taalib’s mother was from the tribe of Makhzoomi)[[193]](#footnote-193) and if I didn’t protect my (sister’s son) I wouldn’t protect my (brother’s son).”

Much ado and argument happened. The delegation feared sedition to take place that might bring bad consequences so they turned empty-handed.

The jihad of Abu Taalib (a.s.) was not limited to defend the Prophet (s.a.w.a.), to resist his enemies, to safeguard him against the plots of Quraysh or to protect the tortured Muslims, who used to resort to him. These things were not the only things he had done, although they were the first to attract his attention. There was another side having its virtuous moral value although it was a silent jihad.

Abu Taalib was an Islamic propagandist. He revealed every sign or virtue of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) one time, glorified and praised the religion another time, invited people to believe in the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) a third time and warned Quraysh of the bad end if they persisted in their deviation and indifference and many other doings he did and poetized them in his poetry to be passed from mouth to mouth as a means of media at that time.

When the Muslims met so much torment and discrimination from Quraysh, they decided to emigrate for Abyssinia. Among the emigrants there was Ja’far, the son of Abu Taalib.

The cause that made Ja’far emigrate was not the same cause of the other Muslims, who left their mother country. Ja’far was mighty and respectable and it was enough for him to be the son of Abu Taalib that Quraysh wouldn’t dare to harm him. But his emigration was of another kind. It had a high purpose. He wanted to be the incentive to the emigration, the guardian of the emigrants and the mediator between the emigrants and their religion’s source, from which they were forced to be far by the unjust power of Quraysh.

But the meanness and the lowness of Quraysh wouldn’t end to a limit. They delegated Amr bin al-Aas and Imara bin al-Waleed after the Muslims to Abyssinia in order to plot and to fabricate every lie against the Muslims as possible as they could to make the king of Ayssinia drive them away from his country, but the prudence, the deep insight and the firm faith of Ja’far uncovered the plots of the delegated persons and made them return empty-handed.

We didn’t want to mention this event but the pen wanted to record its first lines. Whoever wants to read the details let him refer to its sources in the books of history. We wanted to say that when Abu Taalib heard about this plot of Quraysh, he sent some verses of poetry to the Negus of Abyssinia asking him to treat Ja’far well and not to listen to the fabrication of the lying sinner Amr bin Aas.

Abu Taalib said in his verses:

I wish I knew what affairs of Ja’far among people there,

and of Amr and the kin enemies of the Prophet!

Did the goodness of Negus reach Ja’far and his companions,

or it was prevented by a seditious offender?

You know o Negus, glory be to you, that you are so generous,

that whoever resorts to you won’t be disappointed.

You know that Allah has given you great authority,

and every means of goodness,

that still keep to your high qualities.[[194]](#footnote-194)

As long as the verses reached the Negus, he became delighted. He thought that he had to be grateful to the praise of Abu Taalib by being kind to those, who had left their country and resorted to him to live under his protection. He approached them to him and treated them kindly.

When Abu Taalib knew about the kindness of the Negus to the Muslims, he sent him other verses of poetry, in which he invited him to believe in Islam, which the great Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had been sent with for the peoples all over the world:

You know O king of Abyssinia!

Muhammad is a Prophet like Moses and Jesus, the son

of Blessed Marry.

He came with guidance as they both had come with.

Each -according to the order of Allah- guides and educates.

You recite in your Book as a true speech not a divination.

So don’t make a partner with Allah and let you come to Islam,

the way of the rightness is not dark.

Whatever group of ours comes to you,

it will be back with honour and glory.[[195]](#footnote-195)

These verses were clear evidence confirming the faith of Abu Taalib and they were a talking proof showing that he was an Islamic propagandist trying his best to spread Islam as a divine belief and inviting people to believe in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) as a chosen Apostle by the Heaven. It was also evidence showing his knowledge of the Divine Books and the previous missions and Apostles of Allah as we mentioned before. It was a certification of all what was revealed from Almighty Allah and acknowledgement of the prophecy of all His apostles; Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), Jesus Christ and Moses (a.s.). The guidance that had been received from Allah (s.w.t.) was the same that had been received by Jesus Christ and Moses. It was but the guidance of Almighty Allah.

He proved his saying with evidence that as the Negus was Christian so he argued with him by the Bible, in which it had been mentioned that there would be a Prophet after Jesus Christ called Ahmad. Here we noticed that Abu Taalib had known much about the religion of Jesus Christ (a.s.). After that he invited him to believe in the monotheism and to submit to Islam.

It would be impudence if we said after all that that Abu Taalib hadn’t become a Muslim whereas he spent his years inviting people to believe in Islam and that he was certain about the straight way of the rightness, which would save people from deviation and lead them to the light of guidance.

I pray Almighty Allah for forgiveness! No one would say that save the light-headed, the impudent and the deviant, who didn’t refrain from fabricating lies and committing sins.

Abu Taalib, besides his firm faith, believed in the miracles with no doubt and miracles wouldn’t happen save for the prophets or the infallible persons.

One day Abu Jahl came to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) during his prostration when offering the prayer. But his power dispersed and his fingers remained stuck to the stone without being able to do anything. He returned frightenedly and was unable to imagine what happened to him. He was filled with fright that perished his determination.

Abu Taalib predicted a bad future for Abu Jahl and his people if they would keep on their reluctance and if they closed their ears and hearts not to hear the divine call of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). Their end would be like that of the people of Prophet Saaleh (a.s.) when they killed the she-camel of Allah (s.w.t.) and then Allah (s.w.t.) crushed them and sent His torture to befall unto them.

Abu Taalib recited:

O our cousins! Be watchful and give up your deviation!

Otherwise I fear disasters and distresses may occur to you.

By Allah they will be hard lessons for you,

as Thamud and Aad had been tortured before you,

when they were surprised with a bad gale when they killed

the she-camel of the Almighty,

as it was about to drink from the well.

So the wrath of Allah overcame them in a sudden hit of Him.

But more surprising than that was of your affair,

when the stone stuck in the hand of him,

who wanted to hit the patient, the truthful, the pious,

but Allah fixed it in the hand of that foolish treacherous sinner.[[196]](#footnote-196)

I felt in this poem, besides the truthful accent, which was available in all of his poetry, a pitiful accent showing Abu Taalib’s sincere pity and emotion towards those, who would keep on their deviation and reluctance and then they would be liable to the wrath of Allah (s.w.t.).

It was a high humane look of Abu Taalib towards his people. He tried to affect their hearts when he reminded them of the bad end of the people of Prophet Saaleh (a.s.) when they insisted on their reluctance and didn’t listen to the advice of their Prophet. And thus the same end would wait for these people if they insisted on their situation towards their Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). Its first signs appeared. It was the stone, which Allah (s.w.t.) had fixed in the hand of this treacherous Abu Jahl.

Abu Taalib described the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as patient, truthful and pious out of his firm faith in him; moreover he found that the miracle of the stone as a warning for the people ... and what dreadful the warning of Allah would be!

## Ash-She’b and As-Saheefa

The polytheists became very angry when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became so powerful and his mission spread so widely that many people of different classes and countries believed in sincerely to a degree that they preferred dying to give up their new belief when they were punished with severest kinds of torture. In fact they tolerated pains as if they enjoyed pleasures.

The pain for the sake of the mission was sweeter than any other ease and the midday heat of the desert was more verdant than any other place.

No one of them would utter a word that might make the polytheists feel that they might yield or give up the right way of Allah (s.w.t.) they had chosen heartedly.

They preferred to leave their homes, their countries and their lovers in order to be safe with their religion.

Quraysh began to think and think, create tricks and look for new plots that might be of use to restrain the spreading mission and to suppress its voice, which entered the hearts without asking permission.

Every plot and every trick the people of Quraysh used didn’t achieve a bit of their aim, didn’t satisfy their beastliness against the new mission and didn’t relieve their fear and worry about their gods, which were about to be trodden by the feet of the Mohammedans.

More important that Quraysh was afraid that the authority and the leadership would be lost and this made Quraysh strive day and night to do away with this mission and its leader.

Quraysh tried to put out this flame, to silence this voice and to cut this twig but it returned empty-handed because Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was safeguarded by his uncle and his men. He was in a strong fortress that no storm could

If a single hand stretched to harm Muhammad or to shed a drop of his blood, hundreds of swords would be unsheathed to pluck out all of Quraysh. Then the mission would be mixed with the blood of the holiest man on the earth and this would have a great effect in the hearts of Muhammad’s followers and it would hasten spreading the mission everywhere.

Quraysh resisted the Prophet’s companions, seduced them and tortured them but it found itself in front of iron that couldn’t be notched, rocks that couldn’t be crumbled and mountains that couldn’t be shaken.

Neither torture nor discrimination would make a true faithful give up his faith. In fact all of that firmed the faith in the hearts and rooted it in the consciences especially when those believers longed for Paradise and its eternal blessedness.

Then what Quraysh do as long as all its means were useless?

In that critical situation and that difficult distress one of the devils of Quraysh thought of a satanic idea. It would satisfy their furious grudge and get them to their sought aim. They thought of the blockade against whoever assisted and protected Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).

They had to declare a cold war to be safe from victims and losses and to force their enemy either to yield and prevent Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) from spreading his mission or to hand him over to Quraysh as cheap victim and priceless prey.

Quraysh wrote down a covenant including some articles; to be as one hand against them without any truce, not to marry from them and not to let them marry from them, not to sell or buy from each other, not accept any peace with them at all and to carry out these conditions without a bit of mercy or pity.

Nothing would make Quraysh give up this blockade unless the Hashemites handed Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) over to the polytheists of Quraysh then the blockade would be annulled and the Hashemites would live normally as before.

They signed the sheet of the covenant and hanged a copy on the wall of the Kaab. This was after seven years of the mission.

When Abu Taalib knew what Quraysh had decided, he criticized it and warned it of bad wars and disasters to take place. He recited a poem about that situation; here are some verses of it:

They expect from us a thing,

they won’t get without striking and stabbing with sharp swords.

They hope we give them Muhammad to be killed, before the heads are dyed with blood!

By the House of Allah! You have told lies! It won’t be until your heads are split and your skulls thrown

in Hateem and Zamzam,

kinship is perished, a wife forgets her husband and one is killed

after one; that is your hatred, oppression, deviation,

committing sins and wronging a Prophet inviting to

guidance

and a matter revealed by the Almighty!

Don’t think we hand him over to you,

His like will never be handed over by any people![[197]](#footnote-197)

It was not important for us what the poem had of brave challenging and threatening Quraysh of a bad war -what we have left of the poem showed this side much clearly- but the last two verses we mentioned were so important for they showed the faith in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) as Prophet and that his mission was but guidance for people revealed by the Beneficent, the Almighty.

Abu Taalib confirmed in his poem that they (the Hashemites) were so proud that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was one of them and that he was the Prophet, whom Almighty Allah had sent to guide them and they, whatever happened, would never leave him alone or betray him at all for they would win glory and honour with him.

Wasn’t this but a clear declaration of Abu Taalib’s true faith in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)? Would anyone, who accused Abu Taalib of being unbeliever, be fair in his judgement? Would the accuser himself express his faith more eloquent than Abu Taalib’s expression?

Abu Taalib pondered thoughtfully and found himself in a critical situation and difficult distresses. He had to make up his mind and to take the final decision. He called for the men of the Hashemites. They decided to go to the She’b[[198]](#footnote-198) (mountain pass) to be safe from Quraysh, which determined to carry out the unjust covenant. All the Hashemites submitted to Abu Taalib’s thought and they all followed him except his deviate brother Abu Lahab, who supported Quraysh against his kin.[[199]](#footnote-199)

The days passed without any glow of hope or relief. They were in extreme distress. Hunger left its bad lines upon their bodies.

Everyone, who would think of helping them even with a crumb of bread, would be considered as treacherous criminal by Quraysh and then he would be punished severely. So the Hashemites became in a miserable condition. Hunger harmed them extremely until they were obliged to eat the leaves of the trees.

In spite of all that, Abu Taalib was very watchful and careful for his nephew that he might be a victim of a secret plot hatched by Quraysh.

Whenever night came and it was time for sleeping, he spread the bed of his nephew before the sight of the all. He remained awake until the all slept soundly; he took his nephew to the bed of his son Ali and took his son to the bed of his nephew that if any one had an evil will, his son Ali would be the victim and the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would be saved.

What a great sacrifice it was! Let history record it with shiny letters in order to be an eternal example of sacrifice, altruism, love, faith and belief!

The malevolent justified Abu Taalib’s defense and jihad to safeguard his nephew as a matter of kinship. Was his nephew Muhammad closer to him than his son Ali? So why did he try to sacrifice his son for his nephew?

They ignored that the zealotry of religion was stronger than the zealotry of kinship. Unless Abu Taalib believed in the prophecy of his nephew, he wouldn’t sacrifice his dearest son for him.

Wasn’t Abu Lahab the brother of Abu Taalib and had the same kinship with Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) so why didn’t the zealotry of kinship lead him to defend his nephew too?

We will mention in a next chapter some events, in which some Muslims tried to kill their fathers or their sons because they were polytheists and enemies of Islam, confirming that the zealotry of faith was higher than the zealotry of kinship.

One night Abu Taalib took his son Ali to the bed of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). Ali said: “O father! I am going to be killed.”

But Abu Taalib asked his son to be patient and no to be afraid of death because it would be the natural end of life and the fate of existence. Life would be not but a way towards death. Abu Taalib told his son that he would be a sacrifice for his preferable beloved:

O my son! Be patient! Patience is the best of reason.

Every liver is going to die!

We offer you, although it is so expensive,

as a sacrifice for the beloved and the son of the beloved,

the honourable, the highborn, the generous.

If your fate comes, it will be inevitable.

Every liver, how long he lives,

is to taste death one day!

His son, Ali; the brave, who had never feared death or harm a single moment throughout his virtuous life and who would be so delighted to sacrifice himself for the Prophet (s.a.w.a.), answered his father:

Do you order me to be patient in supporting Ahmad?

By Allah, I didn’t say what I said out of anger,

But I liked you to see my support

and to know that I was still your obedient.

I’ll strive, for the sake of Allah, to support Ahmad,

the Prophet of guidance, the praised when a child

and a young man. (1)

Whenever Abu Taalib’s feelings were affected during the period of the blockade, he expressed his bitter pains with poetry:

Don’t you know that we have found Muhammad as Prophet,

like Moses; it was mentioned in the first books.

He is to be loved by people,

Allah has imposed upon people loving him!

..........................................

By the House of Allah!

We will never forsake Ahmad whatever distresses we get.

..........................................

We won’t be tried of war until it becomes tired of us,

and we don’t complain whatever disasters we face!

But we are people of reason and prudence,

when the minds of others fly of terrors.[[200]](#footnote-200)

The first verses of the poem were enough to confirm Abu Taalib’s knowledge about the divine religions and his faith in the prophets and the Books of Allah. He had never been a polytheist at all. He had believed in the monotheism since the beginning of his life. We let the other verses of the poem for the reader to see what great meanings they had.

It would be better to quote this passage of one of his poems that might be said during the stay in the She’b. We just quoted the verses that express the deep faith and the clear belief of Abu Taalib:

Don’t you know that boycott is a sin,

and a reasonless matter of distress?

The way of guidance will be known tomorrow,

and the ease of life won’t last for ever.

Don’t mistreat Muhammad,

and don’t follow the deviants.

You wish to kill him; your wishes are like dreams of a sleeper.

By Allah! You never kill him unless you see picking the skulls![[201]](#footnote-201)

You pretend that we give you Muhammad,

before we compete and attack.

He is a Prophet; revelation comes to him from his God,

and whoever denies, the loss will be great then![[202]](#footnote-202)

He criticized Quraysh about the boycott, which would defame and disgrace it and it would bring it lasting distresses. Then he warned it of the bad end it was going to face as a result of its bad doings.

The way of winning the contentment of Almighty Allah was clear and its results would be known in the Day of Resurrection when every soul would meet what it had done in the worldly life but as for the pleasure of this life, they would vanish no doubt whatever one’s age lasted long. Man would never live for ever. The meeting with the Just Judge would come sooner or later.

He asked Quraysh to give up the enmity against the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and not to follow the deviate sinners.

After he had declared his situation, which they had known well, that he would never give them Muhammad until his heads would be cut, bloods would be shed and a massacre would be happened ... and after he had mentioned the virtues of his nephew, he announced his own thought about Muhammad; that he was a Prophet sent by Almighty Allah and he received the revelation from his God to carry out His orders and to spread His mission.

And as for those, who denied it and doubted about it, they would bite their hands regretfully, but alas! The time would have passed for regretting!

After this clear confession of Abu Taalib, was there anything but faith, submission and acknowledgement of the prophecy of his nephew?

Was there any difference between ‘Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)’ and ‘Muhammad is a Prophet receiving revelation from his God’ or any other word having the same meaning? Would it be fair to call that one, who said the first word, a believer and this one, who said the other word a polytheist?

O Allah! It was not but ignorance, deviation and evil wills.

Among Abu Taalib’s poetry were these verses, in which he blamed Quraysh for the boycott, neglecting the kinship and separating the unity in order to achieve its low purposes and bad fancies:

Allah may reward Abd Shams, Nawfal, Taym and Makhzoom,[[203]](#footnote-203)

for their impiety and sins,

and for their separating our unity after that intimacy,

just for achieving their evil wills.

By the House of Allah I swear! Lies you tell!

We will never betray Muhammad,

until the day when no one of us remains alive in the She’b![[204]](#footnote-204)

A day after a day and a month after a month passed. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his guardian and all the Hashemites were still in the She’b suffering the bitterest pains and distresses. Abu Taalib puffed his fiery poetry whenever his inside began to boil.

Two or three years passed and this extremely miserable life remained as it was until a day came when Almighty Allah revealed to the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that He had made the termite eat the document of the blockade hanged on the Holy Kaaba except the Holy Name of Almighty Allah, which was left safe.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) told his uncle of this happy news. He became delighted and the worry and pain calmed down inside him but he asked his nephew to be more certain:

“O my nephew! Did you God tell you that?” When the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) replied positively, Abu Taalib said: “I swear by the stars, that you have never told a lie at all.”

Abu Taalib left the She’b surrounded by some of the Hashemites until they came to the Holy Kaaba. When the people of Quraysh saw them, they thought that they came to hand Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) over to them after they became intolerant of the sufferings of the blockade. Abu Taalib said confidently: “O people of Quraysh! Something’s happened between us and you. They were not mentioned in the document of the covenant. Bring the document to see that there may be a peace between us and you.” He said so to mystify the result in order not to open the document before they would bring it in front of the all.

As they brought it, they were certain that they would catch the prey that they had set many traps for since a long time. They thought that Abu Taalib himself came to deliver them his nephew to do away with him as they had tried since long ago.

But they were surprised when Abu Taalib said to them: “It is time for you to cancel what you made against us and against yourselves.

He said this when they brought the document and put it among them. It was not opened yet. Abu Taalib kept on his speech confidently and he had been certain of the result that his truthful nephew, who had never told a lie at all, had told him about. He added: “I have come to you for a matter between us and you. My nephew told me, and he has never told a lie at all, that Almighty Allah has sent a termite to your document. It has eaten everything in it except the Holy Name of Allah. If it is as he said, so you have to revive your minds. By Almighty Allah we will never hand him over to you until we all are killed. But if it is not so, we will hand him over to you. Then you are free either to kill him or to let him alive.”

They agreed and opened the document. They were astonished to see that it was just as what Abu Taalib said but inspite of that they insisted on their situation and said: “It is your nephew’s magic.”

Abu Taalib said after winning the situation: “Why are we blockaded and the truth is cleared now that you are unjust and unfair?”

Then he and his followers touched the curtains of the Holy Kaaba praying to Almighty Allah: “O Allah! Support us against those, who have wronged us, prevented us from our relatives and violated our rights!”

Then a group of Quraysh annulled the blockade after finding that they were extremely unjust to the Hashemites, who returned to live their ordinary life after two or three years of hunger, pain, misery ...[[205]](#footnote-205)

We find in every word of Abu Taalib’s a clear image of his deep faith and certainty. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) told him about the termite that had eaten the document of Quraysh and he asked him: “Did your God reveal that to you?”

His asking was not about the origin of the revelation but to show that his faith of a researcher expert and not of a submissive naive believer. His faith was of that kind, which Allah (s.w.t.) had mentioned in the Holy Quran: (He said: What! and do you not believe? He said: Yes, but that my heart may be at ease)[[206]](#footnote-206)

With this certain faith Abu Taalib rushed towards Quraysh arguing about the document of the blockade. He was very sure of what his nephew had told him otherwise he wouldn’t give them the option that if what he had said was false, Muhammad would be handed over to them whether they wanted to kill him or not. What firm faith Abu Taalib had! He believed his nephew to the extent that he challenged Quraysh so confidently before he saw the document for he had never thought that his nephew would tell him a lie.

Let’s suppose that Abu Taalib hadn’t believed in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) before, and then would it be acceptable that Abu Taalib, after being certain of the truthfulness of what the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had told him of the unseen that was revealed to him by Almighty Allah, would still be unfaithful and wouldn’t believe in his nephew’s divine mission in spite of that he had confirmed many times that Muhammad had never and would never tell a lie?

In fact we found in this event the extreme faith of Abu Taalib; in every word he said especially when he offered them the option of killing his dear nephew if his saying would be false. He would never say that unless he was certain about the result without any doubt at all.

If his nephew was true when he told him that Allah (s.w.t.) had revealed to him about the termite and the document, so he would be a Prophet chosen by Allah (s.w.t.) to guide His people and then Abu Taalib had to follow him and to support him until the last moment of his life but if he was a liar then he would deserve to be killed for he had ascribed a lie to Allah (s.w.t.).

If the support of Abu Taalib (a.s.) was not for the sake of the religion and the mission away from the kinship, he wouldn’t challenge them by giving them the option to do to Muhammad whatever they liked but if his support was because of the kinship, Muhammad was still his nephew whether he was truthful or a liar. But since Abu Taalib’s enthusiasm was for the sake of the mission and the Lord of the Heaven, he said so that he was certain about the result and that was an evidence of his faith in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

When the blockade was cancelled and the Hashemites left the She’b victoriously whereas the other side appeared to be unjust and oppressive, Abu Taalib (a.s.) seized the opportunity to mention this event in his poetry:

In the matter of the document an example was!

Would be astonished whoever was told of

From it Allah removed their unbelief and impiety,

and the rightness they denied certainly would appear!

Whatever they said became false,

Whoever said but truthfulness certainly he would lie.[[207]](#footnote-207)

Abu Taalib (a.s.) in his verses considered what happened to the document of the blockade by the termite as a divine example and warning that made the souls astonished. What happened invited them to believe in the divine mission, to give up injustice, oppression, unbelief and impiety and to be away from the bad party spirit.

He said that whatever rightness the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) invited them for would never be hidden and as long as they didn’t deny save the rightness so whatever they did was null because there would be nothing instead of rightness save deviation.

Abu Taalib (a.s.) had another poem about this very subject. He mentioned what Almighty Allah had done with the document and then he talked about their (the Hashemites’) glorious past and their shining present with this great Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). We quoted from it some verses that might not be arranged as the origin:

I wish one could reach our companions[[208]](#footnote-208) though for they are,

to tell them what our God, the Most Merciful, has done!

To tell them that the document was eaten!

All what Allah doesn’t will be null.

...............................................

The best of the peoples, when masters are considered,

Ahmad is!

The Prophet of God, the generous in lineage and morals,

the prudent, the favoured.

He is brave against disasters as a shining star!

He is from the generous of Lu’ay bin Ghalib,

never submits to disgrace ... etc.[[209]](#footnote-209)

Did you see how Abu Taalib praised his nephew and what high position that he found him in from among all the people?

His nephew was the best of the human beings whether in personality or lineage. He had the highest virtues if he had been compared with the masters of mankind. Besides that he was the Prophet, whom Almighty Allah had chosen to undertake His mission. He was assisted by the support of Allah (s.w.t.). He was the brave man, who would never submit or be weak before the distresses. He was like the star, which lighted the way for those, who walked in the night towards their rightful aims, and whose light would never be put out whatever storms blew. Abu Taalib praised his nephew in his poem with many qualities that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) had had like glory, generosity, high morals, honoured lineage, striving for the commonweal, cheerfulness ... etc.

Such praise wouldn’t be said by an uncle, an old man and a glorified leader towards his nephew, who had been brought up by him and had been like his son, unless there was a great faith that old man had in his nephew’s mission. This praise wouldn’t be said out of supporting the kinship. Certainly not! Abu Taalib praised his nephew in such a way because definitely he believed in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) as a Prophet of Allah not as a son of his brother Abdullah.

## At Dying

That tall tree, which shadowed Islam and protected the Prophet of Islam (s.a.w.a.) from the midday heat, began to wither little by little; its branches began to dangle faintly and its leaves began to yellow until the yellowness of death crept into all of its parts. It was time for that tired old man, who had offered his power, had presented his abilities and had done his duties, to rest his exhausted body, his tired soul, his troubled nerves and his sad-happy spirit; sad because of what troubles would face this religion and its followers by those beasts, and happy because he remained alive until he could offer his virtuous services and could do his duties and believed in the religion that his father Abdul Muttalib had told him about and recommended him to believe in, to follow and to support.

It was time for him to taste the sweetness of the fruits of his efforts and to gain the reward of his great deeds ... but Abu Taalib, even he was dying, didn’t forget to recommend of his nephew. He ordered his sons and family around him to undertake this important task, which he had undertaken alone.

His eyes would be delighted for his brave family would never fail the task whatever heavy it was. Among them was his son Ali; the first believer and the only supporter! He would complete the task his father carried upon his shoulders. He would sacrifice everything just to support the Apostle of the Heaven.

Abu Taalib turned his eyes here and there at the last moment before he would leave for the better world. Then he uttered with a faint voice overcome with the awe of death and the weakness of old age to say his last will, which he wanted the notable men of Quraysh, whom he had called for to hear, that Almighty Allah may guide them to His religion. He said: “O people of Quraysh! You are the choice of Allah among His people and you are the heart of the Arabs. Among you there are the obeyed masters, the intrepid, the courageous and the generous men. Know that you haven’t left any virtue among the Arabs unless you have the greatest share of it and no honour unless you gain it. By this you are preferable to the Arabs and they are in need of you. People are against you and they gather to fight you. I recommend you to glorify the Kaaba because it is the cause of Almighty Allah’s contentment, the source of your good living and the means of your authority. Keep contact with your relatives because it prolongs one’s life and increases the family. Avoid injustice and impiety because due to these things the nations before you had been perished. Help whoever asks you for help and give the needy as you can because this brings honour during life and after death. You are to be truthful in your sayings and to pay the deposit to its possessor because this leads to cordiality and dignity. I do recommend you of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)! He is the most trusty among Quraysh, the most truthful among the Arabs and he has all the qualities I have recommended you of. He has brought us a thing that the heart accepted and the tongue denied for fear of blame. By Almighty Allah, as if I see that the paupers, the wretched and the people of the countryside will believe in him, support him and firm his mission. He (Muhammad) will plunge into the fields of death with these followers and then the chiefs of Quraysh will be mean, their houses will be ruined and the weak people of Quraysh will be masters. Then he, who was an opponent of him, will be the most in need of him and that, who was the farthest from him will be the closest to him. The Arabs will submit to him, be sincere to him and let him be their leader. O people of Quraysh! Be good followers of him and good defenders of his party! By Allah (s.w.t.), no one follows his way unless he succeeds and no one follows his guidance unless he will be pleased. If I live longer, I will protect him from every distress and defend him against every disaster ...”[[210]](#footnote-210)

Even if Abu Taalib had nothing save this will, it would be sufficient evidence showing his deep faith. It showed his religion and belief very clearly. Every word in his will cleared his firm faith.

It was a piece of faith that wouldn’t accept any doubt or suspect. It refuted every lie fabricated by the liars against his man. It exposed the evil wills of the opponents, who tried their best to distort the bright past of this man.

Abu Taalib recommended them with recommendation, that wouldn’t come out except of a sincere believer, who knew much about the secrets of the divine legislation and who had an eye that could see through the covers of the unseen to tell about the some events of the future.

He recommended them to glorify the Holy Kaaba, the sanctum of Almighty Allah, because glorifying it was one of the rites of Almighty Allah and that would definitely please Allah (s.w.t.). This showed that Abu Taalib’s heart was full of faith when recommending of the obligations of Allah (s.w.t.).

He told them that religion would give further power to better their living and to be firmer before distresses and disasters.

He ordered them to care much for their kinship and to keep contact with their relatives because that would delay their death and would increase their families.

Later on we found that the Islamic Sharia confirmed what Abu Taalib had recommended in his will.

Islam ordered the Muslims to be more careful about kinship and justified it as Abu Taalib had justified it before. Islam forbade injustice and impiety and ordered the Muslims to help whoever was in need of help. It ordered them to be truthful and loyal in repaying the deposits.

All these were human laws and Islamic obligations legislated by Islam. It showed that Abu Taalib had believed in these principles considering them as a part of the Religion of Allah (s.w.t.) so he wanted to recommend the notable men of Quraysh of these principles at the last moments of his life to be the first step for them to believe in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) because they were the same principles that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) invited them for.

Finally he limited his will to his nephew Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), who had all the high qualities he had recommended them of as he thought and who was the bearer of the greatest divine mission.

And here was the essence of his will. He said that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was the most truthful and the most loyal of Quraysh and the Arabs. Abu Taalib’s confession of the truthfulness and loyalty of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was a confession of the prophecy and the mission.[[211]](#footnote-211)

He was not satisfied in his acknowledgement of his nephew’s prophecy to this point but he declared his acknowledgement more clearly when he said: “He has brought us a thing that the heart accepted and the tongue denied for fear of blame.”

He said that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) came to them with a thing (the mission) that the heart accepted and believed in, but the tongue refused to announce for fear of something imposed upon him by that critical situation and it was for the sake of the benefit of the mission itself and of the safety of the Messenger. Abu Taalib concealed his faith in that critical situation to be free when trying to carry out his duties in supporting the mission and the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Then Abu Taalib had a look from behind the cover of the unseen to see a shiny line talking about the success of his nephew’s mission. He foresaw how his nephew’s mission would rest in the hearts and how the oppressive tyrants would submit to him like the slaves whereas the paupers and the wretched would be great and high with the virtue of Islam ... and how ... and how ...

Then he urged them to follow the Prophet’s method, to support him and to be sincere guards to him and to his followers. If they followed his way and guidance they would be successful and happy.

Then he felt sorry that he had no chance to remain alive in order to support his nephew as much as he could and to protect him against the disasters and against the oppressive polytheists.

The will of Abu Taalib was a great example of the deep faith and devotedness in the way of the belief. He didn’t stop or hesitate in defending the mission of his nephew even in the most critical moments of his life.

He wanted to declare his thought and to record his confession on the pages of history to be as sharp weapon against every lie that would be fabricated by the opponents of the Hashemites.

Abu Taalib declared his will before the public of Quraysh to make those, who thought that he was on their side, know that he had believed in Islam and had responded to the mission of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).

He directed a piece of his will to the Hashemites advising them to obey Muhammad in order to gain success and goodness. He said to them: “You will be successful as long as you listen to Muhammad and obey his orders. So you are to follow him and to support him in order to be guided ... O people of Hashem! Obey Muhammad and believe him so that you will success and be rightly guided!”[[212]](#footnote-212)

Then he addressed four men of the Hashemites to support and to sacrifice themselves for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). He recited:

I recommend four to support the Prophet of goodness;

my son Ali, the good uncle Abbas, Hamza the lion,

whose attack has no like, and Ja’far.

You have to protect him against people,

be for Ahmad as armours before people!

Defend him with every shining sharp sword,

that it may be thought as lightening in the darkness of night![[213]](#footnote-213)

It was far away from reason that such a man, who spent years of his life inviting people to believe in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), to follow his mission and to support him devotedly because, as he thought, that his mission was a source of success, guidance and goodness, wouldn’t be a believer!

It was far away from reason that such a man, who acknowledged the success and goodness of the mission, would unbeliever in it and would be indifferent to it or he would keep on his deviation, Allah forbid!

With these shining lines, which were full of flaming faith and brightening belief, Abu Taalib folded the page of his shiny life. With these lines he ended his life, which was full of jihad and sacrifice in the way of the true religion. With words full of faith calling for supporting the great Prophet he left for the better world.

What a faithful man he was!

And what a loyal guardian he was!

# Chapter Two

# IN THE CONSCIENCE OF HISTORY

## After The Death

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), who was the highest example of loyalty, fealty and fairness, would never deny a favor of any one; therefore the death of Abu Taalib had left a deep effect upon him. He became so distressed and felt the great gap the absence of his uncle caused.

As soon as Imam Ali (a.s.) told him of the bad news of the disaster, his eyes began to flow with tears.

After he wiped off his tears, he ordered Ali (a.s.) in a sad voice saying: “Go to wash him, enshroud him and bury him! May Allah forgive him and have mercy upon him.”[[214]](#footnote-214)

This was evidence besides many other evidences proving the faith of Abu Taalib.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) ordered Ali, and no one at all would think that Ali was not a Muslim, to wash his father (to do the ghussl).[[215]](#footnote-215) Islam wouldn’t permit a Muslim to wash an unbeliever.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) prayed Almighty Allah to forgive his uncle and prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to have mercy upon him. It was definitely that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was so strict against the unbelievers and he was merciful and kind to the believers only.

After Ali (a.s.) had washed his dead father and the body of the supporter of Islam had been carried on the shoulders of the men, Ali (a.s.) came back to tell the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) stood up in front of the body of his uncle to escort him with signs of praise and glorification and to be sincere to his favors he had done to Islam. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “O uncle! Mercy may be upon you and you may be rewarded with good. You brought me up and adopted me when I was a child and you assisted and supported me when I became a man.”[[216]](#footnote-216)

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) participated in the funeral until his uncle was buried then he said: “By Allah, I will pray Allah to forgive you and I will intercede for you that the mankind and the jinn will be surprised.”[[217]](#footnote-217)

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) mentioned the virtues of his uncle, prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive him and promised to intercede for him in the Day of Resurrection that would surprise the mankind and the jinn.

What would that intercession be?

Let’s suppose that Abu Taalib was unbeliever -although it was not so and would never be accepted by the rightness and the fair conscience- and didn’t support the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) at all but the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would intercede for him to be in Paradise. This intercession wouldn’t surprise the two groups of mankind and jinn because the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would never intercede for an unbeliever.

But if Abu Taalib would be rewarded with entering Paradise for his virtues and good deeds, hence the intercession of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would be further than entering Paradise and this world surprise man and the jinn.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), besides being loyal to his uncle’s favors, wanted by saying this to refute those who wrongly thought that Abu Taalib hadn’t believed in the mission just because that he sometimes concealed his faith when the circumstances were not suitable for him to announce his faith openly in order to be able to carry out his tasks in the interest of the mission without obstacles.

Then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) added to his word this lament: “Ah father! Ah Abu Taalib! O uncle, how bitter my sorrow is! How can I forget you! You brought me up when I was a child, responded to me when I was and I was for you as the pupil for the eye and as the soul for the body.”[[218]](#footnote-218)

This was evidence by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) proving the faith of Abu Taalib when saying: “... responded to me when I was a man ...”

Let’s ponder about this delicate expression of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): he said that his position in his uncle’s heart was like the eye and the soul. What an accurate imaging showing how much Abu Taalib had loved the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and what a great position he had in his uncle’s heart.

Would such a man, who had all that love and that respect to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), not believe in the Prophet’s mission? Certainly not! It would be beyond impossibility!

But now as the fortress, which protected the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) from the evils of Quraysh, was ruined when the defending lion was put in the grave, the beasts of Quraysh found the way empty and guardless. So they began to harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) with all kinds of harm, torment, mockery and bitter insult; therefore the image of Abu Taalib would have never left the mind of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) especially at this moment when he felt that he was in extreme need of him.

Once he came into his house and his hair was stained with dust that some of the impudent of Quraysh had poured upon his head. His daughter became sad and began to cry. She tried to remove the dust from her father’s head. He calmed her down saying: “Don’t cry my daughter! Allah (s.w.t.) protects your father.”

Then he added after remembering the past of his uncle Abu Taalib when no one could dare to touch a hair of him: “Quraysh couldn’t hurt me until Abu Taalib died!”

On every occasion such words came out of his mouth expressing his longing to his uncle and his need of him and of his glorious past: “O uncle! How sudden I felt your absence!”[[219]](#footnote-219)

Allah (s.w.t.) willed to try his Messenger. It was fated that he had to face two disasters each of them was bitterer that the other. Nearly in the same days he lost two supporters, who so often assisted and supported him in his distresses; Abu Taalib, with his powerfulness and strength, who had prevented Quraysh from daring to do any harm to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and Khadeeja,[[220]](#footnote-220) with her money, kindness, emotion, loyalty and devotedness, who so often assisted him against the distresses, eased his pains and nursed his wounds.

He lost both of them in a very critical time. The wide space would be narrow and the existence would be dark to him, unless he didn’t trust in Allah (s.w.t.) and depend upon Him besides the full mercy of Allah (s.w.t.).

He lost them after those hard years they had spent in the She’b when his uncle was more than eighty years old. Those years were full of strife and struggle and therefore they gave good fruits and left a great glory, which became greater and greater later on.[[221]](#footnote-221)

In one of the moments of his pain, an over-burdened sad word came out of his mouth but was full of trust in Allah (s.w.t.), gull of hope in His contentment, full of patience towards the fate ... complaining to his God what harms, contempt and pains he got from people: “O Allah! To You I complain my weakness, my little supports and my being disdained by people! O Allah, the Most Merciful! You are the Lord of the weak; You are my Lord; to who You leave me? To an opponent frowning at me ... or to an enemy overcoming me? If You are not angry with me, I will never mind ... but Your blessing will be better to me ... I resort to the light of Your face, with which the darkness becomes shiny and the affairs of the life and the afterlife become virtuous, so that not to let Your rage afflict me and Your wrath befall on me. I request Your forgiveness until You become pleased with me. There is no power save in You...”[[222]](#footnote-222)

After Abu Taalib no shelter remained for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to resort to in Mecca. That defensive fortress, which protected him from the disasters, was demolished and the supporter, who sacrificed everything for him, was no longer alive.

In the midst of his distress and pain, the Angel revealed to him this divine order: “Go out of it (Mecca)! Your supporter has died.”[[223]](#footnote-223)

## Pleasant Mention

### The sayings of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)

The situations of Abu Taalib would never be away from the Prophet’s mind nor would his image leave his sight. He didn’t forget his uncle for a while. He still remembered him, praised him and prayed to him for his eternal deeds and his glorious situations in order to be grateful to that man, who had done him many favors.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would never be indifferent to any favor done to him. So he often mentioned that to be grateful on one side and on the other side he wanted to encourage the others to follow the same way.

One day a nomad, with signs of sorrow and sadness appeared on his face, came to Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hoping to get something that might relieve some of his sorrow. He said to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! We have come to you and we have no any camel nor can any of our children find anything to eat.” Then he recited some verses of poetry:

We have come to you and our virgin’s breast disappeared,

and the mother ignored her baby.[[224]](#footnote-224)

The hands of the child dangled and he fainted to the ground,

he could do nothing nor could he move,

Nothing to eat we have save colocynth,

blood and hair of camels.

We don’t have save you to resort to.

Do people resort but to the prophets?

The Merciful Prophet (s.a.w.a.) stood up deeply affected by this tragic scene dragging his feet towards the minbar. After praising Allah (s.w.t.), he began to pray Him: “O Allah! Send us abundant rain pouring plentifully to produce the plants, to fill the udders and to give life to the earth after its death ... and thus shall you be brought forth.”

As soon as the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) finished his praying, the sky began to lighten and the ground began to receive the abundant rain.

A man came to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) crying: “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! It is the flood! It is the flood!”

The Prophet’s hands, whose hopes would never be refused, stretched towards the Heaven and his lips, whose praying would never be disappointed by Allah (s.w.t.), uttered: “Let it be around us and not upon us!”

The heavy clouds began to leave taking with them the terror out of the people’s hearts.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became delighted and his lips smiled but he remembered the near past and sighed: “What a man Abu Taalib was! If he is alive, he will be delighted. Who will recite us his poetry?”

His cousin Imam Ali (a.s.) stood up and said: “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! You may mean his saying:

And a white-faced, with whose face it is prayed,

so that the clouds bring goodness.

He is the shelter of the orphans and the guardian of the widows.

As the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Yes” Ali (a.s.) kept on reciting other verses of his father’s poem and the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) from above the minbar kept on praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his sincere uncle.

Would we stop here with the Prophet when praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle after his death?

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) mentioned his uncle when every occasion passed by him because his mind was always busy with his good deeds and he always remembered his great situations. Quite often the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) praised his uncle with worthy words and it was definitely that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wouldn’t praise any one, who didn’t deserve that. He kept on praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle when Ali was reciting his father’s poetry and it was definitely that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would never pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive anyone, who was not faithful.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Being loyal to a man (after his death) is by being loyal to his children.” And who would be worthier than the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to achieve his own sayings?

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) remained loyal to his uncle Abu Taalib by being loyal to his son Ali.

Once he said to Imam Ali (a.s.): “No one is worthier than you of my position; you are the first in being a Muslim, you are my cousin and may son-in-law. You have Fatima, the head lady of the believing women. Before that, your father was my guardian and supporter when the Holy Quran was revealed and I am so careful to keep that for him by taking much care of his offspring after him.”[[225]](#footnote-225)

Did you see what position Abu Taalib had in the Prophet’s heart? The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) considered the situation of Abu Taalib during the revelation of the Holy Quran as one of the virtues of Ali. He thought that it imposed upon him to consider that Ali was the worthier one of his position – the position of prophecy. He added this virtue to the other virtues of Ali like his preceding in being a Muslim, being his cousin and his son-in-law...

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) revealed to Ali that he would keep on being grateful to Abu Taalib by taking much care of his sons.

So no one but Ali was to be the successor of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for there was no one worthier than him of all these virtues!

Once again he said to Aqeel[[226]](#footnote-226): “O Abu Yazeed,[[227]](#footnote-227) I love you twice; once for your kinship with me and the other for I know how much my uncle had loved you.”[[228]](#footnote-228)

What great love the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had for his uncle! He loved Aqeel for the kinship between them and the other love because he knew that Abu Taalib had loved Aqeel too much. He thought that his uncle’s love for someone imposed upon him to love that one too.

It was true evidence showing us the great love the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had towards his uncle Abu Taalib.

On the day of Badr[[229]](#footnote-229) while the battle was in its excitement, Abu Obayda bin al-Harth bin al-Muttalib approached to meet the polytheists defending his religion. When his leg was cut by Otba bin Rabee’a -or Shayba as it was mentioned- two drawn swords of the swords of Allah (s.w.t.); Ali and Hamza rushed, stroke the enemy with their unavoidable swords and saved their companion and carried him to the arbor where the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was.

Obayda’s leg, which was cut and was bleeding, didn’t distract him from opening his eyes to say to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in a quivering voice: “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! If Abu Taalib was alive, he would know that he had been truthful when he had said (addressing the polytheists):

I swear by the House of Allah that you have told lies!

We never give up Muhammad; we struggle and fight for him,

we support him until we are killed around him.

For him we ignore our wives and children.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was affected by the mention of his uncle and began praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive him and Abu Obayda.[[230]](#footnote-230)

When Quraysh was defeated and the battle stopped, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had a pondering look at the dead bodies of the polytheist and remembered something. Abu Bakr was beside him. He said to Abu Bakr: “I wish Abu Taalib was alive! He would know what our swords have done to the greats.”[[231]](#footnote-231) He referred to the verse of Abu Taalib’s poem:

By the House of Allah! You have lied.

If what I foresee be serious, our swords will pierce the greats.

Once al-Abbas asked the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), do you pray for Abu Taalib?”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) answered him: “Every good I hope for him from my God.”[[232]](#footnote-232)

The books of Hadith mentioned a true tradition that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “On the Day of Resurrection I intercede for my father, my mother, my uncle -Abu Taalib- and a brother of mine, who lived in the pre-Islamic age.”

This tradition was mentioned in different ways but it had the same meaning.[[233]](#footnote-233)

These traditions imposed upon us to acknowledge the faith of the Prophet’s supporter, whom the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t mention unless he praised with the best of words. He often prayed His God for him. Definitely the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would never follow his passion but put every one in his suitable position whether good or bad.

If the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) praised his uncle and prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive him whereas his uncle had been not a Muslim -which was far away from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)- then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would disobey Allah (s.w.t.) – Allah forbid! – According to many Holy Quranic verses as:

1. You shall not find a people who believe in Allah and the latter day befriending those who act in opposition to Allah and His Messenger, even though they were their (own) fathers, or their sons, or their brother, or their kinsfolk; these are they into whose hearts He has impressed faith[[234]](#footnote-234)

The Holy Quran denied that there were people, who believed in Allah (s.w.t.) and the Day or Resurrection, having a bit of love to those, who had enmity against Allah (s.w.t.) and His Messenger even though there was close kinship between them.

Allah (s.w.t.) confirmed that it was impossible for believing in Him and loving the unbelievers to be in one heart. It would be better to quote the interpretation of az-Zamakhshari about this Quranic verse: “It appears that it is impossible to find believing people loving the polytheists. The purpose behind that is to make the believers avoid the enemies of Allah (s.w.t.) completely and beware of mixing with them at all. Allah (s.w.t.) has confirmed that by saying: ‘Even though they were their (own) fathers’ and: ‘These are they into whose hearts He has imposed faith’, and by comparing His saying: ‘There are the Shaitan’s party’ with His saying: ‘These are Allah’s party’ you won’t find anything more loyal in faith than to love the lovers of Allah (s.w.t.) and to avoid the enemies of Allah (s.w.t.). In fact this is the very sincerest faith.”[[235]](#footnote-235)

After that he mentioned a tradition had been said by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “O Allah! Don’t make a dissolute or an unbeliever have a chance of getting my kindness! For I have among what has been revealed to me this verse: ‘You shall not find a people who believe in Allah and the latter day befriending those who act in opposition to Allah and His Messenger, even though they were their (own) fathers, or their sons, or their brothers, or their kinsfolk; those are they into those hearts He has impressed faith.’”

The author of Majma’ul Bayan said: “It means that loving the unbelievers and faith won’t be together in one’s heart.”[[236]](#footnote-236)

2. ‘O you who believe! do not take My enemy and your enemy for friends: would you offer them love while they deny what has come to you of the truth.’[[237]](#footnote-237)

In this verse Allah (s.w.t.) had forbidden the believers from taking the unbelievers as friends, loving them, supporting them or asking them for support.

3. ‘O you who believe! do not take your father and your brother for guardians if they love unbelief more than belief; and whoever of you takes them for a guardian, these it is that are the unjust Say: If your fathers and your sons and your brethren and your mates and your kinsfolk and property which you have acquired, and the slackness of trade which you fear and dwellings which you like, are dearer to you than Allah and His Messenger and striving in His way, then wait till Allah brings about His command: and Allah does not guide the transgressing people.’[[238]](#footnote-238)

In these verses Allah (s.w.t.) had forbidden the believers from taking their fathers and brothers as guardians if they were unbelievers. Faith would be the cause of preventing the sentiment between the believer and the unbeliever even if the unbeliever was the believer’s father or brother, who were be the closest relatives of him. Then Allah (s.w.t.) said that loving the unbelievers or regarding them as guardians would bring the believer out of the sphere of faith and join him to the unjust people. Then Allah (s.w.t.) threatened the unbelievers of waiting for His punishment because they were not but transgressing people.

Az-Zamakhshari when interpreting these verses mentioned that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “No one of you become a faithful until he loves for the sake of Allah (s.w.t.) and hates for the sake of Allah (s.w.t.); he loves the farthest one to him and hates the closest one to him for the sake of Allah (s.w.t.).”[[239]](#footnote-239)

This is a very severe verse or it may be the severest one that blames people for their leniency in the firm of faithfulness ... let the most pious men try themselves, will they find that they are strict in obeying the obligations of Allah (s.w.t.); will they prefer the religion of Allah (s.w.t.) to their fathers and children...?[[240]](#footnote-240)

The author of Majma’ul Bayan said: “The matter of religion is preferred to kinship even if it leads to cut the relationship of the parents because the faithful foreigner is better than the unfaithful relative. Al-Hasan said: He, who follows the polytheists, is a polytheist.”[[241]](#footnote-241)

4. ‘O you who believe! whoever from among you turns back from his religion, then Allah will bring a people. He shall love them and they shall love Him, lowly before the believers, mighty against the unbelievers.’[[242]](#footnote-242)

5. ‘And had they believed in Allah and the Prophet and what was revealed to him, they would not have taken them for friends but! most of them are transgressors.’[[243]](#footnote-243)

Allah (s.w.t.) had made among the conditions of faithfulness the cordiality and the familiarity among the believers to be as one hand or as the compact structure; each part tightened the other.

The mightiness and severity against the unbelievers would restrain them from ravaging the tight structure of the believers and from separating their firm unity.

Ibn Abbas said: “You find that the believers are kind and lenient to each other as the child to his father and as the slave to his master and you found them severe and rough towards the unbelievers like the beast towards his prey.”[[244]](#footnote-244)

In the second verse Allah (s.w.t.) denied the faith of those, who took the unbelievers as friends and hence they deserved rage and wrath of Allah (s.w.t.). They would remain in Hell for ever.

“Supporting the unbelievers by some of the believers is sufficient evidence proving their hypocrisy and that their faith is not true but they still keep on their unbelief and hypocrisy.”[[245]](#footnote-245)

6. ‘Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah, and those with him are firm of heart against the unbelievers, compassionate among themselves.’[[246]](#footnote-246)

The interpreters mentioned after this verse a saying of al-Hasan: “They – the believers – avoided the unbelievers and the polytheists to a degree that they tried to evade even their cloths not to touch their own cloths and their bodies not to touch their own bodies.”[[247]](#footnote-247)

After some sayings mentioned by az-Zamakhshari he added: “The Muslims at every age have to pay much attention to this avoidance. They have to be strict towards those, who don’t believe in their own religion and beliefs, and have to avoid them.[[248]](#footnote-248) They have to be kind to their brethren in Islam, to treat them benevolently, to defend them against any harm, to help them, to be lenient to them and to be very polite and honest with them.”[[249]](#footnote-249)

But unfortunately the Muslims did the opposite. As if the verse was reversed in their minds. They became kind to their opponents and strict and severe among themselves. Some of them sacrificed their brothers in religion for the sake of their enemies. Some of them did evil to each other that even the enemy wouldn’t do. Unfortunately they submitted to the enemies of their religion whether in the same country they were or abroad; in the west or in the east and loved them more than their fellow people. The exceeded in committing crimes and treason to achieve their private interests, which were, in fact, the interests of the enemy of their religion, They sacrificed their citizens and presented their nation as delicious bite to the odious colonist.

Such people, at last, would never get save bad rewards for the sins they committed.

Hence the ties of the umma split and the unity crumbled. The fire of disagreement crept into everything like the flame when breaking out in the dry firewood.

Let’s go back to our subject of the verses mentioned above. Was it possible for the Holy Prophet of Islam (s.a.w.a.) to be kind and merciful to a polytheist unbeliever just because that polytheist was his relative and to deny all those verses that were revealed to him by the Heaven?

Would he accept to be defended by a polytheist unbeliever whereas he himself had said; “O Allah, Don’t make a dissolute or an unbeliever have a chance of getting my kindness”...?

The truth was that this man, who assisted, supported and did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) favors, and then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had to be grateful to him and had to love him and to praise him often and often ... this truth would contradict the meanings of these verses, which were full of threat, severity, warning and wrath.

This wouldn’t be justified unless we said -Allah forbid! - That the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t pay any attention to the orders of his God that were revealed to him and that he indifferently contradicted the principles of the Holy Quran! We would say so to justify the saying of the fabricators that Abu Taalib was unbeliever after it had been proved that he had assisted and protected the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his mission so firmly and bravely.

Since no one could dare to say this, so one would be obliged to confess that Abu Taalib was a faithful after it was proved without any doubt that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had often prayed for him, praised him and glorified him whenever mentioning him.

All that, away from the great deeds Abu Taalib had done and the acknowledgement he had left on the page of the existence, made the light of Abu Taalib’s faith shine with the rays of certainty.

### The Sayings of Imam Ali (a.s.)

When we move to the sayings of Imam Ali (a.s.) about his father, we will find many evidences confirming the true faith of his father to confute all the fabricated lies about his unfaithfulness.

When his father closed his eyes and his soul went high to the better world, he came to tell the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) of the sad news. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) instructed him of what to do. He washed his father’s body (did the ghusl), embalmed it and enshrouded it and then he escorted his father towards the tomb as the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had ordered him to do.

Would these things have been done for other than the Muslims? I don’t know what to say...!

Then he saw the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) standing in front of his father’s body; praising him with the best of words, his tears coming down from his eyes and the sighs of pain stumbling in his chest.

Days passed. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became so distressed. Difficult conditions surrounded him from every side. He became in a critical situation. He began to sigh with complaint and pain for the great loss of his kind uncle.

The image of Abu Taalib passed by Ali’s mind, He remembered his father’s brave situation towards the mission and how he had defended and protected the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). His emotions began to boil and the thorn of his inner pain began to sting him. Tears came down of his eyes while uttering these verses of poetry:

O Abu Taalib! The shelter of resorters!

The rain for barren lands!

The light in darkness!

Losing you undermined us.

Allah may have mercy upon you

Allah may please you;

that you were a good uncle for al-Mustafa.[[250]](#footnote-250)

The years passed and the Umayyads tried their best to fabricate false traditions, whose flames reached Imam Ali (a.s.).

One day Imam Ali (a.s.) was in the yard of the Mosque surrounded by the people, when a man of those, who had heard the fabricated traditions until he became confused between the truthfulness and the falseness, came to him and said: “O Ameerul Mo’mineen! You are in this high position, which Allah (s.w.t.) has put you in, while your father has been tortured in Hell ...?”

Imam Ali (a.s.)’s face reddened with anger about what lies the Umayyads had been fabricating. He answered the man: “Hush up! May Allah (s.w.t.) shut your mouth! By Allah (s.w.t.), who had sent Muhammad as Prophet, if my father would intercede for every guilty on the earth, Allah (s.w.t.) would respond to his intercession! Has my father been tortured in hell whereas his son is the diviner between (the people of) Paradise and Hell? The light of Abu Taalib, in the Day of Resurrection, will put out the lights of all the creatures except five lights ...”[[251]](#footnote-251)

Such a man like Imam Ali (a.s.) with his high position, qualities, virtues and excellences, who had been at the top of faithfulness and who had never been polluted with the dregs of polytheism, would be some how affected by his father if he was not faithful or he was polytheist for something of that would defect the pure page of the son, demean his virtue and hurt his high position.

Once again Imam Ali (a.s.) said: “By Allah (s.w.t.)! Neither my father nor my grandfathers Abdul Muttalib, Hashem or Abd Manaf had worshiped an idol at all. They offered prayers towards the House (the Kaaba) according to the religion of Prophet Abraham (a.s.), to whose beliefs they had kept.”[[252]](#footnote-252)

Abut-Tufayl Aamir bin Wa’ila narrated a tradition that Imam Ali (a.s.) had said: “When my father was dying, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was with him. Then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) told me of something about my father that was better to me than this worldly life and all what it has.”[[253]](#footnote-253)

Another time he said showing why his father Abu Taalib hadn’t announced his faith openly: “By Allah (s.w.t.), Abu Taalib (Abd Manaf bin Abdul Muttalib) was a faithful Muslim, but he kept his faith secret fearing for the Hashemites that Quraysh many harm them.”[[254]](#footnote-254)

Once again he said: “Abu Taalib didn’t die until he made the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) pleased with him.”[[255]](#footnote-255)

These were the sayings of Imam Ali (a.s.) about his father. They were sufficient evidences confirming his father’s faith. Imam Ali (a.s.) announced his sayings intendedly after he had heard the lies accusing his father of unbelieving.

Did Imam Ali (a.s.) say so just out of the sentiment of fatherhood or the enthusiasm of kinship without concerning the reality and the truth?

I don’t think that any one, who believes in Islam sincerely, will dare to say so because he will violate the excellent position of the Imam of the Muslims and the true guardian of Islam besides that he will contradict the traditions had been said by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) talking about the virtues of Imam Ali (a.s.).

Ali would never deviate from the rightness whatever happened. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Ali is with the rightness and the rightness is with Ali. It turns with him wherever he turns.”

We don’t need to mention every tradition said by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) about his loyal guardian Ali (a.s.) for these traditions were as clear as the light of the sun.

If there was someone justifying Imam Ali (a.s.)’s sayings as they were out of kinship, he would certainly criticize the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had praised a man, whose sentiment overcame his faith and who preferred his relatives to his religion and consequently he would follow the falseness and change the rightness! The sacred duty of Imam Ali (a.s.) was to disavow his father if he was polytheist when died. His father would be considered as enemy of Allah (s.w.t.) and then Imam Ali (a.s.) did never have to praise him because the right of the father would never be above the right of Allah (s.w.t.). He had to follow the conduct of his father Prophet Abraham (a.s.) as the Holy Quran said:

...but when it became clear to him that he was an enemy of Allah, he declares himself to be clear of him.[[256]](#footnote-256)

He wouldn’t have to follow an enemy of Allah (s.w.t.) if he was a true faithful but he had to follow his God’s orders if he wanted to be near to Him.

No one among the Muslims, all in all, would be equal to Ali in his faith and in obeying Allah (s.w.t.) and His Apostle.

The Islamic history showed us excellent examples of sincere faithfulness among the Muslims, who trod upon their emotions towards their close relatives, whether their fathers or brothers, if the kinship would contradict their belief. Nothing would stand against the powerfulness of the true faithfulness whatever it was.

The history mentioned the situations of Abdullah bin Abdullah bin Ubayy bin Salool[[257]](#footnote-257) towards his father, who uttered some words of hypocrisy during the battle against the tribe of al-Mustalaq and caused a kind of separation among the Muslims.

When Abdullah heard of that, he went to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and said; “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! I heard that you want to kill my father. If it is true, you order me to do that. I myself will kill him and bring you his head. I fear, if you order someone else to kill him, that my self won’t let me look at my father’s killer walking among the people and then I may kill him and so I will kill a believer for the sake of an unbeliever and hence I go to Hell.”[[258]](#footnote-258)

He begged the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that no one would kill his father other than him! He feared, if the task would be carried out by other than him, that he might revenge on the killer and so he would commit what would bring him the wrath of Allah (s.w.t.)! But if he himself killed his father, his sincerity towards Allah (s.w.t.) wouldn’t be affected by any rage against his father’s killer, although he would suffer too much when killing his father with his own hands. The merciful Prophet relieved Abdullah from the two when he forgave this hypocrite and set him free just for the sake of his faithful son.[[259]](#footnote-259)

This is another event showing the dominance of the religious enthusiasm over the sentiment of the kinship.

After the battle of Siffeen, Adi bin Hatim with his son Zayd passed by the killed soldiers. Among the killed soldiers of the army of Mo’awiya there was Zayd’s uncle (his mother’s brother). Zayd went looking for his uncle’s killer. When he found the killer he killed him with his spear. Then Adi became so angry with his son Zayd and he scolded him, blamed him and abused him and his mother severely. He said to his son: “O son of obscene woman! I am not on the religion of Muhammad, unless I hand you over to them to kill you.”

But Zayd fled from his father and joined Mo’awiya, who received him well and safeguarded him. Then Adi raised his hands towards the Heaven cursing his son. He said: “O Allah (s.w.t.)! Zayd has parted with the Muslims and has joined the unbelievers. O Allah (s.w.t.) hit him with an arrow of Yours that never misses him! By Allah (s.w.t.), I will never talk with him a single word at all and I will never live with him under one roof at all.”[[260]](#footnote-260)

However great the sentiment of fatherhood towards the son was but you found that Adi wanted to kill his son because he had committed a sin by killing an innocent faithful Muslim, but he had not but to pray Allah (s.w.t.) against him when he fled from him towards the unjust band of Mo’awiya.

This was not the only event of this kind in the battle of Siffeen. There was another one mentioned by the historians:

A warrior from among the oppressive army of Mo’awiya came out challenging to duel with one of the army of Imam Ali (a.s.). They fought for a while of time until the soldier of Imam Ali (a.s.) could throw his enemy to the ground and sit on his chest. Before he tried to kill him, he uncovered his face and it appeared that he was his brother but he heard many voices of his army asking to kill him. He waited a while and said to them: “He is my brother.” They answered him: “Leave him alone.” But he wouldn’t do that without being satisfied with a true justification for he wouldn’t prefer brotherhood to his religious duty. He answered: “Never! Until ameerul mo’mineen permits me to leave him alone!” When Imam Ali (a.s.) was told of that, he said to him: “Let him go!”[[261]](#footnote-261)

Unless He didn’t receive the order of his leader Imam Ali (a.s.), he would definitely kill his brother for the sake of his faith and belief.

These men wouldn’t be, at all, more faithful or sincere than Imam Ali (a.s.), on whose shoulders Islam was erected and by whose sword, which overthrew the great heads of the polytheists, Islam became so strong.

Imam Ali (a.s.) definitely would never let his father alone if he knew that he was unbeliever nor would he praised him falsely at all. It was he, who was the highest example, after the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), of faithfulness and devotedness in the pure way of Allah (s.w.t.) and His Apostle.

If Ali (a.s.) was not certain about his father’s faith, he would never deny the lies fabricated against him nor would he praise him with the best of words. He was worthier than anyone else to say the truth even though it was against his father. His great faith and devotedness would never let him deviate from the clear way of rightness.

He was the worthier, after the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), in keeping to the orders of the Holy Quran and refraining from its prohibitions.

We saw that the Holy Quranic verses mentioned above were full of terrible meanings of threat against those, who would follow the unbelievers ... and certainly Ali (a.s.), who was the ideal example of rightfulness, would never contradict a single word of the Holy Quran!

It would be better to mention for the reader this passage of one of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s speeches said in front of the all in one of the days of the battle of Siffeen:

“When we had been with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), we killed our fathers, sons, brothers and uncles and that strengthened our faith and our submission to the orders of Islam. We tolerated the bitterest of sufferings for the sake of the jihad and duelling the heroes of the enemy ...”[[262]](#footnote-262)

What a wonderful image it was! It showed us the powerfulness and the firmness of the Muslims in realizing the rightness and defeating the falseness even if the victims were their fathers and sons as they were described by the Holy Quran.

### The Sayings of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)[[263]](#footnote-263)

If we studied the biographies of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.), we would find that each of them had confuted the accusations had been ascribed to Abu Taalib. They declared the reasons behind those accusations, which distorted the faith of Abu Taalib and made him one of the unbelievers.

Whenever the lies and the fabrications increased, a word of rightness came out to scatter all that confusion and a ray of truthfulness shone to clarify the darkness of that unfairness and evil wills.

1. One of those, who had heard of the lies fabricated about the faith of Abu Taalib, asked Imam Sajjad – Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.)[[264]](#footnote-264) about those accusations. Imam Sajjad (a.s.) said: “Yes!”

The asker repeated his question to be certain about the source of those accusations and to know whether they were true or not: “There are some people here pretending that Abu Taalib was unbeliever!”

Imam Sajjad (a.s.) sighed painfully and cried loudly: “How wonder! Did they accuse Abu Taalib (of being unbeliever) or they accused the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), who had been ordered by Allah (s.w.t.) not to let a believing woman keep on living with an unbelieving man as his wife in many Quranic verses? No one doubted that Fatima bint Asad[[265]](#footnote-265) was one of the first faithful women. She had been still Abu Taalib’s wife until he died.”[[266]](#footnote-266)

The saying of Imam Sajjad (a.s.) showed that whoever thought that Abu Taalib was unbeliever, accused the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) of contradicting the orders of the Holy Quran or being indifferent to apply them to his uncle.

No one at all could deny the true faithfulness of Fatima bint Asad, Abu Taalib’s wife and Ali’s mother, and no one could say that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had annulled the marriage of Abu Taalib and his wife Fatima. If Abu Taalib was unfaithful, then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had to separate between him and his faithful wife.

As long as Fatima bint Asad had been still as Abu Taalib’s wife until he died so whoever said that Abu Taalib was unfaithful, definitely would accuse the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) of disobeying his God. Hence whoever accused Abu Taalib of being unfaithful would impudently accuse the heart of Islam; the great Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

2. Imam Baqir (a.s.)[[267]](#footnote-267) was asked about the false tradition fabricated against Abu Taalib saying that Abu Taalib would be in Hell. He answered: “If the faith of the Abu Taalib is put in a scale of a balance and the faith of the peoples is put in the other scale, the faith of Abu Taalib will outweigh.”

Then he said: “Don’t you know that Ameerul Mo’mineen Ali (a.s.) ordered to offer the Hajj for the sake of Abdullah, Aamena[[268]](#footnote-268) and Abu Taalib during his lifetime (Ali’s lifetime) and then he ordered in his will to offer the Hajj for them.”[[269]](#footnote-269)

The faithfulness of Abu Taalib was of a prudent man not of an imitator. It was faithfulness of a struggling supporter. Abu Taalib was the leader of the greatest tribe among all the Arabs. In fact it was the essence of the Arabs. He was the chief of the town that all the Arabs used to visit for its sacredness and holiness. Such an obeyed leader and a highly respected chief turned to be a follower of an orphan, who was brought up by Abu Taalib himself. He left his leadership and high position and followed his nephew; the Prophet, who was chosen by the Heaven to be the means between the Creator and His creatures. Wasn’t it a true faithfulness that made this great an as same as any of the slaves, who followed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)?

Then Imam Baqir (a.s.) proved the faithfulness of Abu Taalib when saying that Imam Ali (a.s.) had ordered to offer the Hajj for the sake of Abu Taalib not only during his lifetime (Ali’s lifetime) but also after his death when recording that in his will. Hajj was one of the basic pillars of Islam and hence Ali (a.s.) wouldn’t have ordered to be offered for an unfaithful man!

3. As for Imam Sadiq (a.s.)[[270]](#footnote-270) he had plentiful sayings about his great grandfather Abu Taalib, in which he confuted all the accusations ascribed to his grandfather. The age of Imam Sadiq was after the end of the state of the Umayyads, which poured upon the people flows of disasters and distresses, and the beginning of the state of the Abbasids, who ruled under the pretense of getting back the rights of the Alawites.[[271]](#footnote-271) They pretended that they would get back the rights to their actual possessors. It was just a pretense, which they made as the cornerstone of their new state.

It was a short time when the swords were put aside from the necks of the Alawites and the muzzles were removed from the mouths of people but everything would be changed as soon as the bases of the state became firm and strong.

This was an active reason that made the voice of Ja’far bin Muhammad as-Sadiq (a.s.) announce the truth loudly and spread much of his lights among people. Although the time was short for him, he could spread the pure principles of the Hashemites. Abu Taalib, the assistant of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), had his enough share of Imam Sadiq (a.s.)’s active traditions.

Once someone asked Imam Sadiq (a.s.): “People pretend that Abu Taalib is in Hell”

Imam Sadiq (a.s.) said: “They tell but lies! Gabriel (a.s.) had never revealed such a thing.”

Then he added: “The example of Abu Taalib was like the example of the Fellows of the Cave; they concealed their faith and announced polytheism and so Allah (s.w.t.) rewarded them doubly. Abu Taalib also concealed his faith and announce polytheism so Allah (s.w.t.) rewarded him doubly ... He didn’t leave this worldly life until he was told that he would be in Paradise ... How do they describe him so? Gabriel had come down in the night when Abu Taalib died and said: “O Muhammad! Go out of Mecca! You have no supporter in it after Abu Taalib.”[[272]](#footnote-272)

Imam Sadiq (a.s.) said that Allah (s.w.t.) would reward Abu Taalib twice that he could keep his faith secret when he found that it was better; therefore he would be rewarded for his faith and he would be rewarded for keeping his faith secret. Not everyone could conceal what one believed in even if it was in the interest of the mission.

Imam Sadiq (a.s.) compared Abu Taalib with the Fellows of the Cave mentioned in the Holy Quran and he said that Allah (s.w.t.) had brought him good news (via the revelation to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)) that he would be in Paradise. This was not an unbelievable thing after the historians had mentioned that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had told some people that they would be in Paradise. There might be some ones among them, who wouldn’t be equal to Abu Taalib in his defending and supporting Islam!

Then Imam Sadiq (a.s.) mentioned a great evidence confirming the faithfulness of Abu Taalib when saying that Gabriel had ordered the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to leave Mecca after the death of Abu Taalib because by the death of Abu Taalib, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had lost the support and protection in Mecca. Would such a man like Abu Taalib be unbeliever or would Hell be his reward? If it was so then there would be no difference between the Muslims and the polytheist.

Once there was a conversation between Imam Sadiq (a.s.) and Yonus bin Nabata. Imam Sadiq (a.s.) asked Yonus: “O Yonus! What do people say about Abu Taalib?” Yonus said: “They say that he is in Hell, in which his head boils”

Imam Sadiq (a.s.) said: “Have told lies the enemies of Allah! Abu Taalib is one of the companions of (the Prophets, the truthful, the martyrs and the good, and a goodly company are they!)[[273]](#footnote-273)

Once again Imam Sadiq (a.s.) answered a man asking him that people pretended that Abu Taalib was unbeliever: “They tell but lies! How is that and he had said:

Don’t you know that we have found Muhammad a Prophet as Moses! It had been recorded in the first Books![[274]](#footnote-274)

Once again he said: How was Abu Taalib unbeliever whereas he had said:

They knew well that our sons had never been a liar,

nor had he cared for absurdities.

And a white-faced, with whose face it is prayed,

so that the clouds bring goodness.

He is the shelter of the orphans and the guardian of the widows.”[[275]](#footnote-275)

Imam Sadiq (a.s.) said: “Ameerul Mo’mineen (Imam Ali (a.s.)) was pleased with the poetry of Abu Taalib to be recited and recorded. He said: Learn it (the poetry) and teach it to your children for it complies with the religion of Allah and it has much knowledge.”[[276]](#footnote-276)

Besides that this tradition had a clear witness by Ali about the faithfulness of his father. It showed us the value and the high position of Abu Taalib. Imam Ali (a.s.) became so pleased when he heard his father’s poetry; therefore he ordered that it should be learned and taught because it complied with the mission of Almighty Allah and it had much Divine knowledge about the previous Religions of Almighty Allah.

Imam Musa al-Kazim (a.s.)[[277]](#footnote-277) was asked by Durst bin Abu Mansoor about Abu Taalib. The asker didn’t ask about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib because this was certain for him but he asked about something above the faithfulness.

He asked: “Was the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) submissive to Abu Taalib?”[[278]](#footnote-278)

Imam Kazim (a.s.) said: “No! but he (Abu Taalib) was the depositee of the precepts and then he delivered them to him (to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)).

The man asked: “Did he deliver the precepts to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as if the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was submissive to him?”

Imam Kazim (a.s.) said: “If the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was submissive to him, he wouldn’t deliver the precepts to him!”

The man asked: “Then what about Abu Taalib?”

Imam Kazim (a.s.) said: “He believed in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and in his mission and so he delivered the precepts to him.”[[279]](#footnote-279)

This tradition confirmed what we have said about the personality of Abu Taalib in this book.

A man like Abu Taalib was necessary to be available in order to connect the ray of the mission of Abraham (a.s.) to the shining flame of the Mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).

The tradition showed us that the asker was certain about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib and he thought that Abu Taalib was the depositee of the precepts, which he had to deliver them to Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). Definitely no polytheist would have been deposited with this divine heritage.

The asker thought, as he had already known the high position of Abu Taalib that Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), before the advent of the mission, was submissive to Abu Taalib as guardian but Imam Kazim (a.s.) removed this illusion from the asker’s mind when answering him so clearly.

After the clouds of illusion had left the asker’s mind, he asked about the situation of Abu Taalib and Imam Kazim (a.s.) answered him that Abu Taalib had confessed the prophecy of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and believed in Allah (s.w.t.) otherwise he wouldn’t have delivered the precepts to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

5. Abban bin Mahmood wrote to Imam Reza[[280]](#footnote-280) (a.s.) when his faith was about to be shaken by the fabricated lies: “May Allah make me die for you! I am in doubt about the faith of Abu Taalib!”

Imam Reza (a.s.) wrote to him: “And whoever acts hostilely to the Messenger after that guidance has become manifest to him, and follows other than the way of the believers, We will turn him to that to which he has (himself) turned and make him enter Hell; and it is an evil resort.’[[281]](#footnote-281) Then: if you don’t confess the faithfulness of Abu Taalib, your fate will be to Hell.”[[282]](#footnote-282)

The answer of Imam Reza (a.s.) showed that doubting about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib (a.s.) contradicted believing in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and deviate from the way of guidance after knowing it and whoever deviated from the right way of guidance would be out of the sphere of faith and then his way would lead him to Hell. It would be considered as harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was a guilt leading to Hell.

Allah said in the Holy Quran: ‘Surely (as for) those who speak evil thing of Allah and His Messenger, Allah has cursed them in this world and the Hereafter, and He has prepared for them a chastisement bringing disgrace’[[283]](#footnote-283), and: ‘and (as for) those who molest the Messenger of Allah, they shall have a painful punishment.’[[284]](#footnote-284)

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said in one of his tradition: “He, who harms a hair of mine, harms me and whoever harms me, harms Allah.”[[285]](#footnote-285)

6. Imam Askari (a.s.)[[286]](#footnote-286) (al-Hasan bin Ali) said in a long tradition narrated by his grandfathers: “Allah the Almighty had revealed to his Messenger (Muhammad) (s.a.w.a.): (I have assisted you with two groups of assistants; a group supports you secretly and the other supports you openly. As for the group that supports you secretly, their master and the best of them is your uncle Abu Taalib but as for the group that support you openly, their master and the best of them is his son Ali bin Abu Taalib.”

Then he added: “Abu Taalib is like the believer of the Pharaoh’s people; he keeps his faithfulness secret.”[[287]](#footnote-287) One of the two groups had to carry out its task secretly as long as carrying it out openly was not possible for it ... like the support of the Angels as mentioned by the Holy Quran:

... and sent down hosts which you did not see.[[288]](#footnote-288)

... and strengthened him with hosts which you did not see.[[289]](#footnote-289)

... that your Lord should assist you with three thousand of the Angels sent down.[[290]](#footnote-290)

Your Lord will assist you with five thousand of the havoc-making Angels.[[291]](#footnote-291)

I will assist you with a thousand of the Angels following one another.[[292]](#footnote-292)

There are many other verses talking about this subject.

Abu Taalib wouldn’t be able to support the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) unless he kept his faith secret. He was like the believer of the pharaoh’s people, whose story had been mentioned by the Quran.[[293]](#footnote-293) If the believer of the Pharaoh’s people hadn’t concealed his faithfulness, the Pharaoh would have killed Prophet Moses (a.s.). His situation was so active among his people, who didn’t know that he was a believer but they thought that he was like them. So was the situation of Abu Taalib towards the mission of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). To this meaning Imam Askari (a.s.) referred when he mentioned this tradition narrated by his fathers, who had ascribed it to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

No one could suspect the sayings of the Holy Prophet’s progeny and think that their sayings might be untrue after the Holy Quran had confirmed their infallibility by saying:

Allah only desires to keep away the uncleanness from you, O people of the House! and to purify you a (thorough) purifying.[[294]](#footnote-294)

This Holy Quranic verse declares the infallibility of the pure Holy Prophet’s progeny in spite of the disgraceful attempts of some deviate interpreters to distort its meaning.

Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) were equal to the Holy Quran. They were as a rope extended between the Heaven and the earth; whoever kept to it would get to the top of eternality and whoever turned aside from it, would remain at the foot surrounded with dangers of destruction.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “I have left among you two weighty things, which if you keep to, you will never go astray at all; the Book of Allah and my family. They will never separate until they come to me at the river in Paradise.”

This true tradition, which had been agreed upon by the consensus of the Muslims, was evidence showing the infallibility of the Holy Prophet’s progeny.

Whoever suspected the, would suspect the Holy Quran, whose equal they were, and whoever let them down, would be perished.

There are many other Quranic verses and prophetic traditions confirming the infallibility and purity of the Holy Prophet’s progeny. We don’t want to mention them for they are not of our subject.

They, who were equal to the Holy Quran, definitely wouldn’t say save truthfulness. They were worthier than anyone else not to contradict the Holy Quran and they were the first to obey its orders and to refrain from its prohibitions.

After that, would they praise a man, even if he was their father, falsely and ascribe to him what he didn’t have? Would they acquit him from a real guilt without any evidence just because of kinship? Certainly not!

Whoever said that would violate their high position, which was the very position of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) himself, and would violate the sacredness of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the sacredness of his mission.

### The Sayings of the Companions and Others

We found among the Holy Prophet’s companions that there were not many, whose eyes hadn’t been blinded by the evil fancies nor had they deviated from the right way because of the personal interests, confessing the faithfulness of Abu Taalib (a.s.) and mentioning his good deeds.

We don’t want to quote all what was said by the companions about Abu Taalib in order to prolong the research, but we want to quote some of their sayings to be as evidence to show the truth.

1. The caliph Abu Bakr said: “Abu Taalib didn’t die until he had said: There is no God but Allah and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).”[[295]](#footnote-295)

The same was said by al-Abbas.[[296]](#footnote-296)

2. Abdullah bin Abbas was asked by a man: “O cousin of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Would you tell me about Abu Taalib? Was he a Muslim or not?”

Abdullah bin Abbas answered him: “How was he not a Muslim whereas he said:

“They knew well that our son had never been a liar, nor had he cared for absurdities.”

Abu Taalib was like the Fellows of the Cave; they kept their faithfulness secret and showed polytheism so Allah rewarded them doubly.”[[297]](#footnote-297)

3. The great companion Abu Zarr, whose eyes hadn’t been blinded by the shine of gold nor had he been frightened by the violence of Mo’awiya said: “By Allah, whom there is no god other than! Abu Taalib (a.r.) didn’t die until he became a Muslim ...”[[298]](#footnote-298)

4. Hassaan bin Saabit, the poet recited:

“If you mourn a dead,

Please, mourn the loyal man; the brother of the loyal.”

Sibt bin aj-Jawzi when explaining this verse said: “He means Hamza and Abu Taalib.”[[299]](#footnote-299)

5. These confessions were not limited to a certain age rather than the others or to a certain class of people ... everyone, who was honest, fair, impartial and not affected by the different fancies, had a ray of light emitted in the darkness to light the straight way.

It was a word of rightness emitted of the mouth of the Abbasid King Abdullah al-Ma’moon, although he was not such an honest man, but it was a fair word that slipped away of his mouth willingly or unwillingly. He said: “By Allah, Abu Taalib became a Muslim when he said:

I supported the Prophet; the Prophet of the Lord,

with swords shining like the lightening.

I defended and protected the Prophet of the Lord,

as kind guardian.

I creep to his enemies like a young camel with much heed,

but I roar at them proudly,

as a lion roaring in its liar.[[300]](#footnote-300)

6. Abu Ja’far al-Iskafi, in his thesis ‘Naqz al-Usmaaniyya’ when trying to refute the thesis of al-Jahiz ‘al-Usmaaniyya’, mentioned Abu Taalib, He couldn’t but praise him. He said: “Abu Taalib was his father (the Prophet’s father), his guardian, his supporter and defender and without him, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wouldn’t succeed. But in spite of that, he (Abu Taalib) didn’t become a Muslim according to most of the traditions.”[[301]](#footnote-301)

We found it odd; in fact we didn’t think that Abu Ja’far had said the last statement, which contradicted the beginning of his saying, besides that Abu Ja’far was one of those, who had said that Abu Taalib was a Muslim as we will mention it in the last chapter.

What made us doubt more about it was that our source was not the thesis itself but the summary of the thesis, which was collected by Hasan as-Sandoobi, whom we talked about in the beginning of the book (At the threshold).

If it was proved that the last statement was said by Abu Ja’far, he didn’t showed his own opinion about the subject but he just said that some of the traditions had mentioned that Abu Taalib was not a Muslim.

In another place, when Abu Ja’far talked about those, who had become Muslims because of the good praying of Abu Taalib (a.s.) and his keeping to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), he said: “... and because of him (Abu Taalib) the Hashemites kept on defending the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in Mecca against the tribes of Makhzoom, Sahm and Jumah ... and because of him the Hashemites tolerated the blockade in the She’b ... and because of his praying and his keeping to Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), his wife Fatima bint Asad became a Muslim. He was better in kindness and good nature than Abu Bakr and others ... What prevented him from being a Muslim – if it was proved that he hadn’t been a Muslim – was but the Taqqayya.[[302]](#footnote-302)

This last statement didn’t mean that he thought Abu Taalib hadn’t been a Muslim as his disciple ibn Abil Hadeed declared.

This saying – if it was his – might have been said by him before he became certain about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib after researching for the truth then he declared what he had become certain about. This word denied the announcement of Abu Taalib’s faithfulness and not the faithfulness itself because taqiya would impose upon one to conceal the true beliefs.

7. Al-Jahiz, in spite of his disgraceful and ignorant situation in his thesis (al-Usmaaniyya) when mentioning Abu Taalib to disvalue the antecedence of Ali in being a Muslim, couldn’t but to say: “Don’t you know that Quraysh and all the people of Mecca couldn’t harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as long as Abu Taalib (a.s.) was alive?”[[303]](#footnote-303)

8. The author of Tazkeratul Khawaas, after talking about Abu Taalib through the talking about Imam Ali (a.s.) and mentioning some of the good deeds of Abu Taalib, the sayings of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) about Abu Taalib and his praying Allah to have mercy upon him, said: “I say: the saying that Abu Taalib is among the fellows of Paradise doesn’t need pondering on it. There are many evidences proving that; his caring for protecting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), supporting him, defending him against the harm of the polytheists and the unbelievers, the sorrow of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when Abu Taalib died, naming that year as the year of sorrow by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) because of the death of Abu Taalib and Khadeeja, the praying of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that Allah might have mercy upon Abu Taalib and might forgive him and the response of Almighty Allah to the praying of Abu Taalib especially when he insisted upon it.”[[304]](#footnote-304)

Then the author tried to prove the faithfulness of Abu Taalib by mentioning the sayings of the infallible Imams about him and his own sayings about the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and about his religion.

It would be better to quote this passage: “... and also that no one of his enemies mentioned that his (Abu Taalib’s) sons were angry that their father was unbeliever.

Mo’awiya, the bitter enemy and opponent of him (Ali), Amr bin al-Aas, Abdullah bin az-Zubayr, Marwan and others, in spite of criticizing him, defaming him and ascribing to him what he was free from, did never accused him of that his father was unbeliever ... whereas he (a.s.) often criticized them for the unbelief of their fathers and mothers and the meanness of their lineage but they didn’t reciprocate...!

This was the best evidence showing his (Abu Taalib’s) faithfulness and showing the bad fanaticism of those of the public (the Sunnis), who ascribed unbelief to him.

O you, the just! Think about the evil will of the batlike people in their enmity against the sun of Islam and its light ...!”[[305]](#footnote-305)

It was clear evidence and a reasonable conclusion taken from the actual reality! If those, who were the bitter enemies of Imam Ali (a.s.), weren’t certain that Abu Taalib was faithful, they would definitely defame Imam Ali (a.s.) with this thing, whereas they tried their best to ascribe to him much many fabricated defects, which he was certainly free from. There was no faith, no honesty and no conscience would prevent them from that but they had no way to it.

9. We had, in this chapter, to quote this clear saying, which came out of a Christian mouth that knew the rightness and supported it and saw the light and led to it.

We quote it without any comment for the facts in these lines didn’t need any comment or explanation.

The historian writer Abdul Masseeh al-Antaki said: “The historians disagreed upon the faithfulness of Abu Taalib. Some said he was a Muslim and some said he was a polytheist. Each group had evidences and prophetic traditions they declared upon.

One like me is not to determine such a serious matter.

But the evidences taken from the actual reality confirmed the thought of those, who said that Abu Taalib was a faithful because man, however exceeded in loving his kin; his son, his nephew or his son-in-law, could never be indifferent to his beloved if he saw him violating his religion or belief and trying to demolish its pillars to replace it with another religion ... could never be indifferent unless he himself believed in the new religion for, as you know well, that people stuck to their religions and exaggerated in sanctifying them to a degree that a believer was ready to kill his son or his father if he saw him scoring his religion or making little of his god.

If this was applied to the ordinary people, it would be worthier to be applied to the upper class of them like Abu Taalib, who had a high position among Quraysh so he was obliged by himself and by his position to defend his religion, which he and his people had already believed in, in order that his position would still be respected, he wouldn’t be mean before his people and he wouldn’t expose himself to the wrath of his gods and then to lose his afterlife.

Hence Abu Taalib must believe in the mission of his nephew (a.s.) in his heart but he didn’t announce that for a certain purpose required by wisdom and political affairs.

If he had announced his faithfulness at the beginning of the mission, Quraysh would have been against him and so he would have lost his glory and respect ... then he would be unable to defend his nephew, who was still powerless, against the harm of Quraysh. This made him conceal his faithfulness.

His deeds, poems and speeches showed his faithfulness clearly, especially when defending and praising al-Mustafa[[306]](#footnote-306) (s.a.w.a.) in his poems and speeches until the last moment of his life, which he ended with his clear will. He could do all that depending upon his powerfulness and high position among Quraysh.

According to that, Abu Taalib was one of the best companions and supporters undoubtedly.

How nice it would be if Islam would have some men, nowadays, who could defend it and could restore its glory as Abu Taalib had done at the dawn of the mission, then Islam would remain glorious.

This was Abu Taalib; the guardian of al-Mustafa (a.s.), his uncle, his beloved, his supporter and the father of our Master Ameerul Mo’mineen, the Emir of the Religion and the Victor Lion of Allah (s.w.t.), Ali bin Abu Taalib (a.s.)...! Yes, he was this great man, who had brought up these two luminous suns that lighted the sky of life and religion!”[[307]](#footnote-307)

We don’t think that this clear saying needs any comment.

On the pages of history there were many examples confirming the saying that the religious sentiment was stronger and more determined than the sentiment of kinship. If both of them met in the field of struggle, victory would definitely be for the first and defeat would be for the second.

10. Dr. Taha Husain said: “Abu Taalib’s kindness to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was well-known and his strife to defend him and his religion against Quraysh was so famous.”[[308]](#footnote-308)

11. The fair professor Abdul Aziz Sayyidul Ahl wrote a book about Abu Taalib. Some of the readers noticed that he hadn’t declared the faithfulness of Abu Taalib.

I am on the contrary to that. I think that the professor have confessed in the clearest way that Abu Taalib was one of the first believers and the antecedent Muslims and that he had done Islam many favors.

If the book had nothing but the few shiny lines in its preface, it would be the best evidence proving what the author thought about the sheikh of the Hashemites.

It would be better to quote some lines of those shiny pages. The author said: “It was not fair for people towards the man, who had brought up the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and protected him more than forty years, that his news were abridged, scattered and distorted and that the narrators of his news were so few and confused ...

Then all his favors were forgotten and history, at the moment of his death, took an odd and weak situation towards him. History talked about this man, who had protected the prophecy and defended it strongly, sacrificingly and faithfully, in a way as if it talked, with a tongue created by fancy, about an adventitious thing or a new coming foreigner ...!

The man had spent all his life in supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), forced his family to follow him, spent his power, love and monies for him, quarrelled with his enemies, stroke them and defeated them and made himself ready to hasten sincerely to his nephew in the way of distresses.

The existence of Abu Taalib was one of the necessities of the creation and a support that must be available to make the mission survive and spread as ibn Khaldoon had said in his theory...[[309]](#footnote-309)

It was the will of Allah (s.w.t.); no man, no belief and no religion would win unless there was a sufficient support defending him or it against the terrible fanaticism then he or it would prevail by the followers and the assistants, but that support must be the first because without it there wouldn’t be followers and assistants.”[[310]](#footnote-310)

“... and Abu Taalib didn’t miss the duty, which he was to do, and he wasn’t overburdened with the heavy task that he was to carry out. He supported the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and assisted him, quarrelled with all the people for the sake of him and pride didn’t carried him off to sin as it carried the others of the greats, who misled the people. Abu Taalib was the Master of all of Quraysh with no equal.”[[311]](#footnote-311)

“The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) cried when his uncle died; and who would cry tender heartedly, mercifully and faithfully if Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), whose God had brought him up well, wouldn’t? He mourned his uncle, who had brought him up, protected him, supported him and tolerated any sufferings for him. Abu Taalib was his father when he lost the father, was his right hand when he needed a supporter and was his party when he needed a strong rightness to defeat the falsehood and to perish the tyranny!”[[312]](#footnote-312)

We tried not to quote many sayings spread in the book but in spite of our trying we were forced to quote the above words.

Then we want to ask the reader: “Was it possible to say that we didn’t find that the author had declared that Abu Taalib was a Muslim after all what he had said in his book? We quoted these sayings just to be as an example to show his clear confession, which was definitely the truthful witness!

12. We found the professor George Jordac in his wonderful book ‘Imam Ali (a.s.); the Voice of the Human Justice’ praising Abu Taalib with wonderful statements of esteem and glorification.

We thought that we had to quote something of this marvellous mention.

The professor said: “When his grandfather – Abdul Muttalib; the Prophet’s grandfather – died, his uncle Abu Taalib – Ali’s father – adopted him. The boy kept on living in the sphere of sympathy, meekness and well-education, which the late father had left to the resident son.”[[313]](#footnote-313)

After mentioning that Abdul Muttalib had recommended Abu Taalib to take after his grandson he said; “... and he wouldn’t choose Abu Taalib unless he was certain about the actual feeling and thinking of him. Although all the sons of Abdul Muttalib were kind and sympathetic, their kindness and sympathy were not so firm and deep like Abu Taalib’s.

The effect of kindness and sympathy in the good adopting and educating would be clearer than the effect of monies; therefore Abdul Muttalib chose Abu Taalib to look after Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).

In addition to that Abu Taalib had great sympathy towards his nephew that would force him strongly to take much care of him even if his father hadn’t recommended him to! So how would it be if both of them; his sympathy and his father’s recommendation were together?

No doubt that Abu Taalib was a nice and beloved person; a nice person, who had the wisdom of a kind old man, who was loyal and experienced and who put all what he had of kindness, loyalty and experience in practice in any case.”[[314]](#footnote-314)

Let us listen to this wonderful word: “As if it was that when Allah (s.w.t.) had chosen the Prophet from among the family of Abdul Muttalib, He had chosen this generous uncle to bring him up! As if the power of the existence paved the way for Abu Taalib to know about the matter of his nephew what any one else didn’t know.”[[315]](#footnote-315)

Another wonderful word said by this man talking clearly about the personality of Abu Taalib with all the good meanings it had: “... the good meanings of Abu Taalib’s nature moved to be inside the soul of Muhammad. They became a part of his self while growing under the care of the loving uncle.”[[316]](#footnote-316)

“Abu Taalib was the first in Islam, who recited poetry full of love towards Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and calling for supporting him. He became so angry whenever there was a doing or a saying having some harm to his nephew.”[[317]](#footnote-317) “Abu Taalib didn’t forget for a moment throughout his life that Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was the continuity of the high morals, which he himself, his brother Abdullah and their father Abdul Muttalib had spontaneously.”[[318]](#footnote-318) “When Abu Taalib died the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) felt that he lost the greatest pillar, to which he used to resort and which defended him against the harm of Quraysh. This feeling showed the connection of the means of goodness between Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and his uncle; the chief of the house, in which Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) grew and acquired his high morals!

By losing Abu Taalib, Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) felt that he lost the supporter, who was ready to sacrifice himself for him and to defend him against any harm, who was his fortified shelter against Quraysh and its oppressors until he said: “I didn’t get any harm from my people until my uncle died.”

How much we justify this deep sorrow that had filled Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)’s heart after his uncle’s death?

What was the cause of this grief whereas Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was so patient, determined and confident that his mission would succeed however his enemies were many or however his assistants were few and whatever the situations of the good or the evil people were?

Yes! What was the cause of this grief? It was the disaster that afflicted Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) when he lost his uncle; the dearest man, who had been so kind to him and who had protected him against the evils of the enemies.

The abundant tears Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) shed were clear evidence showing that he had lost something of his self, his present and his past![[319]](#footnote-319)

Then, in another chapter, he talked about the relation that united the sympathy between Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and Ali (a.s.) as it was between Abu Taalib (a.s.) and Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and how that unity had given its good fruits.

He said: “The connection of sympathy and brotherhood continued between Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and Ali (a.s.) and the cooperation between them to make the mission succeed continued too since Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) had known Abu Taalib (a.s.) and since Ali (a.s.) had known Muhammad and since the three had gathered in one house, which had been based on the meanings of magnanimity.

The qualities of the house of Abu Taalib (a.s.) were but an incentive that made Abu Taalib (a.s.) and Ali (a.s.) understands the genius of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) in a way that appeared in the first as sympathy and sacrifice and in the second as great intellect, deep feelings and sacrifice like the miracles!”[[320]](#footnote-320)

A reader might say that there was nothing of what the writer had praised Abu Taalib with showing that he said that Abu Taalib was a Muslim because he didn’t do save showing Abu Taalib’s high qualities, his devotedness in loving and protecting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his propagandizing for the mission and for supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

We are satisfied with this. We don’t need from a great thinker like George Jordac to say about the light: I see it ... when he described the light, shows its aspects and leads to it. This is enough to make us feel that he walks in the way of the light that he praises.

Hence we don’t need to lead the reader with his hand to show him what meanings these words have because they are too clear and they are full of frank confession of the faithfulness of Abu Taalib.

We want to refer to his sayings: “As if the power of the existence paved the way for Abu Taalib to know about the matter of his nephew what any one else didn’t know.” and: “Muhammad was the continuity of the high morals, which Abu Taalib, his brother Abdullah and their father Abdul Muttalib had spontaneously.” How would Muhammad be the continuity of these men, if they were polytheists? God forbid!

Then what was that great soul of Abu Taalib, which melted inside the soul of Muhammad and the two souls mixed to be two parts of one thing? Then how Abu Taalib, Muhammad and Ali became one thing that couldn’t be divided?

The qualities of the house of Abu Taalib was the strong incident that led the father and the son to understand the genius of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in a way that appeared in them as great sympathy and sacrifice, which were held together just to make the mission succeed with all what that successfulness required of deep sympathy, great intellect and sacrifice, which was like the miracles.

That high sympathy united between the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his uncle and his cousin since he had known his uncle and since his cousin had known him to make a firm unity that couldn’t be separated since the three had gathered in one house built upon the bases of magnanimity and virtues.

Then what was that goodness, whose means connected between Muhammad, his uncle and Ali?

Did Muhammad acquire means of goodness from a polytheist one?

Was it hopeful to acquire goodness from a stubborn polytheist?

Could that stubborn polytheist be a partner with the Messenger, who would spread the mission of monotheism?

It was naturally for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), when he lost his uncle, to feel that he lost the greatest pillars, on which he leant, and by which he was protected and his mission was defended. His uncle was the chief of the house, in which he had been brought up with the highest of morals.

It was naturally for Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) to be sad and sorrowful in spite of that he was so patient and firm and in spite of his confidence in his God, Who would definitely make his mission succeed, even if the apparent means of success were so little that the enemies were much more than the assistants and that the evil ones were more than the good ones.

But it was the sorrow that remained when one was afflicted by the loss of the dearest one, who used to protect and defend ... it was the loss that made one feel as if one lost a part of one’s self extended from one’s present to the past!

These quotations are enough and we don’t need to quote more. They have enough evidences and confessions clarified by many personalities leading to the same point although there are differences controlled by the different fancies and aims. This point is supporting the wronged right, uncovering the hidden facts and announcing the truth loudly, in the milieu that is full of noisy lies, odious barking and hideous hissing of adders scattering their poisons here and there.

But it is the bright rightness and the shiny truth...!

Almighty Allah definitely prepares the sincere supporters and the loyal assistance of the rightness lest the virtue and the vice be equal or lest the evil defeat the good!

## A Stop with Ibn Abil Hadeed[[321]](#footnote-321)

We don’t want to examine every word said about the subject for it will take us too far. It is enough for us to be satisfied with the truthful witnesses of those, whom on true Muslim can suspect; the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his pure progeny and the witnesses of the persons, who have seen the light and have known the truth.

But we have to quote some sayings of ibn Abil Hadeed in his book Sharh Nahjul Balagha and to argue with him about a certain saying we found in his book.

He said when talking about the umma, to which Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) had been sent as Prophet, and dividing it into some groups: “the mo’attelah[[322]](#footnote-322) and non-mo’attelah; among the mo’attelah were those, who denied the Creator and the day of Resurrection, those who believed in transmigration (of souls) and those, who worshipped the idols ... etc.” ... until he said: “As for those, who were not mo’attilah among the Arabs, they were few. They were God-fearing. They were pious and they refrained from committing vices, like Abdullah, Abdul Muttalib and Abu Taalib.”[[323]](#footnote-323)

You see that ibn Abil Hadeed said here that Abu Taalib was one of those, who were God-fearing, who believed in monotheism and who believed in the Creator of the existence after he talked about those, who denied the Creator and the Day of Resurrection and after he talked about the idolaters and others. He said that Abu Taalib was one of those, who were pious and who refrained from committing vices.

There was no vice for Abu Taalib worse than to see the guidance of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) without following it!

He also said when talking about the virtues and the qualities of Imam Ali (a.s.): “What do I say about a man, whose father was Abu Taalib; the master of Arabia, the sheikh of Quraysh and the chief of Mecca?” until he said: “... and Abu Taalib adopted the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when he was a child and protected him when he became a man. He defended him against the polytheists of Quraysh. He met for the sake of him great distresses, faced hard sufferings and tolerated much in supporting and assisting him ... It was said: When Abu Taalib died, it was revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): ‘Get out of it (Mecca). Your supporter died.”[[324]](#footnote-324)

Ibn Abul Hadeed considered the kinship of Abu Taalib as honour and that it was one of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s good qualities. He said that Imam Ali (a.s.) had a great honour by being the son of Abu Taalib. Then he mentioned the virtues of Abu Taalib such as adopting, protecting and defending the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) against the harms of Quraysh until he suffered great distresses but he achieved his duties in spite of all the difficulties he faced.

He said that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had been ordered by the Heaven to leave Mecca after the death of his uncle Abu Taalib, who was his defensive fortress!

He referred to this point, the revelation to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to leave Mecca, another time when he said: “When Abu Taalib died in Mecca, Quraysh became alone with Muhammad and harmed him so much whereas it couldn’t do that when Abu Taalib was alive. He left Mecca fearing for himself and emigrated to his God.”[[325]](#footnote-325)

He talked about this point again when he said: “Know that Ali (a.s.) often pretended that he was the best of the all, the most preferable to the all and had the honour above the all by being proud of his cousin Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), himself and his father Abu Taalib (a.s.) ... He, who read the history, would know that Islam wouldn’t succeed without Abu Taalib!

No one is to say: How is it said so about a religion that Allah has promised to spread and to make it succeed whether Abu Taalib was available or not? Because we say: If it is so then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) isn’t to be praised nor is it to be said that he guided people from deviation, saved them from ignorance, did them great favors and without him Almighty Allah would never be worshipped on the earth ...” until he said: “If you say: These people are envied and praised because Allah (s.w.t.) had achieved these things by means of them and made them succeed in carrying them out. In fact the actual doer is Allah (s.w.t.) and these people are just tools and means used for doing these things so praising them is to be considered for that. The same thing is to be said about Abu Taalib ...!”[[326]](#footnote-326)

It would be better to refer here to the saying of ibn Abil Hadeed when he explained the speech of Imam Ali (a.s.) after leaving Siffeen: “No one of the umma is to be compared with the family of Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). They are the basis of the religion and the pillar of certainty. To them returns every expensive thing and after them come the others. The right of authority is theirs and among them guardianship and succession are.”

Can we stop a little at this saying of ibn Abil Hadeed? Can we concentrate on the point when he said that Ali (a.s.) pretended to have antecedence, honour and virtue over the all by being proud of the master of the creatures Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), his father Abu Taalib and himself?

We want but to attract the reader’s attention to think about this statement and the meaning it has. It refers to the unity that gathers these three men in antecedence, honour and virtue above the all!

Then we want to refer to the statement of ibn Abil Hadeed “peace be upon him” after mentioning the name of Abu Taalib ... this statement shows the thought of the sayer about the person, whom the sayer refers to, and his high position. This statement is not said except to those, who have the position of Prophecy, Imamate, Guardianship or something like that. It is not said to many many of the Prophet’s companions!

Ibn Abul Hadeed didn’t say this statement to Abu Taalib, unless he knew well that Abu Taalib had a great role in establishing the bases of Islam, which would be nothing without Abu Taalib as he himself said![[327]](#footnote-327)

Then ibn Abil Hadeed imagined that perhaps there was someone, who might deny his saying. He replied that if Abu Taalib had no virtue in supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) also wouldn’t have any virtue in spreading the divine mission according to the thought that it was Almighty Allah, Who would have done everything!

I didn’t quote these sayings of ibn Abil Hadeed, unless I wanted to discuss his confusion and contradiction at the end of his long speech about Abu Taalib,[[328]](#footnote-328) in which he mentioned some fabricated lies about the (adopter and protector) of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as he himself had said.[[329]](#footnote-329)

These fabrications were not more than eleven lines[[330]](#footnote-330) of his long pages, which were full of irrefutable evidences and clear proofs that confirmed the faithfulness and the right belief of Abu Taalib. But he liked to end his speech with this weak fabrication.

We would like to discuss his speech passage by passage to argue with him about his collapsed points.

He said after that long speech, in which he had declared the evidences proving Abu Taalib’s faithfulness: “I said: As for me, the condition is confused to me and the news are contradicted. Almighty Allah is more aware of his (Abu Taalib’s) reality, how it was!

The letter of Muhammad an-Nafs az-Zakiyya[[331]](#footnote-331) to al-Mansoor[[332]](#footnote-332) disturbs me; especially his saying: “I am the son of the best of people and I am the son of the worst of people. I am the son of the master of people of Paradise and I am the son of the master of people of Hell.

This was a confession that Abu Taalib was unbeliever. This was his son and he wouldn’t accuse of fabricating lies against Abu Taalib besides that his time was near to the time of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). It was not so long time between them to say that the news might be fabricated.”[[333]](#footnote-333)

He said that the condition was confused to him because the news was contradicted! He meant that the news, which he himself mentioned as certain evidences proving the faithfulness of Abu Taalib and which couldn’t be suspected for their sources were the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), his pure progeny and the sayings and doings of Abu Taalib himself, were contradicted by the fabricated news that Mo’awiya had bought with his monies and were narrated by al-Mugheera and his likes of that filthy series. We will confute them in a particular chapter Inshallah!

The contradiction between two traditions wouldn’t be unless there was equivalence between them that the narrators of the two traditions would be trusty. No one of the two series of the narrators should be accused of anything and no tradition should be preferred to the other for any reason otherwise the preferable one must be depended upon while the other must be left aside.

This thing wouldn’t be applied to our subject in any ease!

Would a tradition narrated by the infallible progeny from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) be equal to a tradition narrated by al-Mugheera and his likes?

So as there was no equivalence, there would be no contradiction!

Then he went on sticking to the letter of an-Nafs az-Zakiyya to al-Mansoor.

We referred to this letter in the books of history and we found, among what ibn Abil Hadeed had mentioned, this passage: “Allah (s.w.t.) chose fathers and mothers for me in the pre-Islamic age and in the Islamic age until He chose for me one of them, who would be in (Hell). I will be in the highest position among people of Paradise and will get the least punishment among the people and the son of the best of the evil people. I am the son of the best among people of Paradise and the son of the best among people of Hell ...”[[334]](#footnote-334)

We researched on the narration of this letter in ibnul Aseer’s Kamil but we didn’t find any mention about them.

The author of Sheikhul Abtah mentioned that the narrator of this letter was Saeed bin Sa’d al-Madani and said: “This Saeed is one of the unknown narrators.”[[335]](#footnote-335)

At-Tabari mentioned incomplete series of narrators of this letter. He said: “Muhammad bin Yahya said to me: I copied these letters from Muhammad bin Basheer when he was correcting them. Abu Abdur Rahman, who was one of the Iraqis writers, and al-Hakam bin Sadaqa bin Nizar told me about these letters. I heard ibn Abu Harb correcting them.”[[336]](#footnote-336)

This series of narrators, as you see, is incomplete and one cannot depend upon it:

1. Muhammad bin Yahya: we don’t know his grandfather’s name! But when we referred to Mizanul I’tidal to look for those, who had this name, we found that they were seventeen men having the same name with different surnames.

Each of them was either a narrator of neglected, weak, denied, or obscure traditions that couldn’t be depended upon, or a liar fabricating traditions[[337]](#footnote-337) or of a single narrated the tradition or who narrated refuted or fabricated traditions, who was not trusty, who narrated from the entrust narrators, who was not agreed upon, who narrated what he hadn’t heard or who fabricated traditions.[[338]](#footnote-338)

2. Muhammad bin Basheer: we found two men having this name;

a: Muhammad bin Basheer bin Marwan al-Kindi al-Wa’idh. He was not trusted. Ad-Darqutni said about him that he was not reliable in his traditions.

b: Muhammad bin Basheer bin Abdullah al-Qas. Ibn Mo’een said about him that he was not reliable.[[339]](#footnote-339)

3. We didn’t know Abu Abdur Rahman or ibn Abu Harb who they were!

4. We didn’t find any mention of al-Hakam bin Sadaqa in Meezaanul E’tedaal.

We leave the weak series of the untrusted narrators aside in order not waste the time and come back to the very letter of an-Nafs az-Zakiyya that have disturbed ibn Abul hadeed’s mind.

Also we don’t want to stop at the differences between the wordings of the letter mentioned by ibn Abil Hadeed and each of at-Tabari, ibnul Aseer and al-Khudari.[[340]](#footnote-340)

We became astonished at this prudence! Would anyone be proud of being the son of the worst of the evil people or the best of the evil people? Would be there any good in the evil or among the evil people? Would be there a master or any goodness among the people of Hell?

If he was the son of the master of people of Hell – if there would be a master in Hell – so no one would be the master there unless he was the worst of the evil people, who definitely would get the severest punishment. This contradicted the fabricated tradition ascribed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that Abu Taalib would be the least tortured one among the people of Hell.

According to their thought, this was the utmost intercession the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) could do for his uncle!

What an intercession it was! Even the stingiest and the meanest of people would be ashamed towards this intercession, so how about the great Prophet, who was chosen by Almighty Allah to complete the nobilities?

Did such proudness come out except of an insane man? It was but a confession of the mean position, which would never agree with the situation of Muhammad an-Nafs az-Zakiyya, who claimed to be the caliph and resisted the king sitting on the throne? If it was so, then he objected himself in this letter!

Therefore we found among what was mentioned as the answer of al-Mansoor to the letter this saying: “You pretend that you are the son of the least punished one among the people of Hell and you are the son of the best of the evil ... there is no littleness in unbelieving in Allah (s.w.t.) nor lightness in His torment. There is no good one among the evil people. The believer, who believes in Allah (s.w.t.), has not to be proud of Hell. You will know that:[[341]](#footnote-341) ‘...and they who act unjustly shall know to what final place of turning they shall turn back.**’**[[342]](#footnote-342)

This answer was suitable to that passage ascribed to an-Nafs az-Zakiyya. It would be the definite irrefutable answer if the letter and the answer were said by those, to whom they were ascribed, or fabricated and ascribed to them!

As for the saying of an-Nafs az-Zakiyya: “I am the son of the worst of the evil people” mentioned by ibn Abil Hadeed, which made us argue with him, it would never be applied to Abu Taalib at all because the meaning of this statement would be that there was no one more evil than Abu Taalib among his people and at his time at least! Otherwise the statement meant continuity; that he was the son of the worst evil one at all!

Even if we said that he was the son of the worst evil one among his people and at his time, would that refer to Abu Taalib?

We didn’t find that any of the liars and fabricators had reached this degree of meanness! No one of them had said that Abu Taalib was one of the evil people rather than to say that he was the worst of them. Could one of them dare to say that, whereas Abu Taalib’s virtues and favors were the causes of goodness and blessings among all of his people?

Would he, who was the pillar of the structure of Islam and without whom Islam would be nothing according to the saying of ibn Abil Hadeed himself, be the worst of the evil people?

Would the worst evil man be so greatly respected by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) whereas the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “O Allah! Don’t make a dissolute or an unbeliever have a chance of getting my kindness!”

Would Abu Taalib be more evil than Abu Lahab and Abu Jahl,[[343]](#footnote-343) who had filled the existence with their evil and corruption and harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) with all kinds of harms and distresses? Perhaps supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was considered as evil as or eviler than harming and fighting him according to the opinion of those, who had lost their minds!

Then how would it be possible for an-Nafs az-Zakiyya to be proud of such defect and disgrace where he was in so critical situation?

Let’s suppose that this letter was said by an-Nafs az-Zakiyya, then what was the evidence that made ibn Abil Hadeed refers especially to Abu Taalib as the worst evil of people?

Wasn’t that but suppose and guess ... if we didn’t want to declare the truth? Otherwise it would show that there was a certain purpose behind that!

Why wouldn’t it concern Talha bin Obaidullaah; the father of Umm Ishaq, who was an-Nafs az-Zakiyya’s grandmother, or Abdul Uzzaa, who was his mother’s grandfather? An-Nafs az-Zakiyya’s mother was Hind bint Abu Obeida bin Abdullah bin Zam’a bin al-Aswad bin al-Muttalib bin Asad bin Abdul Uzzaa.[[344]](#footnote-344) This Abdul Uzzaa was a chief among the unbelievers of Quraysh! We don’t say that one of these two was meant by the saying of an-Nafs az-Zakiyya because it was not but suppose and guess that made ibn Abil Hadeed refer to Abu Taalib alone!

Let’s give up and say that an-Nafs az-Zakiyya didn’t mean by his saying “the worst of the evil” save Abu Taalib, then why did this saying especially, although it contradicted the truth, stop in ibn Abil Hadeed’s chest and nothing of the sayings of Imam Sadiq, who lived in the same period of an-Nafs az-Zakiyya and ibn Abil Hadeed mentioned many of his sayings, stopped in his chest?

There was no any way of comparison between Imam Sadiq and an-Nafs az-Zakiyya whether in science and knowledge, fidelity, truthfulness, keeping to the rightness and announcing it. Ibn Abul Hadeed himself knew this very well, but in spite of all that this letter only that stopped in his chest!

A hair of a camel stopped in his mouth whereas he swallowed camels with their hooves whenever he liked!

Then why didn’t the witnesses of Abu Taalib’s actual son Imam Ali (a.s.) and his sons of the infallible Imams after him, who had much any virtues and qualities that an-Nafs az-Zakiyya didn’t have any of, stop in ibn Abil Hadeed’s chest?

If an-Nafs az-Zakiyya was the son (grandson) of Abu Taalib. “and he wouldn’t be suspected” as ibn Abil Hadeed said, then would the witnesses of Imam Ali (a.s.) and his infallible sons be suspected and would they be accused of adding Abu Taalib to the Muslims whereas he was in the list of the unbelievers?

Were an-Nafs az-Zakiyya more pious and more truthful than Imam Ali (a.s.) and the other infallible Imams that an-Nafs az-Zakiyya said what wouldn’t be suspected and these Imams said what would be far away from the truth?

I myself didn’t think that an-Nafs az-Zakiyya had said this word after showing the evidences that prevented even the insane and the mad from saying such a thing.[[345]](#footnote-345)

If an-Nafs az-Zakiyya had said it, so what did he mean by saying “Abu Taalib was the adopter and the protector of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)”?

And if he meant what he had said, we wouldn’t depend upon it and leave aside the certain sayings of the infallible Imams, who would never be suspected at all whether in their doings or sayings.

Ibn Abul Hadeed said: “His time was near to the time of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and there was not so long period between them and it was not possible that the news might be fabricated.”

Ibn Abul Hadeed depended upon a saying said by a man after nearly a century and a half since the death of whom it was said about and didn’t depend upon the sayings of the infallible Imam, who always and ever kept to the rightness and who lived with the man, he witnessed to, in one house.

Ibn Abul Hadeed didn’t think that the news was fabricated because there was no so long period as he said whereas he himself showed the lies and the false traditions fabricated during the time of Mo’awiya, who was born in the time of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

If the reason was the length or the shortness of time, we wouldn’t find all that fabrications happened during the age of Mo’awiya.

I don’t know how to justify this saying of ibn Abil Hadeed or what was the reason that made him adopt this thought and what made this saying stop in his chest rather than the others?

But we don’t mistrust him as long as (mistrusting the Muslim is haram) and (the sanctity of the Muslim is greater than the sanctity of the Holy Kaaba) as al-Ghazzaali says among what we have quoted in our chapter (At The Threshold) of this book.

After faltering with weak steps in a zigzag way, ibn Abil Hadeed returned to contradict himself by saying: “One of the Talibites[[346]](#footnote-346) wrote a book about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib.[[347]](#footnote-347) He sent it to me and asked me to write a preface for it whether in poetry or prose to witness that the evidences mentioned in the book were true. I hesitated to give a final decision about that because I had some doubt about it...

But I couldn’t refrain from glorifying Abu Taalib because I knew that without him Islam would never stand and I knew that he had done favors that every Muslim must be grateful to him in this life until the Day of Resurrection, so I wrote on the back of the book these verses:

Without Abu Taalib and his son,

the religion wouldn’t be so firm to stand.

That in Mecca; sheltered and defended,

and this in Medina ready to die.

Abu Manaf[[348]](#footnote-348) undertook the task and died,

then came Ali to complete it.

Praise a mountain that passed,

after achieving what he had and leaving but glory!

How great! This began the guidance,

and that concluded with nobilities!

No nonsense of an ignorant would harm the glory of Abu Taalib,

nor would any of eyesight feigning to be blind.

As no one seeing the light of day as darkness,

would harm the signs of morning.

So I gave him his due of glory and honour in full and at the same time I didn’t determine a matter that I was not certain about.”[[349]](#footnote-349)

We found the contradiction clearly in his passage before his verses when he said that he hesitated to decide about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib because he was in doubt about it but he couldn’t refrain from glorifying the man, who was the basis of the great edifice of Islam,, without whom Islam wouldn’t stand and whose favors made every Muslim grateful to him in this life until the Day of Resurrection!

These were two contradictories that couldn’t meet together; Abu Taalib was unbeliever! But without him Islam wouldn’t stand nor would be there a basis for Islam to be erected upon, therefore the Muslims had to be grateful to him!

What an unbeliever he was after all that!

Wherefrom did he get that right to be thanked and respected by the Muslims until the Day of Resurrection? Was that because of his unbelief? And how was he the basis and the pillar of the great structure of Islam? Could an unbeliever be such?

After all that, ibn Abil Hadeed wrote on the book his verses, in which the rightness was so clear. He showed the great deeds of Abu Taalib and his son Imam Ali (a.s.), who were the two pillars of Islam and without whom Islam wouldn’t succeed or stand.

The father began the struggle and established the base of the structure and then the son completed the structure. The father protected and defended the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and then the son often faced death in the way of supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

The great task that the father had undertook but died before it reached the aim; the great son came and completed the efforts of the father.

The father was the beginner of guidance and the son was the completer of the nobilities.

What about this saying “How great! This (Abu Taalib) began the guidance” said by ibn Abil Hadeed?

What did guidance mean? Didn’t it mean the guidance of Islam?

Would the beginner of the guidance of Islam be unbeliever? I beg Allah’s forgiveness!

But after ibn Abil Hadeed had given Abu Taalib his due of glory and honour in full, he couldn’t decide his believing in Islam. It stopped in his mouth. Perhaps he chocked with water or might his mouth be filled with it that he couldn’t speak!

Let’s stop at his saying:

No nonsense of an ignorant would harm the glory of Abu Taalib,

nor would any of eyesight feigning to be blind.

As no one seeing the light of day as darkness,

would harm the signs of morning.

So what harm would be against the high glory of Abu Taalib, his firm faithfulness and his certain believing in Islam if ibn Abil Hadeed, who knew every thing, ignored the truth?

Perhaps it was imposed upon ibn Abil Hadeed to walk in this crooked way and to avoid the bright straight one!

## Fabrication and Distortion

We referred, in the chapter (At The Threshold), to the black market that Mo’awiya had established and had spent too much of the Muslims’ monies just to make it succeed, with not feeling of any responsibility nor fearing the bad end of his bad deeds; therefore fabricating the prophetic traditions and distortion the Quranic verses increased in this market.

The false goods accumulated in this market until a mark of disgrace was put on the forehead of time and the pages of history were blackened with dark letters. The truth was distorted and the face of history was deformed.

Abu Taalib, the father of Imam Ali (a.s.), received his share of that terrible injustice made in this market.

Many lies were fabricated against him to perish his faithfulness, to put out his bright belief and to do with his jihad he had done for the sake of Islam. In fact the purpose of these lies was to avenge on him because it was he, who prevented from choking the mission in its cradle when his nephew and come with it; therefore many lies and untrue traditions were fabricated and many Quranic verses were distorted just to defame him and to remove his virtues.

We have, in this chapter, to rove through the accusations woven against Abu Taalib and the ill-wills that fabricated against him what he was free from.

We have to examine these fabrications and distortions and to criticize them with full analysis in order to clarify the truth.

### The First Verse

Allah (s.w.t.) says:

And of them is he who hearkens to you, and We have cast veils over their hearts lest they understand it and a heaviness into their ears; and even if they see every sign they will not believe in it; so much so that when they come to you they only dispute with you; that who disbelieve say: This is naught but the stories of the ancients. And they prohibit (others) from it and go far away from it, and they only bring destruction upon their own souls while they do not perceive. And could you see when they are made to stand before the fire, then they shall say: Would that we were sent back, and we would not reject the communications of our Lord and we would be of the believer.[[350]](#footnote-350)

These three verses talked about the doings of some of the polytheists, who listened to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when reciting the verses of the Holy Quran revealed to him but they understood nothing. Almighty Allah had put veils over their hearts not to perceive and heaviness into the ears not to hear. They didn’t believe in the verses they narrated from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). They disputed with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) about these verses and said stubbornly that these verses were not but myths of the ancient people.[[351]](#footnote-351) The three verses were common and connected in talking about the same subject; the doings of some of the polytheists, but the fabricators came and distorted the middle verse from among the three.

At-Tabari and others mentioned a tradition narrated by Sufyan as-Sawri from Habeeb bin Abu Sabit from someone, who heard ibn Abbas saying that this verse was revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) concerning Abu Taalib; he prohibited from harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) but he refused to be a Muslim.[[352]](#footnote-352)

We put our notes about this tradition as the following:

a. We found among the stories of the narrators of this tradition Sufyan as-Thawri. He concealed the defects of the traditions of the unreliable narrators, wrote down traditions from the liars[[353]](#footnote-353) and narrated traditions from the unreliable narrators.[[354]](#footnote-354)

Ibn Mubarak said: “Sufyan narrated a tradition. I came and found that he was changing something of it. When he saw me, he felt shy and said: “We narrate it from you.”[[355]](#footnote-355)

Ibn Mo’een said: “The mursal[[356]](#footnote-356) traditions of Sufyan are like the wind.”[[357]](#footnote-357)

It was mention in Tazkeratul Huffaaz from az-Zahabi that al-Faryani had said: “I heard Sufyan saying: If we wanted to tell you of the traditions as we had heard, we wouldn’t tell you even of one tradition.”[[358]](#footnote-358)

Sufyan narrated traditions from as-Salt bin Dinar al-Azdi. As-Salt was one of those, who criticized and defamed Imam Ali (a.s.) and the scholars of jarh and ta’deel[[359]](#footnote-359) criticized him. In spite of that, Sufyan narrated traditions from him but he didn’t mention his name. He said, when narrating from him, Abu Shoaib told us ... until Shu’ba said: “If Sufyan narrates a tradition from someone that you don’t know, don’t accept from him because he narrates traditions from persons like Abu Shoaib the mad.”[[360]](#footnote-360)

There were some people, who considered Sufyan as one of the Shia.

We found ourselves between two contradictories; ascribing Sufyan to the Shia and the truthfulness of this tradition of him!

They were two contradictories that would never meet; Shiism and considering Abu Taalib as unbeliever where Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) and all the Shia agreed upon the faithfulness of Abu Taalib. So did every fair prudent person. Objecting this consensus meant being away from Shiism. If it was proved that Sufyan was one of the Shia, then he would be free from narrating this tradition.

Imam al-Ameen talked about Sufyan in his book A’yan ash-Shia[[361]](#footnote-361) and mentioned both jarh and ta’deel about him and said: “... but I incline towards jarh because he showed many objections against the Imam of Shiism, Ja’far bin Muhammad as-Sadiq (a.s.).”[[362]](#footnote-362)

There was a saying about his Shiism and then he deviated from that[[363]](#footnote-363) and another said that he was a Zaydi.[[364]](#footnote-364)

b. The series of the narrators was cut between Habeeb and ibn Abbas. There was unknown narrator without mentioning any name. This uncovered the hidden secret and answered the riddle!

c. Al-Ameeni said: This tradition was narrated by Habeeb only without being narrated by anyone else. Ibn Habban and ibn Khuzayma said that he was a falsifier. Al-Aqeeli said: Ibn Oun slandered him. He narrated some traditions from Ata’ that no one paid attention to them.

Al-Qattan said: He narrated some traditions from Ata’ that no one paid attention to them and they were not memorized.

Al-Aajuri said that Abu Dawood had said: There is no true tradition narrated by Habeeb from Aasim bin Zamra.[[365]](#footnote-365)

Ibn Ja’far an-Nakhkhas said: He (Habeeb) often said: If a man told me of a tradition narrated by you and then I narrated it, I would be truthful.”[[366]](#footnote-366)

Do you see the indifference of this man towards his narration and his mockery in his tradition?

d. Al-Qurtubi said: “The meaning of the Quranic verse was general and it concerned all the unbelievers, who kept away from Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and prevented people from following him. So was said by ibn Abbas and al-Hasan.”[[367]](#footnote-367)

Al-Ameeni quoted from at-Tabari, ibnul Munzir, ibn Abu Hatim and ibn Mardwayh a tradition narrated by Ali bin Abu Talha and al-Qufi that ibn Abbas thought that this verse concerned the polytheists, who prohibited people from believing in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and who kept away from him.[[368]](#footnote-368)

Al-Ameeni mentioned another tradition narrated in many ways and the all thought that the verse meant: they prevented people from the Holy Quran and from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and they kept away from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).[[369]](#footnote-369)

e. No one interpreted the verse like Sufyan as-Thawri did, especially after mentioning the tradition of ibn Abbas that was narrated in many ways. Ibn Abbas contradicted Sufyan in interpreting this verse and in his thought about his uncle Abu Taalib.[[370]](#footnote-370) We have mentioned his clear thought about his uncle in the previous chapter.[[371]](#footnote-371)

f. The unity of the meaning between the three Quranic verses prevents any one from distorting the meaning of the second verse where it is connected with the previous and the following one.

g. Distorting the meaning of the middle verse especially conflicts with its clear meaning.

The meaning of the verse, as it was explained by all the interpreters, was: they prohibited from listening to the Holy Quran and to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) ... whereas the distorters distorted the meaning of (prohibition) and interpreted it as supporting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and prohibiting people from harming him!

How could we get such a meaning out of this verse?

h. This interpretation, in which they said that the verse concerned Abu Taalib alone because he prevented the unbelievers from harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and so they kept away from believing in him, was falser than the previous interpretation.[[372]](#footnote-372)

The pronoun in the verse was a plural pronoun ‘... they prohibit ... them ...’. If it concerned Abu Taalib alone, the pronoun would be a singular pronoun.

Then how could the meaning of ‘and go far away from it’ refer to Abu Taalib, who had never separated from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for a moment? When did Abu Taalib keep away from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)?

Was that when he protected and supported the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)? Was that when he propagandized for the mission? Was that when he defended the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his followers?

How could Abu Taalib do all that if he was away from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)?

i. It would be better to quote the sayings of some interpreters about this subject. We quoted these sayings from al-Ameeni’s book Al-Ghadeer because some of the reference books were not easily to be at hand.

Ar-Razi mentioned in his Tafseer[[373]](#footnote-373) two sayings; the verse was revealed to talk about the polytheists, who prohibited people from believing in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), and the other saying; that the verse concerned Abu Taalib especially and he said: The first saying is more accepted for two reasons;

The first: all the previous verses criticized the unbelievers and even the sayings (And they prohibit (others) from it) must concern them because if we interpret this saying to concern Abu Taalib, who prohibited from harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), there will be a confusion in the meaning of the verses.

The second: after that Allah (s.w.t.) said: ‘and they only bring destruction upon their own souls.’ It refers to the very previous meaning and it is not suitable that the saying ‘And they prohibit (others) from it’ means prohibiting from harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) because this is a good meaning and doesn’t lead to destruction.

If it is said that the saying ‘and they only bring destruction upon their own souls’ concerns the saying ‘and go far away from it’ and not ‘And they prohibit (others) from it’ because it means that ‘they kept away from him by refusing his religion’ and this is dispraise so your justification is not right.

We say: the meaning of the saying ‘and they only bring destruction upon their own souls’ concerns all what mentioned previously because it is like saying that someone keeps away from a certain thing and disaffects the others from it and so he will harm himself. Harm, here, doesn’t concern only one thing rather than the other.”

Ibn Kaseer in his Tafseer[[374]](#footnote-374) mentioned the first saying narrated by ibnul Hanafiyya, Qatada, Mujahid, az-Zahhak and others and said: “This saying is more acceptable – Allah is the most aware – and it is preferred by ibn Jareer.”[[375]](#footnote-375)

An-Nasfiy, in his Tafseer printed on the margins of al-Khazin’s Tafseer,[[376]](#footnote-376) mentioned the first saying and then said: “It was said that it concerned Abu Taalib but the first saying is more acceptable.”

Az-Zamakhshari in his Kashshaf,[[377]](#footnote-377) ash-Shawkani in his Tafseer[[378]](#footnote-378) and others mentioned the first saying and mentioned the second saying preceded by (it was said). Al-Aaloosi detailed the first saying then he mentioned the second and said: “The Imam denied it.” Then he mentioned the conclusion of ar-Razi.[[379]](#footnote-379)

Some people generalized the verse to concern all the Prophet’s uncles: “... they were ten (uncles). They were the most of people in being with him openly and the most of people in being against him secretly.”[[380]](#footnote-380)

You knew well that among the Prophet’s uncles were Hamza; the Master of the Martyrs and al-Abbas!

You could decide after that whether these two; Hamza and al-Abbas, would be in Hell and would be concerned by this verse or not!

What would the perplexed and the infatuated ones interpret more?

As for me, I wouldn’t be surprised to hear that. We have mentioned some examples in the first chapter of this book (At The Threshold).

One of them was a tradition narrated by Orwa saying that al-Abbas and Imam Ali (a.s.) would be among the people of Hell!

However Hamza wouldn’t be better than Imam Ali (a.s.) in virtues so they would say about him whatever they liked!!!

j. Hence the hidden secret was uncovered and the mean purposes behind distorting the meaning of the Quranic verse from being about the unbelievers to concern the faithful man Abu Taalib became clear according to the weak series of the narrators, the unity of the meaning of the verses and the opinions of the interpreters.

Before all, the doings and the sayings of Abu Taalib and the witnesses of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his progeny had confirmed the faithfulness of this man.

All that imposed upon us to brush that distorted interpretation aside and not to pay any attention to the evil wills.

### The Second and the Third Verses

1. ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives, after it has become clear to them that they are inmates of the flaming fire.’[[381]](#footnote-381)

2. ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases, and He knows best the followers of the right way.’[[382]](#footnote-382)

We would like first to quote the fabricated traditions that distorted the meaning of these verses then to discuss the source of the traditions and to uncover the reality of the narrator’s one after the other.

1. Ishaq bin Ibrahim said that Abdur Razzaq told him from Mu’ammar from az-Zohri from Saeed bin al-Musayyab that his father had said: “When Abu Taalib was dying, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came to him while Abu Jahl and Abdullah bin Abu Umayya were sitting near him. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to Abu Taalib: “O uncle! Say there is no god but Allah so that I will intercede with Allah for you by it!”

Abu Jahl and Abdullah bin Abu Umayya said: “O Abu Taalib! Do you deny the religion of Abdul Muttalib?”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “I will pray Allah to forgive you as long as I am not forbidden from it.”

Then this verse was revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists...’[[383]](#footnote-383)

2. From Abul Yaman, from Shoaib, from az-Zohri, from Saeed bin al-Musayyab from his father: “When Abu Taalib was dying, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came to him. He found Abu Jahl and Abdullah bin Abu Umayya bin al-Mugheera sitting near him. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “O uncle! Say there is no god but Allah so that I will intercede with Allah for you by this word.”

Abu Jahl and Abdullah bin Abu Umayya said (to Abu Taalib): “Do you deny the religion of Abdul Muttalib?”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) kept on asking his uncle to say that and those two men repeated their saying until Abu Taalib said, and it was the last word he had said before his death: “On the religion of Abdul Muttalib” and he refused to say that that there was no god but Allah.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “By Allah! I will pray Allah to forgive you as long as I am not forbidden from it.”

Then Allah revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists...’

Also Allah revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) about Abu Taalib: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guide whom He pleases, and He knows best the followers of the right way.’[[384]](#footnote-384)

3. From Harmala bin Yahya at-Tajeebi, from Abdullah bin Wahab, from Younus, from ibn Shihaab, from Saeed bin al-Musayyab, from his father: “When Abu Taalib was dying, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came to him ... etc.”[[385]](#footnote-385)

4. From Muhammad bin Abbad and ibn Abu Umar, from Marwan, from Yazeed bin Kaysaan, from Abu Hazim, from Abu Hurayra: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to his uncle when he was dying: “Say: there is no god but Allah so that I witness to you with it in the Day of Resurrection.” He refused. Then Allah revealed: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases, and He knows best the followers of the right way’.[[386]](#footnote-386)

5. From Muhammad bin Hatim bin Maymoon, from Yahya bin Saeed, from Yazeed bin Saeed, from Yazeed bin Kaysaan, from Abu Hazim al-Ashjaee, from Abu Hurayra: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to his uncle: “Say: there is no god but Allah so that I witness to you with it in the Day of Resurrection.” Abu Taalib said: “I fear that Quraysh may blame me. They may say that he is forced by fearing death to say that, otherwise I will delight your eyes with it.” Then Allah revealed: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases, and He knows best the followers of the right way.’[[387]](#footnote-387)

### The Narrators of the First Three Traditions

We started with the narrators of the first three traditions for some reasons:

1. Among the narrators of the first traditions there was Ishaq bin Ibrahim, whose name was incomplete. There were many persons having this name. We didn’t know which one he was. Was he Ishaq bin Ibrahim, the weak (unreliable)? Or whose sheikh was unregarded? Or who was not trusty? Or whom az-Zahabi didn’t know and who was considered as liar by ibn Adi and al-Azdi because of fabricating traditions? Or about whom al-Hakim and ad-Darqutni said: he was not reliable? Or about whom an-Nesaaee said that he was not trusty, Abu Dawood said that he was nothing and was considered at liar by the speaker of Him,[[388]](#footnote-388) Muhammad bin Awf at-Ta’iy? Or who narrated the denied traditions? Or who was left without paying any attention to his traditions?[[389]](#footnote-389)

But he might be Ishaq bin Ibrahim az-Zubri, the companion of Abdur Razzaq about whom az-Zahabi said: “He was not a man of traditions ...” until he said: “but Abdur Razzaq narrated from him denied traditions. Then they were treated with hesitation; were they narrated by him alone or they were known traditions narrated by Abdur Razzaq alone?”[[390]](#footnote-390)

But the author of Sheikhul Abtah said when talking about this tradition that he was Ishaq bin Ibrahim bin Rahwayh.[[391]](#footnote-391)

Az-Zahabi said about this one: “Abu Obeid al-Aajuri said: I heard Abu Dawood saying: Ishaq bin Rahwayh became different (dotard) five months before his death. I heard from him some traditions at those days but I brushed them aside” until he said: “A tradition was mentioned to our sheikh Abul Hajjaj. He said: It was said that Ishaq doted at the last days of his life.” Then he mentioned, as he thought, some of Ishaq’s denied traditions.[[392]](#footnote-392)

We thought that he was the companion of Abdur Razzaq because he related the traditions to Abdur Razzaq.

Then who was this Abdur Razzaq?

Was he Abdur Razzaq bin Umar as-Saqafi, about whom it was said that he was weak, unreliable and his traditions were denied and about whom ad-Darqutni said that he was weak and his book was lost and Abu Mosahhar said from az-Zohri that his book was lost?[[393]](#footnote-393)

But he might be that one, about whom az-Zahabi had said in his traditions from Ishaq bin Ibrahim, which we mentioned above: “... but he narrated from Abdur Razzaq denied traditions ... etc.”

He had narrated from Ma’mar bin Rashid ten thousand traditions![[394]](#footnote-394)

Then we found among the narrators the name of Ma’mar. He was not but a liar, unknown and a narrator of denied traditions.[[395]](#footnote-395)

We thought that this Ma’mar was Ma’mar bin Rashid.[[396]](#footnote-396) Az-Zahabi said about him: “He had famous illusions. Abu Hatim said. He didn’t narrate traditions in Basra because he had many mistakes.”[[397]](#footnote-397)

Abdur Razzaq, who was one of the series of narrators of this tradition, said that he had written down from Ma’mar ten thousand traditions.[[398]](#footnote-398)

Did you see the great number of traditions?! And did you see this naughty series of narrators? There was nothing except falseness, fabrication and split ties.

2. Also we found in the series of narrators of the second tradition incomplete and unknown names.

Who was Abul Yaman?

We didn’t find save one name that narrated a mursal tradition (a tradition narrated without – or with incomplete or unknown – series of narrators).[[399]](#footnote-399)

The second name was Shoaib. We found many persons having this name and no one of them was but a fabricator, a liar, weak, a narrator of denied traditions, unknown ... etc.[[400]](#footnote-400)

3. Then the series of the two traditions met with az-Zohri. Would az-Zohri’s tradition be trusted whereas he himself had narrated that fabricated tradition, which we mentioned in the first chapter (At The Threshold), saying that Imam Ali (a.s.) and his uncle al-Abbas would be among the people of Hell and would die on a religion other than the Prophet’s religion?[[401]](#footnote-401)

Would a tradition about Abu Taalib, the father of Ali, be taken from this man, who had said such a lie, falseness and fabrication against Imam Ali (a.s.) so impudently?

The purpose behind that was clear and was brighter than the light of the sun. What would we expect this man to say about Abu Taalib after that obscene accusation and impudent saying he had said about Imam Ali (a.s.)?

It was enough for az-Zohri that Abu Taalib was the father of Imam Ali (a.s.) to say about him worse than what he had said. After that we didn’t need to say that he was one of those, who concealed the defects of the fabricated traditions of the liars![[402]](#footnote-402)

The two traditions about Ali and al-Abbas that narrated by him were enough for us to brush him aside!

It would be better to point out that Abdur Razzaq and Ma’mar, who participated with az-Zohri in weaving the threads of the first fabricated traditions against Abu Taalib, couldn’t keep on with him till the end Abdur Razzaq said: “Ma’mar said: “Az-Zohri had two traditions narrated by Orwa from Aaesha about Ali (a.s.).” One day I asked him about them. He said: What do you do with them and their traditions? Allah is more aware of them. I suspect them when they talk about the Hashemites.”[[403]](#footnote-403)

He meant az-Zohri and Orwa and he meant by the two traditions those traditions fabricated against Imam Ali (a.s.) and al-Abbas that they were among the people of Hell and they would die on a religion other than Islam.

It would be better to mention this event about az-Zohri:

Someone was in the Mosque of Medina. He saw az-Zohri and Orwa bin az-Zubayr sitting there. They criticized and defamed Imam Ali (a.s.). Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.), (Imam Sajjad) was informed of that. He came to them and said: “As for you Orwa! My father claimed against your father and it was judged for my father. But as for you Zohri If you were in Mecca, I would show you the house of your father!”[[404]](#footnote-404)

4. Among the series of the narrators of the third tradition we found these names:

a. Harmala bin Yahya at-Tajeebi or at-Taheebi, whose odd traditions were narrated by him alone.

Abu Hatim said about him that no one depended about his traditions. Abdullah bin Muhammad al-Farhathan considered him as weak as it was said by ibn Adi.

It was said that Harmala had one thousand traditions. All of them were narrated from ibn Wahab. This tradition, we are talking about, was narrated by Harmala from ibn Wahab. He narrated all ibn Wahab’s tradition except two.[[405]](#footnote-405)

b. We were confused when we read about what had been said about Abdullah bin Wahab, the second narrator of the series of this false tradition. It was said that he had compiled one hundred and twenty thousand traditions and that all his traditions were with Harmala except two traditions.[[406]](#footnote-406)

Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal was asked by someone about bin Wahab: “Didn’t he take traditions improperly?” He answered: “Yes, he did.”[[407]](#footnote-407)

That he narrated one hundred and twenty thousand traditions alone ... wasn’t it enough to certify that he took traditions improperly?!

What was this abundance of traditions? He just had to say: someone informed me, so told me, so narrated to me and so said to me until this great number of traditions was to be completed!

c. We didn’t know who was this Younus mentioned among the narrators of the tradition. There were many bad memorizers, of denied traditions and even that some ones were surnamed as “the liar”.[[408]](#footnote-408)

d. And as for ibn Shihab, he was more obscure than to know anything about him!

5. Thus the series of the three traditions connected with Saeed bin al-Musayyab, who had narrated the traditions from his father.

Hence we couldn’t trust in the tradition after all these defects even if it was narrated by Saeed bin al-Musayyab. In fact there was a great disagreement about this Saeed himself in jarh and ta’deel (whether he was reliable or not).

Among those, who criticized him, was ibn Abil Hadeed. He considered him as one of those, who deviated from Imam Ali (a.s.), and that there was something (evil) in his heart towards Imam Ali (a.s.)[[409]](#footnote-409) and he was one of those, who hated and criticized Imam Ali (a.s.).

As long as he hated Imam Ali (a.s.), so it wouldn’t be possible in any case to trust in his traditions; then how about a tradition concerning Abu Taalib, who was the father of Imam Ali (a.s.). Imam Ali (a.s.), according to many prophetic traditions, was the separative limit between faithfulness and polytheism; that no polytheist would love him and no faithful would hate him.

We would like to mention some events and saying concerning this man. We begin with this dialogue between him and Umar bin Ali bin Abu Taalib as it was mentioned by ibn Abil Hadeed: “... Umar bin Ali (a.s.) scolded him severely.

Abdur Rahman bin al-Aswad narrated that Abu Dawood al-Hamadani had said: Once I was there when Saeed bin al-Musayyab asked Umar bin Ali bin Abu Taalib (a.s.) in the Mosque.

He said to Umar: “O my nephew![[410]](#footnote-410) I don’t see that you come to the Prophet’s Mosque so much like your brothers and cousins!”

Umar said: “O bin al-Musayyab! Do I meet you whenever I come to the Mosque?”

Saeed said: “I don’t like to make you angry. I have heard your father saying: I have a position that is much better for the family of Abdul Muttalib than all what is there on the earth.”

Umar said: “And I have hard my father saying: No word of wisdom in a polytheist’s heart remains, unless he utters it before he leaves this life.”

Saeed said: “O my nephew! Do you make of me a polytheist?”

Umar said: “It is what I say.” Then he left.[[411]](#footnote-411)

Thus this word of rightness had come out of bin al-Musayyab’s heart before he left this world.

This severity of Umar bin Ali towards bin al-Musayyab might show his bad situation towards Imam Ali (a.s.), his deviating from him, hating him and trying to defame him!

Here is another event showing his deviating from Ahlul Bayt (a.s.):

One day Saeed bin al-Musayyab passed by the dead body of Imam Sajjad (Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.)) but he didn’t offer the prayer for the dead. Someone came to him and denied his behaviour. He said to him: “Don’t you offer the prayer for this virtuous man of the virtuous Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)?

Saeed bin al-Musayyab said: “Offering 2 rak’ats[[412]](#footnote-412) is better to me than to offer the prayer for this virtuous man!”[[413]](#footnote-413)

Then how could we trust in a tradition against Ali from a man suspected of hating him?

If we knew that Saeed had said: “Whoever loved Abu Bakr, Umar, Usmaan and Ali, confessed that the ten persons[[414]](#footnote-414) would be in paradise, prayed Allah to have mercy upon Mo’awiya (!!) and died on that, Allah wouldn’t punish him in the Day of Punishment”,[[415]](#footnote-415) then we would know, after he had cleared his situation towards Mo’awiya, what value a tradition, said by this man against Abu Taalib, had!

The situation of Saeed bin al-Musayyab towards Mo’awiya couldn’t be denied. He narrated another false tradition about Mo’awiya that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “... he went towards the One, Whom no one could go except towards; and I hope that Allah won’t punish him.”[[416]](#footnote-416)

Do you know what led him to narrate this false tradition, which made him forget all the shed bloods, the extorted rights and all the disgraceful and obscene doings done by Mo’awiya?

He justified that by an untruthful saying said by Mo’awiya when he was under the wing of death and all the ways were closed before him.

Mo’awiya said: “O Allah! Forgive the stumble, remit the slip and grant your patience to the one, who doesn’t hope save You and doesn’t trust save in You. You are the greatest forgive and there is no escape for a sinful save towards You.”[[417]](#footnote-417)

Perhaps the saying of Mo’awiya was the cornerstone for the heresy of the Murji’ah[[418]](#footnote-418) and hence Mo’awiya was considered to be the first of the Murjites.

Murjiism began from this unjust structure that Mo’awiya had erected upon committing sins and crimes and spreading vices and injustice.

Surely this unjust Mo’awiya uttered these words with his tongue only, when he was dying, without believing in them whereas his doings didn’t know any of these meanings. Then came after him who hoped that might Allah not punish this immoral blood-shedder and might forget -may He forgive us- what this or that might have forgotten his sins and crimes.

And it would be better to show the situation of Saeed bin al-Musayyab in evaluating Mo’awiya and his likes of the mean Umayyad house.

He was asked: “Who is the most eloquent of people?”

He said: “The Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)...”

It was said to him: “We don’t ask you about this!”

Then he didn’t find save Mo’awiya, his son Yazeed, Saeed bin al-Aas and his son Amr al-Ashdaq.[[419]](#footnote-419)

By this we knew that he was deviate from Ali and his progeny, for what eloquence these persons had in comparison with the ocean of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s eloquence!

There was a great disagreement about Saeed and the thoughts were different about him. Some ones considered him as Shia and as one of Imam Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.)’s disciples.

But this was not true for many reasons that we didn’t want to waste time in detailing. His traditions against Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) and their father Abu Taalib besides the saying of Imam Sajjad himself, of whom Saeed was considered as disciple, was sufficient evidence for us to show his deviation.

If it was proved that he was a Shia, this tradition would be not his.

Some people, as al-Mufeed, considered him as one of those, who hated Ahlul Bayt (a.s.).

And some, as Malik, considered him as one of the Kharijites.[[420]](#footnote-420)

Any how if ta’deel was preferred to jarh about this man, and this what we liked, then this tradition wouldn’t have been narrated by him definitely.

If Saeed was reliable, then definitely it would be the doubtful series of the narrators that fabricated the tradition and ascribed it to Saeed.

As for the father of Saeed, al-Musayyab bin Hazan, from whom his son Saeed had inherited “severity and impoliteness”[[421]](#footnote-421) and who was “one of those, who became Muslims (unwillingly) after the conquest of Mecca.”[[422]](#footnote-422)

So how could he attend the death of Abu Taalib? And if he attended the death of Abu Taalib, then how would his tradition be trusted whereas he wanted to increase the number of the polytheists, who would join him to justify his polytheistic situation?

This tradition couldn’t be trusted for many reasons; the incomplete and suspicious series of narrators and that it was objected by true and reliable traditions.

### The Narrators of the Two Last Traditions

Here we discuss the series of narrators of each of the fourth and the fifth traditions.

1. The narrators of the fourth tradition:

a. Muhammad bin Abbad ... who was he?

Everyone having this name was not more than to be unknown, unaware of traditions, blamed for his traditions, suspected or weak as ad-Darqutni said.[[423]](#footnote-423)

b. Ibn Abu Umar ... who was he? No one knew who he was. Let’s leave him with his obscurity.

c. Marwan...!

There were many persons having this name; among them was a liar, unknown, weak, who narrated denied traditions, who narrated from every Tom, Dick and Harry, who was unreliable and whose traditions were not evidenced.[[424]](#footnote-424)

2. The narrators of the fifth tradition:

a. Muhammad bin Hatim bin Maymoon al-Qatee’iy, who was famous as “the fat man”; ibn Mo’een and ibn al-Medeeni said that he was a liar. Al-Fallas said about him that he was nothing.[[425]](#footnote-425)

b. Yahya bin Saeed; al-Bukhari and Abu Hatim said that his traditions were denied. An-Nesaaee said that he narrated from az-Zohri fabricated traditions. Ibn Adi and others said that he ascribed to the reliable persons false traditions. Ibn Habban said about him that he mistook in traditions so much.[[426]](#footnote-426)

Yahya bin Saeed al-Qattan[[427]](#footnote-427) said that he concealed when narrating traditions. Ad-Dimyati said: It was said that he concealed.[[428]](#footnote-428)

It was this Yahya bin Saeed, who said that he had something in his heart against Imam Ja’far as-Sadiq (a.s.).[[429]](#footnote-429)

3. Then the series of narrators of the two traditions reached to Yazeed bin Kaysaan from Abu Hazim from Abu Hurayra.

a. As for Yazeed bin Kaysaan, az-Zahabi mentioned two persons having this name; the first of them concerned our subject. Az-Zahabi said about him that he narrated from Abu Hazim al-Ashjaee and others and he narrated from Yahya al-Qattan then he said: “Abu Hatim said: No one depends upon his traditions. Yahya bin Saeed al-Qattan said: He was some how good but not reliable.”[[430]](#footnote-430)

We didn’t know whether az-Zahabi meant by Yahya bin Saeed al-Qattan the one, who narrated from Yazeed and who was criticized by az-Zahabi himself another one!

b. We didn’t know the name of Abu Hazim al-Ashjaee so we couldn’t know anything about him.[[431]](#footnote-431)

c. As for Abu Hurayra, it was disagreed about his name, his father’s name and his lineage until it might be thought that this surname was of many persons![[432]](#footnote-432)

This exceeding narrator of traditions was the most of the narrators in narrating traditions.[[433]](#footnote-433) It was found in one Musnad,[[434]](#footnote-434) which was the Musnad of Taqiy bin Mukhallad, more than five thousand and three hundred traditions narrated by this man alone.[[435]](#footnote-435)

It was him, who used to spread his dress, as he himself has said, to be filled with prophetic traditions and then to join to his chest.[[436]](#footnote-436)

We didn’t know what kind of traditions that his dress was filled with!

I thought that this tradition was one of those traditions that had been attached to this dress! He narrated it as a prophetic tradition but he didn’t know that it was among those things that had been attached to his dress!!!

We didn’t accept this tradition from many reasons; Abu Hurayra, as we mentioned in the first chapter of this book, was one of those who had been hired by Mo’awiya to fabricate traditions against Imam Ali (a.s.).

We quoted here what ibn Abil Hadeed had mentioned in his book that Abu Ja’far al-Iskafi had said: “Mo’awiya employed some people of the Prophet’s companions and some of the successors to fabricate traditions having bad news defaming Ali (a.s.) and calling for turning aside from him. He assigned bribes for that in order to make it desirous for the others to do the same. So they fabricated many traditions to please him.

Among them were Abu Hurayra, Amr bin al-Aas and al-Mugheera bin Shu’ba and among the successors was Orwa bin az-Zubayr.”[[437]](#footnote-437)

You saw that Abu Hurayra was one of those, who had been hired by Mo’awiya to fabricate traditions against Imam Ali (a.s.), and you saw that he had fabricated the tradition we mentioned in the first chapter (At The Threshold), in which he had sworn by Allah (s.w.t.) that Ali (a.s.) had done corruption in Medina and hence he had deserved, according to Abu Hurayra’s thought, to be cursed by Allah, the Angels and all the peoples.[[438]](#footnote-438)

He followed Mo’awiya just for money. “If Mo’awiya gave him money, he would keep quiet, but if Mo’awiya didn’t give him money, he would speak out.”[[439]](#footnote-439)

We would like, before mentioning some sayings about Abu Hurayra, to show what he himself had narrated.

He said: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to me: Where are you from?

I said: From Dous.[[440]](#footnote-440)

He said: I haven’t thought that there is a good man in Dous.”[[441]](#footnote-441)

He didn’t exclude anyone so Abu Hurayra would be included in this general judgement.

Here are some sayings about Abu Hurayra:

Abu Ja’far al-Iskafi said: “Abu Hurayra is considered as abnormal by our sheikhs. His traditions are unaccepted. Once Umar hit him with his stick and said to him: You exceed in narrating traditions and I think that you ascribe lies to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)!”[[442]](#footnote-442)

Once again Umar said to him: “Either you stop narrating the Prophet’s traditions or I will expel you to the land of Dous.”[[443]](#footnote-443) Dous was Abu Hurayra’s home in Yemen before he became a Muslim.

What could we say about Umar?

Was he unjust to Abu Hurayra when he hit him or when he threatened him with expelling?

I myself don’t think that the caliph was of this kind, but his conscience didn’t accept such abundance of traditions narrated by this man and ascribed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and he knew that many of them were not true! Therefore the caliph wounded Abu Hurayra’s back with his stick and threatened him -another time- with expelling that he might refrain from fabricating traditions!

This was not the only time that the caliph Umar wounded Abu Hurayra’s back with his stick.

Once the caliph Umar sent for him, when he had appointed him as the wall of Bahrain, The caliph said to Abu Hurayra, who himself had narrated this: “O enemy of Allah and enemy of His Book! Have you stolen the wealth of the Muslims? ... etc.”[[444]](#footnote-444)

He exceeded in narrating traditions during the time of the caliph Umar, who was so severe and sharp in matters of this kinds, and Abu Hurayra knew that well so he feared Umar very much; therefore we found him after the reign of Umar answering Abu Salama when he asked him: “Did you tell of such traditions during the time of Umar?”

Abu Hurayra said: “If I told at the time of Umar of what I tell you of now, he would hit me with his stick.”[[445]](#footnote-445)

He said: “I have told you of traditions that if I had told of during the time of Umar, he would have hit me with this stick.”[[446]](#footnote-446)

All that didn’t make him refrain from fabricating traditions in spite of the severity of Umar towards him, so how about him during the time of Mo’awiya, who encouraged him and gave him money just to fabricate traditions?

Ibrahim at-Tameemi said: “The scholars of Hadith didn’t depend upon Abu Hurayra’s traditions save those traditions that talked about Paradise and Hell.”[[447]](#footnote-447)

How would he, who was unreliable and untrusted in one side, be reliable and trusted in another side?[[448]](#footnote-448)

Shu’ba said: “Abu Hurayra concealed in his traditions.”[[449]](#footnote-449)

We didn’t care for the comment of az-Zahabi after that until he invented the lie of (justness of the companions all in all)!!!

Al-A’mash said: “Ibrahim was correct in traditions. Whenever I heard a tradition, I came to show him the tradition. One day I came to him with traditions narrated by Abu Saaleh from Abu Hurayra. He said: Let me aside from Abu Hurayra. They leave many of his traditions away.”[[450]](#footnote-450)

It was mentioned that Imam Ali (a.s.) had said: “The most in ascribing lies to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) among the people -or he said among the alive -is Abu Hurayra ad-Doussi.”[[451]](#footnote-451)

The saying of Imam Ali (a.s.) was irrefutable evidence. Hurayra or we believe Imam Ali (a.s.) with his saying, which would do away with all what Abu Hurayra had fabricated?

Abu Yusuf said: “I said to Abu Haneefa: “If a prophetic tradition comes to us contradicting our analogy, what will we do with it?” He said: “If it is narrated by trusty narrators, we will do according to it and leave out our own thought.” The conversation continued until Abu Haneefa said: “All of the companions were trusty except some ones ...” He mentioned some names, among which the name of Abu Hurayra was.”[[452]](#footnote-452)

It was mentioned that when Abu Hurayra came to Kufa with Mo’awiya, he used to sit at the gate of Kinda in the evenings and people sat around him. One day a young man from Kufa -it was said he was al-Asbagh bin Nabata[[453]](#footnote-453)- came and said to Abu Hurayra: “O Abu Hurayra, I ask you by Allah! Have you heard the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) saying to Ali bin Abu Taalib: “O Allah! Be a supporter of whoever supports him and an enemy of whoever opposes him?”

He said: “By Allah! Yes, I have.”

The young man said: “Then witness by Allah that you have supported his (Ali’s) enemies and opposed his supporters.” Then he left.”[[454]](#footnote-454)

One day Abul Asbagh bin Nabata at-Tameemi came with a book from Imam Ali (a.s.) to Mo’awiya, who was surrounded by the evil people like Amr bin al-Aas, Thul Kila’, Hawshab, ibn Aamir, al-Waleed bin Aqaba, Shurahbeel, Abu Hurayra, Abud Darda’ and others.

The argument began between Abul Asbagh and Mo’awiya. Abul Asbagh scolded Mo’awiya and turned towards Abu Hurayra and said to him: “You are the Prophet’s companion. I ask you by Allah, Whom there is no god but, and by His Apostle! Have you heard the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) saying about Imam Ali (a.s.) on the day of Ghadeer Khum: “Whoever I am his guardian; here is Ali to be his guardian?”

He said: “Yes by Allah, I have heard him saying that.”

Abul Asbagh said: “O Abu Hurayra! Then you have supported his enemies and opposed his supporters!”

Abu Hurayra sighed and didn’t say more than: “We are from Allah and to Him we shall return!”[[455]](#footnote-455)

Jariya bin Qudama as-Sa’di came to Medina after the terrible aggression done by Bisr bin Arta’a according to the order of the tyrant Mo’awiya. Abu Hurayra, who was leading the prayers, fled when he heard of the coming of Qudama with an army sent by Imam Ali (a.s.).

Qudama said: “By Allah! If I caught Abu Sannoor,[[456]](#footnote-456) I would cut his head.”[[457]](#footnote-457)

It was mentioned that Abu Hurayra praised Allah twelve thousand times every day. He said: “I praise Allah as much as my sins.”[[458]](#footnote-458)

We didn’t want to discuss the truthfulness or the reasonability of this raving! Did he have enough time to do this great number of praising, which equalled his plenty sins, and to narrate that great deal of traditions whereas he was so poor and hungry at the beginning of his Islamic life and then he became busy with Mo’awiya and his likes at the end of his life?

We didn’t want to comment but we wanted to refer to his saying that his praising was as much as his sins. What terrible sins they were! But giving up committing sins would be much better than asking for forgiveness!

Then came who called for committing sins in a covered way depending upon a denied fabricated tradition, Perhaps the fabricator was this man, who praised Allah (s.w.t.) as much as his sins!

The tradition was: “By Him, in Whose hand my soul is! If you didn’t commit sins, Allah (s.w.t.) would replace you with people committing sins and then asking for forgiveness and they would be forgiven.”

Among those who defended this tradition and said that it was true was Professor Khalid Muhammad Khalid. We didn’t want to argue with him but it was just a reference.

Abu Hurayra was shallow-minded and unintellectual. He was transported by the position he got near Mo’awiya. He found that he became known after his obscurity and respected after being hit by Umar’s stick.

Sometimes he ate and played with the children.[[459]](#footnote-459)

He might tell them of some prophetic traditions to justify his situation in playing with them! It might be, especially after the commercial advertisements had increased via prophetic traditions fabricated by the merchants of Hadith such as this tradition: “Whoever ate onion of Akka as if he had visited Mecca!” and many others like this one.

Once Abu Hurayra made a speech in Medina when he was appointed as the wali by Mo’awiya[[460]](#footnote-460) as a reward for his situation towards Imam Ali (a.s.) when he witnessed that Imam Ali (a.s.) had corrupted in Medina and hence he would be cursed by Allah, the Angels and all the people!!! Allah forbid!

Abu Hurayra said in his speech: “Praise be to Allah, Who made the religion as the right path and made Abu Hurayra as Imam ...” He made people laugh[[461]](#footnote-461) instead of discussing the serious affairs of the society and the umma.

Another time: he was walking in the market while he was the emir. There was a man walking in front of him. He beat the ground with his foot and said: “Clear the way! Clear the way! The emir has come.”[[462]](#footnote-462)

Ibn Abul Hadeed said after mentioning these points about Abu Hurayra’s life: “Ibn Qotaiba had mentioned all that in his book Al-Ma’arif when talking about Abu Hurayra’s biography. Ibn Qotaiba’s saying was evidence because he would never be accused of fabricating against Abu Hurayra.”[[463]](#footnote-463)

Abu Hurayra sided with Mo’awiya since he had known that Mo’awiya could satiate his greediness. He was as the shadow of Mo’awiya; he bent when Mo’awiya bent and stood up when Mo’awiya stood up!

One day Mo’awiya sent a letter to Imam Ali (a.s.) with an-No’man bin Basheer and sent Abu Hurayra[[464]](#footnote-464) with him asking Imam Ali (a.s.) to deliver the killers of Usmaan to Mo’awiya. Mo’awiya knew well what the situation of Imam Ali (a.s.) would be towards this fabricated lie but he wanted it to be the means for what he planned to do later on; therefore he chose these two men to carry his letter and to come back blaming and defaming Ali in front of the rabbles of Sham!

When the two messengers came to Ali (a.s.), Abu Hurayra began his talk and then an-No’man talked.

Imam Ali (a.s.) turned away from Abu Hurayra and talked with an-No’man. He advised an-No’man about his religion without paying any attention to what Abu Hurayra had said.

An-No’man was satisfied to stay with Imam Ali (a.s.) but he concealed his deceit to come back to his friend Mo’awiya after a short time whereas Abu Hurayra was franker than his mate because the bad task he had come for invited him to go back soon to Mo’awiya to inform the people of Sham of what he had seen and heard...[[465]](#footnote-465)

And if he needed more, he would get from his five bags, which were full of traditions, as he himself had said: “I had memorized (traditions) from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) (that filled) five bags. I informed of (the contents of) two bags and if I informed the third, you would stone me.”[[466]](#footnote-466)

Perhaps after he had gotten out so many traditions of his two bags, he said: “I was considered as a liar until I was thrown with dirt’s.”[[467]](#footnote-467)

If he opened the third bag, he would be stoned. He said: “If I told you of all what I had in my bag, you would throw me with dung.”[[468]](#footnote-468)

So how about him if he had opened the fourth and the fifth bags?

He might refer to that when he said: “I had memorized two vessels (of traditions) from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). I spread one of them but as for the other, if I spread it, this throat would be cut.”[[469]](#footnote-469)

He diversified in showing this point as if the traditions were something material to be put in a bag, a vessel, a dress and a garment, which he spread, while the lice were creeping on it, filled it with traditions and then joined it to his chest with all its lice![[470]](#footnote-470)

There was no need to mention more about him in order not to waste time nor to inflate the book.[[471]](#footnote-471)

We didn’t want to show everything about Abu Hurayra because Imam Sharafuddeen al-Musawi al-Aamily had done that in his wonderful book Abu Hurayra, in which he had shown and analysed all sides of Abu Hurayra’s life and psychology besides that he had discussed forty of Abu Hurayra’s fabricated traditions, which degraded Allah the Almighty, the prophets and the great saints.

Among those forty traditions was this tradition mentioned above.

We didn’t accept this tradition for many reasons; Abu Hurayra was not trusted, he exceeded in narrating traditions, most of his traditions were denied and before all he deviated from Imam Ali (a.s.) and fabricated lies that defamed him and his high position so how could we accept this very tradition narrated by one of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s enemies?

Would he, who said that Imam Ali (a.s.) had corrupted in Medina after the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to a degree that he deserved to be cursed, refrain from defaming Ali’s father in such a fabricated tradition?

The style of the tradition showed that as if Abu Hurayra had attended the dying of Abu Taalib and had seen and heard what happened between the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his uncle. But in fact when Abu Taalib died, Abu Hurayra was still worshipping his idols in Yemen; his birthplace and he hadn’t met the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) yet, then how could he narrated a tradition in a way that as if he himself had seen and heard what happened?

Abu Taalib died three years before the hijra whereas Abu Hurayra came to Hijaz from Yemen and became a Muslim in the seventh year after the hijra when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was in Khaybar.[[472]](#footnote-472) This showed that he had come to Hijaz ten years after the death of Abu Taalib then how could he attend the death of Abu Taalib to narrate that tradition?

Yes! It was Abu Hurayra’s world of imagination and dreams, which was unlimited world, and definitely not the world of reality!

A Look at the Verse ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet...’

After showing the defects of the tradition and the false series of narrators, it would be better to discuss the facts that would refute the tradition.

1. The tradition mentioned by al-Bukhari showed that these two Quranic verses were revealed when Abu Taalib was dying but when we referred to the two verses, we found that the first one of them had been revealed in Medina.[[473]](#footnote-473)

The all knew well that the sure of Bara’a (at-Tawba) was revealed in Medina after Islam had become so strong and prevailing.

The story of informing of the sura of Bara’a was famous for the all. It was the last thing that was revealed of the Holy Quran.[[474]](#footnote-474)

There was a long period between the revelations of these two verses. It was about ten years.

2. It was clear that the first verse, which was a part of sura of Bara’a, was revealed in Medina after the conquest of Mecca. So there was nearly eight years between the death of Abu Taalib and the revelation of this verse.

The meaning of the tradition showed the continuity of the praying of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) that Allah might forgive his uncle and that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t stop praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle along this period according to the Prophet’s saying (as they pretended in the tradition). “I will pray Allah to forgive you as long as I am not forbidden from it.”

Praying for forgiving Abu Taalib (according to their tradition) continued by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and didn’t stop except by the revelation of this verse: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives, after it has become clear to them that they are inmates of the flaming fire’.

How was it possible for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle along the period since the death of his uncle until the revelation of this verse -as they confessed- whereas many verses were revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) during this period forbidding the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the believers from being loving and kind to the polytheists and from praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive them or from obeying the enemies of Allah (s.w.t.) before the revelation of this verse in a long time?

We mentioned some verses in a previous chapter but we mention some of them here too:

a. You shall not find a people who believe in Allah and the latter day befriending those who act in opposition to Allah and His Messenger, even though they were their (own) fathers, or their sons, or their brothers ...’[[475]](#footnote-475)

This verse, which was a part of the sura of al-Mujadila, was revealed in Medina years before the revelation of Bara’a. Seven suras were revealed before the sura of Bara’a.[[476]](#footnote-476) Also it was said that it was revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) during the day of the battle of Badr[[477]](#footnote-477) in the second year of hijra.

Also it was said that it was revealed during the battle of Uhud[[478]](#footnote-478) in the third year of hijra.

Some said that this sura or some verses of it were revealed in Mecca.[[479]](#footnote-479)

According to the all sayings, the revelation of the sura of al-Mujadila was, no doubt, many years before the sura of Bara’a.

b. ‘O you who believe! do not take the unbelievers for friends rather than the believers; do you desire that you should give to Allah a manifest proof against yourselves?’[[480]](#footnote-480)

An-Nahhass said that this verse was revealed in Mecca. Also it was said that it was revealed at the hijra.[[481]](#footnote-481)

Some said that it was revealed in Medina depending upon the saying of Aaesha: “The sura of an-Nisa’ was revealed when I was with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) (his wife).”[[482]](#footnote-482)

So its revelation was in the first years of hijra.[[483]](#footnote-483)

Any how the sura of an-Nisa’ was revealed before the sura of Bara’a. There were twenty-one suras between them.[[484]](#footnote-484)

c. ‘Those who take the unbelievers for guardians rather than believers, Do they seek honour from them? Then surely all honour is for Allah.’[[485]](#footnote-485)

This verse was a part of sura of an-Nisa’, which was revealed before the sura of Bara’a.

d. ‘Let not the believers take the unbelievers for friends rather than believers; and whoever does this, he shall have nothing of (the guardianship of) Allah, but you should guard yourselves against them, guarding carefully.’[[486]](#footnote-486)

This verse was one of the first verses in the beginning of the sura of Aal Imran. The beginning of the sura, until the eightieth verse or some more, was revealed on the day when the delegation of Najran[[487]](#footnote-487) came to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in the first years of hijra.[[488]](#footnote-488)

It was mentioned that this verse was revealed about Obada bin as-Samit on the day (battle) of al-Ahzab in the fifth year of hijra.[[489]](#footnote-489)

Any how the sura of Al Imran was revealed before the sura of Bara’a and there were twenty-four suras between them.[[490]](#footnote-490)

e. ‘It is alike to them whether you beg forgiveness for them or do not beg forgiveness for them; Allah will never forgive them.’**[[491]](#footnote-491)**

The sura of al-Munafiqoon, which this verse was a part of, was revealed in the year when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his army fought against the people of al-Mustalaq. It was the sixth year of hijra and it was definitely before the sura of Bara’a.[[492]](#footnote-492)

There were many other verses forbidding from supporting the polytheists, from praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive them and from being loving and kind to them.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) kept on praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle and this was the utmost support and being loving and kind to him. Even the false tradition showed that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) kept on that and he didn’t stop except when this forbidding verse was revealed as the tradition pretended.

Could we -the Muslims- ascribe to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) a doing that his God, Who had sent him to guide the people, had forbidden him from?

Was it possible for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to beg forgiveness for his uncle if he was polytheists whereas there were many verses forbidding him from that? Did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) not pay any attention to those verses or he refused to obey Allah (s.w.t.) until this verse of the sura of Bara’a was revealed to him?

This sura itself had many other forbidding verses but why didn’t the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) obey Allah (s.w.t.) except when this special verse was revealed to him? O Allah! Forgive us!

We didn’t know how to justify the continuous praying of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for forgiving his uncle while Almighty Allah every time revealed to him a verse ordering him to cut every relation with the polytheists!

What raving it was! Was that possible to be ascribed to the Prophet of guidance and mercifulness?

It was not but defaming the sanctity of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), violating his high position and causing harm to him.

O Allah! We seek Your protection from causing any harm to Your Messenger in order not to be liable to Your wrath and punishment as You threatened whoever would harm a hair of him according to the verses and the traditions!

3. We found many traditions and sayings that contradicted these traditions, which talked about why this verse was revealed.

We quote here some of them:

a. Imam Ali (a.s.) said: “I heard someone praying Allah to forgive his parents whereas they were polytheists. I said to him: “Do you beg forgiveness for your parents whereas they were polytheists?” He said: “Didn’t Abraham pray Allah to forgive his father?” I mentioned that to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and then the following verses were revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives, after it has become clear to them that they are inmates of the flaming fire. And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire was only owing to a promise which he had made to him; but when it became clear to him that he was an enemy of Allah, he declared himself to be clear of him; most surely Ibrahim was very tender-hearted forbearing.’[[493]](#footnote-493)

This showed that forbidding begging forgiveness for the polytheists was famous among the Muslims; otherwise Imam Ali (a.s.) wouldn’t object to that man, who prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his polytheist parents. Imam Ali (a.s.) wouldn’t deny that if he was not certain that there was a divine order.

The objection of Imam Ali (a.s.) against this man didn’t agree with begging forgiveness by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for his uncle if he was polytheist as it was pretended! And if it was so, the man would answer Imam Ali (a.s.) with another answer and would justify his doing by saying that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) prayed Allah to forgive his polytheist uncle, for example!

But the man justified his doing by saying that Abraham prayed Almighty Allah to forgive his father and then the verse was revealed to explain why Abraham had begged forgiveness for his father.

When Prophet Abraham (a.s.) prayed Allah to forgive his father[[494]](#footnote-494) while he was still alive, he hoped that his father might be guided and be faithful but when Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle after his death that because his uncle was faithful. It wouldn’t be justified that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hoped that his uncle might be guided and be faithful because his uncle was no longer alive.

Zayni Dahlan said about this tradition of Imam Ali (a.s.): The tradition was true because we found a true tradition narrated by ibn Abbas confirming this tradition. Ibn Abbas said: The Muslims used to pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive their parents until this verse was revealed. When this verse was revealed, they stopped begging forgiveness for their dead parents but they weren’t forbidden from begging forgiveness for their live parents until they died.

Then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed: ‘And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire was only owing to a promise which he had made to him’. It meant that he asked for forgiveness for his father as long as he was alive but when he died, Abraham (a.s.) stopped begging forgiveness for him.”

This was true evidence and doing according to it would be more correct. It showed that the verse concerned those, who prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive their polytheist parents and not concerned Abu Taalib.”[[495]](#footnote-495)

b. The Muslims asked the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “Do we pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive our parents, who died in the pre-Islamic time?” Then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed this verse and showed that neither a Prophet nor a believer should pray for an unbeliever or beg forgiveness for him/her.[[496]](#footnote-496)

c. The believers said: “Don’t we pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive our parents whereas Abraham has prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his unbelieving father?”

Then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed this verse: ‘And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire was only owing to a promise which he had made to him.’[[497]](#footnote-497)

d. When the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came back from the battle of Tabook, he did the minor Hajj and then visited his mother’s tomb. He asked Almighty Allah to permit him to beg forgiveness for her and prayed Him to permit him to intercede for her in the Day of Resurrection but Allah (s.w.t.) didn’t permit him and then the verse was revealed.[[498]](#footnote-498)

e. When the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came to Mecca, he visited his mother’s tomb. He remained beside his mother’s tomb until the sun became hot hoping that Allah (s.w.t.) might permit him to beg forgiveness for her then Almighty Allah revealed these two verses.[[499]](#footnote-499)

f. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) visited his mother’s tomb. He cried and made the others around him cry. He said: “I asked my God’s permission to beg forgiveness for her but He didn’t permit me but I asked His permission to visit her tomb and He permitted me. Visit the tombs because they remind of the afterlife!”[[500]](#footnote-500)

This tradition was narrated by Abu Hurayra too. It permitted visiting the tombs and crying for the dead whereas those, who trusted in Abu Hurayra’s traditions blindly, criticized severely these two points and whoever believed in them.

g. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) passed by his mother’s tomb in the year of al-Hudaybiyya.[[501]](#footnote-501) He asked his God’s permission to visit the tomb. Allah permitted him. He visited the tomb, repaired it and stayed beside it for some time. Then he asked his God’s permission to beg forgiveness for his mother but Allah (s.w.t.) didn’t permit him. He left the tomb crying and feeling sorrowful. The Muslims cried with him and became sorrowful because of his sorrowfulness.[[502]](#footnote-502)

h. Ibn Mas’ood said: “One day the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) visited the graves. He sat beside a tomb. He talked to the tomb for a long time and then he cried. I cried for his crying. He said: “The tomb that I sat beside was my mother’s tomb. I asked my God’s permission to pray for her but He didn’t permit me and then He revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives....’[[503]](#footnote-503)

i. Burayda said: “Once I was with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when he stopped in Asfan where he saw his mother’s tomb. He made wudhu[[504]](#footnote-504) and offered prayer then he cried and said: I asked my God’s permission to pray for my mother but I was forbidden from doing that then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe... etc.’[[505]](#footnote-505)

j. Az-Zamakhshari mentioned that this verse was revealed about Abu Taalib and then he said: “... and it was said: when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) conquered Mecca, he asked that which of his parents was later in dying. It was said to him: Your mother Aamena. So he visited her tomb in al-Abwa’ then he stood up sighing and said: I asked my God’s permission to visit my mother’s tomb and He permitted me but when I asked permission to beg forgiveness for her I was forbidden then this verse was revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe ...’ etc. This is more correct because the death of Abu Taalib was before the hijra and these verses were the last verses of the Holy Quran that were revealed in Medina.”[[506]](#footnote-506)

k. Al-Qastalani said: “It was proved that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had visited his mother’s tomb when he had performed the minor Hajj. He asked his God’s permission to beg forgiveness for her but Allah (s.w.t.) revealed to him this verse. This was mentioned by al-Hakim and ibn Abu Hatim from ibn Mass’ood and by at-Tabarani from ibn Abbas. This showed that the verse was revealed a long time after the death of Abu Taalib and the revelation of a verse wouldn’t be repeated.”[[507]](#footnote-507)

The thought of al-Qastalani here contradicted the thought of as-Suyooti in al-Itqan, who tried to reconcile between the fabricated traditions, some of which defamed Abu Taalib and some defamed the Prophet’s mother, so he justified that by saying that the revelation of a certain verse might be repeated in spite of that the revelation of a certain verse couldn’t be repeated (that the same verse couldn’t be revealed twice).

l. Some of the Prophet’s companions said: “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Some of our fathers used to be good to their neighbours, helped their relatives, freed the captives and carried out their promises. Don’t we pray Allah to forgive them?” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “By Allah, I will beg forgiveness for his father. So Allah (s.w.t.) revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe ...’ etc. Then Allah justified the praying of Abraham for his father by saying: ‘And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire was only owing to a promise which he had made to him; but when it became clear to him that he was an enemy of Allah, he declared himself to be clear of him’.[[508]](#footnote-508)

m. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wanted to beg forgiveness for his father but Allah forbade him from that by saying: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe ...’ etc. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said that Abraham had begged forgiveness for his father then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed: ‘And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire ...’ etc.[[509]](#footnote-509)

n. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) entered Mecca in the year of al-Fath (the conquest) victoriously. While he was in some place of Mecca, he saw a tomb. He sat beside it and asked Almighty Allah’s permission to beg forgiveness for the one in the tomb but he was not permitted. He left the tomb sorrowfully. He cried and the people began to cry. There were no crying people more than them in that day.[[510]](#footnote-510)

Taha Husain commented after this tradition by saying: “The narrators were confused about this tomb. They thought that it was the Prophet’s mother’s tomb whereas her tomb was in al-Abwa’. It might be the tomb of the Prophet’s grandfather, the sheikh.”[[511]](#footnote-511) He meant Abdul Muttalib.

I didn’t know what the value of the world “might” was while we were talking about an important historical event having its great value whether in the scales of deeds or men!

We knew Taha Husain well. He always doubted about every thing. He might deny the light of the sun easily by saying: The sun may be not shining!

But to change his doubt so suddenly to a degree that he proved the unknown and ascribed it to someone, who was free from it, would be strange of him indeed!

It would be better to him, according to his suspecting principle, to refute the pretended matter and to deny the confused case of the tomb from the beginning because the reality would be on his side!

With the same easiness that showed indifference towards the reality he sent his word, which had no evidence and was not free from the very confusion he accused the historical with.

He said: “He (the Prophet) invited his uncle and insisted upon him to be a Muslim and the man (Abu Taalib) was about to accept but the fanaticism of the pre-Islamic paganism prevented him. When he died, his nephew said: “I will pray Almighty Allah to forgive you” but the Holy Quran blamed him about that so severely!”[[512]](#footnote-512)

We didn’t care for his attempt to defame the Prophet’s uncle and protector, who “defended his (the Prophet’s) religion against Quraysh” as Taha Husain himself said[[513]](#footnote-513) but what bothered us was his unruly rush without any prudence until he described the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) of being liable to the severe blame of the Holy Quran.

How would the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) be blamed severely for inviting and insisting upon his uncle, who had protected him and defended him and his religion, to be a Muslim?

Wasn’t the task of the mission to invite people and to insist upon them to believe in it?

Didn’t the Holy Quran itself order the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to warn his near relatives in the dawn of the mission before warning the public?

Then how would the Holy Quran blame the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for carrying out the orders of the Holy Quran itself?

Did the Holy Quran become confused too as the matter of that pretended tomb when the historical became confused about it and then Dr. Taha Husain tried to show them the truth when he said that it was the tomb of Abdul Muttalib?

He wasn’t satisfied with making the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) liable to severe blame of Holy Quran only, but also he considered him as one of the ordinary Muslims, who were blamed by the Holy Quran for a violating doing.

He said: “Did you see firmer and stricter description of justice without leniency in a situation that didn’t accept any leniency than this verse, in which the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the Muslims were blamed when they prayed Allah to forgive those, who didn’t deserve forgiveness: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives...’.”[[514]](#footnote-514)

This showed us how Taha Husain was confused like the other historians and that he didn’t get out of the darkness of suspicions and doubts. Using “perhaps” and “may” wouldn’t change the truth.

We said that we didn’t care much for the accusation Taha Husain had ascribed to the Prophet’s uncle, who was the defender of Islam. This book was written to refute such false accusations, one of which was this weak accusation, which had no evidence but it was just a dot among those black lines written against Abu Taalib.

o. At-Tabari said: “Some others said: Asking for forgiveness in this subject means prayer.” Then he mentioned a tradition narrated by al-Muthanna from Ata’ bin Rabah saying: “I didn’t give up praying for any one of the Muslims even if it was an Abyssinian woman pregnant by adultery because I didn’t hear that Allah had forbidden praying except for the polytheists. Almighty Allah said: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives...’.”[[515]](#footnote-515)

You saw that there were some people, who interpreted begging forgiveness as the prayer for the dead. Abu Taalib and Khadeeja had died before the prayer for the dead was legislated.

The prayer for the dead would begin as soon as a human being died. So did Allah forbid the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) from praying for his uncle whereas nearly ten years had passed since the death of his uncle?

Then how would this thought agree with the fabrication saying that this verse concerned Abu Taalib or the Prophet’s mother or father?

p. Imam Ali (a.s.) said: “I told the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for the death of Abu Taalib. He cried and said: “Go to wash (make ghusl[[516]](#footnote-516) for) him, enshroud him and bury him. May Allah forgive him and have mercy upon him!” I did. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) prayed Allah to forgive his uncle for days and he didn’t get out of his house until Gabriel (a.s.) came to him with this verse: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives...’.”[[517]](#footnote-517)

You saw according to this thought, which was formed according to the political fancy, that this verse was revealed in the year when Abu Taalib died if we didn’t say in the month or in the week, in which Abu Taalib died for there was the word “days” whereas the revelation of the sura, which this verse was a part of, was the last thing of the Holy Quran that had been revealed and it was, at least, ten years after the death of Abu Taalib.

q. When Abu Taalib died, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Prophet Abraham (a.s.) begged forgiveness for my uncle.” Allah revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives...’. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) became sad. Then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed to him: ‘And Ibrahim asking forgiveness for his sire was only owing to a promise which he had made to him; but when it became clear to him that he was an enemy of Allah, he declared himself to be clear of him’.[[518]](#footnote-518)

According to this tradition the verse were revealed when the Prophet’s uncle died.

r. When Abu Taalib (a.s.) died, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “May Almighty Allah have mercy upon you and forgive you! I will pray Allah to forgive you until Allah forbids me from it.” Then the Muslims began to pray Allah to forgive their polytheist dead’s; therefore Allah (s.w.t.) revealed: ‘It is not (fit) for the Prophet and those who believe that they should ask forgiveness for the polytheists, even though they should be near relatives ...’.[[519]](#footnote-519)

These were eighteen so-called traditions talking about the reason of the revelation of this verse.

We didn’t want to discuss them or to put them under the hammer of criticism because much of them had nothing to do with the subject of the book besides that we didn’t trust in everything they had.

But we quoted them to show that there were many contradicted sayings and thoughts about the revelation of the verse or in fact to show the distortion of the real reason of the revelation of this verse.

The first thing that drew the attention to uncover the ignorance of the fabricators was that the fabricators had ascribed contradicted sayings to Ali and ibn Abbas about this verse at the same time whereas the true traditions of Imam Ali (a.s.) and ibn Abbas about Abu Taalib (a.s.) contradicted all these fabricated traditions.

So what was the real reason behind this contradiction? Which one would we depend upon and which one would we brush aside?

One time they said that the verse concerned the Prophet’s uncle, another time his father and a third time his mother!

But the reality showed us that the accusation reached the Prophet’s father and mother as a consequence of what was ascribed to his uncle in order to firm the plot against Abu Taalib!

All those traditions agreed upon one thing although they were different in their points of view and aims. They agreed upon that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) prayed Allah to forgive some polytheists, to whom Allah had forbidden him from being loving and kind or begging forgiveness in many occasions and by much many Quranic verses, and that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t give up disobeying Allah (s.w.t.) until this special verse was revealed to him!!!

Consequently these traditions sloped towards one thing; violating the sanctity of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the sanctity of the divine mission! Besides that it caused harms to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) whether via his uncle, father or mother!

The reality proved the faithfulness of all the fathers and mothers of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) until they reached the first faithful; Adam (a.s.).

Therefore al-Halabi became confused when he mentioned some of these fabricated and distorted traditions. He thought that they must be corrected. He tried his best but he didn’t find any way save to put aside the fire from Abdullah, the Prophet’s father, and throw it upon Abu Taalib because among the false traditions there was this tradition:

Some one asked the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “Where is my father?” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said (and definitely he had never said): “My father and your father are in Hell!!!”[[520]](#footnote-520)

After walking in a zigzag way where al-Halabi accused whomever he liked and however he liked in order to justify this false tradition, he thought that he reached the shore of safety when he said: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t mean but his uncle when saying (my father).”[[521]](#footnote-521)

Thus al-Halabi saved from Hell whomever he liked and throw in it whomever he liked!

The least thing we could say about these traditions that they were contradicted and this contradiction would be enough evidence to deprive them of trust and regard.

We found such contradiction even in the same tradition fabricated against Abu Taalib, Aamena[[522]](#footnote-522) or Abdullah. With one look at any tradition of them, the reader would recognize their falseness clearly.

These fabricated traditions, besides their contradiction and untrue or weak series of narrators that made them vain, were refuted by clear irrefutable evidences like the Holy Quran, which proved the purity of the Prophet’s lineage and the purity of the Prophet’s progeny too.[[523]](#footnote-523) No uncleanness was worse than unbelief and polytheism. Certainly ascribing unbelief or polytheism to the Prophet’s parents or uncle would hurt the sanctity of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and would consider him as disobedient in loving and praying for faithful and polytheist persons whereas Allah (s.w.t.) had forbidden him from that!

4. The verse, whose meaning and occasion were distorted, had a meaning of negation and not prohibition. The verse showed that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t pray Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive the polytheists. Neither did the Muslims, who followed his principles. The verse denied begging unfaithful, and not prohibited him from that because he was infallible from committing any mistake.

So anyone, whom the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive, must be a faithful and we were not to doubt about that a bit as long as we believed in the Prophet and his infallibility and believed that he wouldn’t do but rightful things.

The verse did never show that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) used to beg forgiveness for the polytheists and then Allah (s.w.t.) prohibited him from that. Interpreting the verse in this way would defame the sanctity of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the position of the prophecy especially that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had received many verses forbidding him from doing that a long time before the revelation of this certain verse.

We found in this verse the secret behind begging forgiveness by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for his uncle. There were many people, who didn’t know about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib because he used to conceal it and when they saw the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) begging forgiveness for his uncle, they thought that it was permissible to pray Allah to forgive their polytheist relatives, hence Allah (s.w.t.) might reveal this verse to say to the Muslims that this thing was not permissible and when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) begged forgiveness for his uncle that definitely his uncle was not polytheist so the Muslims were not to beg forgiveness for their polytheist parents. After that the verse explained the situation of Prophet Abraham (a.s.) towards his father.

There was a difference between begging forgiveness for a live person and for a dead person as we referred to previously.

The verse showed that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), when begging forgiveness for his uncle or others, didn’t beg forgiveness for a polytheist and so his begging forgiveness for someone would be evidence proving the faithfulness of that one.

The sacred position of the prophecy and the sanctity of the mission prevented the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) from praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive a polytheist or from committing what Allah (s.w.t.) had forbidden him from or doing what might discontent Allah (s.w.t.).

Many people knew that when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his uncle that was because his uncle was faithful so they didn’t use that as an excuse to justify their begging forgiveness for their polytheist fathers.

We found that when we mentioned the conversation between Imam Ali (a.s.) and that man, who prayed Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive his polytheist parents. The man justified his doing according to the story of Abraham.

5. Some ones mentioned a complement with the tradition, which we quoted from al-Bukhari and Muslim. They said: “When Abu Taalib was dying, al-Abbas looked at him and saw him moving his lips. He listened to him carefully and said (al-Abbas said): “O my nephew! He said the word that you asked him to say.”[[524]](#footnote-524)

This was a witness by al-Abbas showing that the last thing Abu Taalib had said before dying was the shahada that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had asked him for as the tradition said.

Those, who thought that the tradition was true, had to believe in all of the tradition or to throw all of it aside.

They didn’t have to choose what agreed with their fancies and to leave what objected their fancies.

6. If we lowered the curtain upon the confession of Abu Taalib, his sayings and doings, which showed his faith clearly, if we forgot his will before the people of Quraysh when he was dying and if we ignored the Prophet’s praying Allah (s.w.t.) to forgive him, his witnesses, his loving and loyalty to him, the witnesses of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) and the witnesses of the companions like Abu Bakr, Abu Zarr and ibn Abbas ... if we left all these aside and submitted to this tradition – after it was refuted by clear evidences – then the very saying of Abu Taalib “on the religion of the Abdul Muttalib” would be a certain evidence proving his faithfulness.

What was this religion of Abdul Muttalib?

Wasn’t it the religion of Prophet Abraham (a.s.)?

Wasn’t Abdul Muttalib on the religion of Allah that He had chosen when He had sent Abraham as his Messenger?

Didn’t Abdul Muttalib believe in the One and Only God, the Day of Punishment and in sending his grandson to spread the mission of his God? Didn’t Abdul Muttalib wish, when he was dying, to remain alive until he would witness the spread of the light and the shining of the sun of his great grandson?

But this was just some ooze that was thrown upon Abu Taalib and it hit the Prophet’s mother Aamena one time, his father Abdullah another time and his grandfather Abdul Muttalib a third time.

In fact it was the ooze that was thrown upon Ali (a.s.) to defame his high position because “the low would envy whoever was higher than them” and consequently they threw some of that ooze upon his father thinking that they might defeat Ali (a.s.) by defaming his father and hence no one of these great men was safe from this harm even the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) himself as long as the end would justify the means according to the account of the enemies of the rightness.

Proving the faithfulness of Abdul Muttalib didn’t concern our subject although his faithfulness didn’t need to be proved. We mentioned the evidences of his faithfulness in a previous chapter in this book.

There were many detailed books about this subject. It was mentioned that as-Suyooti had written six books about the faithfulness of Prophet Muhammad’s father.[[525]](#footnote-525)

Abu Taalib (a.s.) said “on the religion of Abdul Muttalib” in that tradition – if the tradition was real – to mystify the truth before the people of Quraysh surrounding him. He used this policy to be free in serving the mission and the Prophet of Islam. If he didn’t do so, he wouldn’t be able to perform the great deeds he had performed or to defend the Prophet and his mission.

A Look at the Verse ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love...’

As for the verse: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases**’**[[526]](#footnote-526), we showed the reasons behind distorting the meaning of this verse and saying that it concerned Abu Taalib and we uncovered the secrets behind fabricating the tradition.

Although the fabricated tradition, which distorted the meaning of the Holy Quranic verse, was refuted, we thought that we had to talk about distorting this verse in some points.

1. There were some people, who fabricated traditions about this verse, other than Saeed bin al-Musayyab and Abu Hurayra that we just refuted them and their series of narrators. We wanted here to discuss two other traditions concerning the same verse and to discuss their narrators.

a. Abul Sahl as-Sariy bin Sahl from Abdul Quddoos ad-Damashqi from Abu Saaleh that ibn Abbas said: “The verse ‘Surely you guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’ was revealed about Abu Taalib, the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) insisted upon him to be a Muslim but he refused, so Allah revealed this verse.”[[527]](#footnote-527)

Az-Zahabi said about as-Sariy: “Ibn Adi considered him as weak and said that he pirated traditions and ibn Kharash considered him as a liar.” Then he mentioned some of his traditions and said before them: “...and among his disasters (wonders or oddities)... and among his afflictions ...!”[[528]](#footnote-528)

Al-Ameeny considered him as one of the liars according to many historians.[[529]](#footnote-529)

As for Abdul Quddoos ad-Damashqi, Abdur Razzaq said: “I haven’t seen Ibnul Mubarak ascribing the word “liar” openly except to Abdul Quddoos.” Al-Fallaas said: “They (the historians) agreed upon leaving his traditions aside.” An-Nesaaee said: “He was not trusty.” Ibn Adi said: “His traditions were denied whether in their series of narrators or their text.”[[530]](#footnote-530)

Ismael bin Ayyash said: “I don’t witness against one of being a liar except against Abdul Quddoos.”[[531]](#footnote-531)

Abdullah bin al-Mubarak said: “Being a highwayman is better to me than to narrate a tradition from Abdul Quddoos ash-Shami.”[[532]](#footnote-532)

As for Abu Saaleh We didn’t know who he was!

Finally ascribing the tradition to ibn Abbas uncovered the plot and removed the cover from above the lie.

Ibn Abbas was born in the She’b when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the Hashemites were blockaded there three years before the hijra;[[533]](#footnote-533) the same year, in which Abu Taalib died, so how could ibn Abbas see what happened to narrate such a tradition?

Ibn Abbas was free from that! We saw how he answered when he was asked about the faithfulness of Abu Taalib. It was mentioned in the previous chapter under the title (The Sayings of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.)).

b. Then the two liars; as-Sariy and Abdul Quddoos ascribed the fabricated tradition to ibn Umar.[[534]](#footnote-534) Abdullah bin Umar was born in the third year of the prophetic mission[[535]](#footnote-535) so he was about seven years old when Abu Taalib died. It was not easy for him in this age to attend or to describe the death of Abu Taalib and it was not possible to depend upon his tradition in this age if it was supposed that he had attended the event.

No one other than these two liars, who fabricated the tradition and ascribed it to ibn Abbas one time and to ibn Umar the other time, had mentioned this false tradition.

2. As for the verse itself, we found it in the middle between two verses: ‘And when they hear idle talk they turn aside from it and say: We shall have our deeds and you shall have your deeds; peace be upon you, we do not desire the ignorant. Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases, and He knows best the followers of the right way. And they say: If we follow the guidance with you, we shall be carried off from our country. What! Have We not! Settled them in a safe, sacred territory to which fruits of every kind shall be drawn? – a sustenance from Us; but most of them do not know.’[[536]](#footnote-536)

The first verse concerned the believers. It described their deeds.

The third verse described those, who didn’t believe fearing that they might be carried off from their country.

The distorted verse came in the middle between the two. It was addressed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). Allah said to him that guiding those people was not because of his love to them and that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was not the only guider of them; that they weren’t guided by hearing the Prophet’s invitation only, but also by the will and support of Allah.

This was not the only verse in the Holy Quran that had this meaning. There were many other verses such as:

1. ‘To make them walk in the right way is not incumbent on you, but Allah guides aright whom He pleases.’[[537]](#footnote-537)

2. ‘If you desire for their guidance, yet surely Allah does not guide him who leads astray.’[[538]](#footnote-538)

3. ‘Do you wish to guide him whom Allah has caused to err?’[[539]](#footnote-539)

4. ‘...but can you show the way to the blind though they will not see?’[[540]](#footnote-540)

5. ‘...the Allah makes whom He pleases err and He guides whom He pleases and He is the Mighty, the Wise.’[[541]](#footnote-541)

6. ‘Thus does Allah make err whom He pleases, and He guides whom He pleases.’[[542]](#footnote-542)

7. ‘Whomsoever Allah guides, he is the rightly guided one, and whomsoever He causes to err, you shall not find for him any friend to lead (him) aright.’[[543]](#footnote-543)

We were not to quote all the Holy Quranic verses having this meaning. There were many other than these mentioned above showing that the guidance would be by the support of Allah (s.w.t.) without depriving man of his will as long as man was willing to be guided. Therefore we found many other verses ascribing guidance of deviation to man himself like this verse: (therefore whoever goes aright, he goes aright only for the good of his own soul, and whoever goes astray, he goes astray only to the detriment of it.**)**[[544]](#footnote-544) and many other verses we didn’t want to quote.

3. It would be better to mention some traditions showing the reason of the revelation of the verse as it was thought by some persons:

a. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was stabbed with a bayonet in his cheek during the battle of Uhud. He fell down to the ground and then stood up. One of his teeth was broken and blood began to flow on his face. He said: “O Allah! Guide my people for they don’t know the truth!” Then Guide my people for they don’t know the truth!” Then Allah (s.w.t.) revealed this verse: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’.[[545]](#footnote-545)

b. It was said that some people showed their faithfulness in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and in Islam but when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) immigrated to Medina, they stayed in Mecca and showed unbelieving and reverting to their old beliefs. When the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his companions of the Muslims knew about that, they disagreed about it; some of them thought that they were still faithful and their showing unbelief was as taqiya because they were obliged to do that as Allah (s.w.t.) had said: (Let not the believers Take for friends or helpers Unbelievers rather than believers; if any do that, in nothing will there be help from Allah; except by way of precaution, that ye may Guard yourselves from them.)[[546]](#footnote-546) and others thought that they were unbelievers because they had to immigrate with the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) if they liked to save their faithfulness, therefore this group and that group came to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) where some of them liked that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) might considered them as believers for the kinship between these and those, who stayed in Mecca. But the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) put off the answer until the Archangel Gabriel revealed to him: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’.

It was said that the meaning of the verse was as: “You don’t determine, name or witness for whomsoever you like as faithful but it is Allah (s.w.t.), who does that if that person deserves to be called as faithful.”[[547]](#footnote-547)

c. It was said that this verse concerned al-Haaris bin Usmaan bin Nawfal bin Abd Manaf, whom the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wished and liked to be a Muslim.[[548]](#footnote-548)

Some of the interpreters said that the verse: ‘And they say: If we follow the guidance with you, we shall be carried off from our country’, which came after that verse, concerned al-Haaris.[[549]](#footnote-549)

And it was said that all the Muslims agreed upon that the second verse ‘And they say: If we follow the guidance with you...’ concerned al-Haaris.[[550]](#footnote-550)

d. The Messenger of Caesar brought a book to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) put the book in his lap then asked the man: “Where are you from?” The man said: “I am from Tanookh.” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to him: “Do you like to believe in the religion of your father Abraham?” The man said: “I am just a Messenger of some people and I am on their religion until I come back to them.” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) laughed, looked at his companions and said: ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’.[[551]](#footnote-551)

These were four sayings about the reason of the revelation of the verse. As we said before that a verse couldn’t be revealed to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) twice, so how was it distorted to concern Abu Taalib? It was that false tradition, which was fabricated by those, who neither refrained from lying nor respect the sanctity of a Muslim!

4. If we gave up and confessed that the verse was revealed about Abu Taalib, then it would be as a weapon in the hand of those, who defended Abu Taalib’s faithfulness, more than those, who accused him of being unfaithful because those who said that the verse ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’ concerned Abu Taalib, they confirmed that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) loved him for the verse meant: O Muhammad (s.a.w.a.)! You don’t guide whom you love but Allah guide him!

Definitely when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) loved someone, it would be sufficient evidence proving the faithfulness of that one because the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was forbidden from loving other than the faithful ones.

On the other side the verse would be evidence showing the high faithfulness of Abu Taalib because his faithfulness then would be out of the guidance of Allah (s.w.t.) and not out of the invitation of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) only. In fact this showed that there was a divine care towards Abu Taalib.

5. After all this, we didn’t find an improvised saying weaker than the saying of az-Zajjaj when pretending that: “The Muslims agreed upon that this verse had been revealed to concern Abu Taalib.”[[552]](#footnote-552)

When was this consensus of the Muslims? Yes! It was in the world of imagination and illusion!

Was there any evidence confirming this false pretense? Didn’t he fear the bad end of this disgraceful accusation or the responsibility of such a reckless decision?

The least thing in his saying was excluding Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) and their followers, the Shia, who refuted this false pretense, from among the Muslims and excluding another group of the Prophet’s companions, who acknowledged the truth and confessed the faithfulness of Abu Taalib, because if he didn’t exclude these people from the Muslims, his pretense about the consensus would by invalidated by a saying of any one of Ahlul Bayt (a.s.) or the companions.

The strange thing in this concern and how much wonders and strange things there were in this subject -was that his evidence about this illusory consensus was a false tradition mentioned without any series of narrators so that we could find whether the narrators were liars, fabricators or something else. But it was undoubtedly that the tradition was derived from those false traditions that were just refuted and he might add to them something of his imagination to make the little lie grow.

The contradiction was apparent in the tradition and the marks of fabrication were clear between the words ascribed to Abu Taalib: “O my nephew! I know that you are truthful but I hate to be said that Abu Taalib slackened when about to die” until he said: “... but I will die on the religion of the sheikhs Abdul Muttalib, Hashem and Abd Manaf.”[[553]](#footnote-553)

We didn’t want to repeat the argument about this fabricated tradition but we liked to refer to the saying of al-Qurtubi, who found the word “consensus” so big and he wanted to lessen something of its sharpness so he commented: “It is more correct to say: The most of the interpreters agreed upon that the verse was revealed concerning Abu Taalib.”[[554]](#footnote-554)

But he wasn’t saved from what az-Zajjaj had fallen into because the two pretences had no evidence nor they depended upon reason or reality.

The same was the saying of ibn Kaseer when saying about this verse: “It was proved in the two Sahihs[[555]](#footnote-555) that the verse was revealed about the Prophet’s uncle Abu Taalib, who protected the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), defended him, assisted him and loved him greatly; natural love and not (legal!) ...”[[556]](#footnote-556)

Then he cited those fabricated traditions, which were already refuted, and then he sent his decision indifferently without thinking of any responsibility or anything else. Would such commercial news be proved by false traditions fabricated by some of the liars?

And it was funny to quote the saying of at-Tarmithi about one of these traditions: “... it was accepted but odd. We didn’t know it except from the tradition of Yazeed bin Kaysaan.”[[557]](#footnote-557)

He acknowledged that it was odd and that it was only narrated by Yazeed, who was unreliable and no one depended upon his traditions as we knew before when we discussed the series of the narrators of the tradition in a previous chapter, so what made at-Tarmithi say that it was accepted?

Also we didn’t want to argue with ibn Kaseer about the love, which he liked to call a natural love and not a (legal) love, because this book was full of evidences proving that the great love Abu Taalib had towards Muhammad was towards Muhammad the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) not Muhammad the nephew!

Such raving was called interpretation one time, history another time and tradition a third time. Like that was the saying: “Abu Saeed bin Rafi’ said: “I asked ibn Umar: Was this verse ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’ concerning Abu Jahl and Abu Taalib?” He said: “Yes, it was.”[[558]](#footnote-558)

We didn’t find any series of narrators for this saying besides that it was just an opinion ascribed to ibn Umar.

But how did reason accept such opinion -even if the faithfulness of Abu Taalib was not proved- where it put Abu Jahl and Abu Taalib in one position?

How would the two; Abu Taalib in his love, protection and his devotedness in defending the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and Abu Jahl in his opposite situation, be equal for the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and in the same position where the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) loved for both of them to be guided and to be Muslims?

Who knows! Perhaps they thought that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) loved Abu Jahl more but Allah didn’t want that!

The values became under the feet, the qualities were lost and beauty and ugliness were equal ... defending the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and fighting him were the same! How bad it was!

This impudent attack was not against Abu Taalib; it was against the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) himself where he was considered as unjust and unfair in dealing with two contradicted situation in the same way, in which he wronged justice and violated rightness! O Allah, forgive us!

Interpreting the verse according to the personal opinions didn’t stop at a certain end. We found that every one interpreted it as he liked and according to his fancy and passion.

We found that someone divided the verse between Abu Taalib and al-Abbas when saying that the beginning of the verse concerned Abu Taalib whereas its end concerned al-Abbas.[[559]](#footnote-559) Between the death of Abu Taalib and the believing of al-Abbas in Islam there was a long period besides that al-Abbas became a Muslim years after the revelation of this verse.

We referred previously to our respected father’s saying that all the accusations ascribed to Abu Taalib were because he was the father of Ali, otherwise he wouldn’t be accused of anything if he was the father of anyone else than Ali; therefore defaming of Abu Taalib was just a means to defame his son Ali!

We found some of the distortion fabricated about the verse confirming this thought.

Mo’awiya asked Samra to distort a Holy Quranic verse against Ali and another verse in the interest of ibn Muljam (Ali’s killer) as we mentioned in the first chapter (At the Threshold). Besides that he wanted a verse to be distorted against Abu Taalib.

Someone said: “The verse ‘Surely you cannot guide whom you love, but Allah guides whom He pleases’ concerned Abu Taalib because the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) liked Abu Taalib to be a Muslim and so this verse was revealed. Meanwhile he disliked Wahshi (the killer of Hamza, the Prophet’s uncle) to be a Muslim then this verse was revealed ‘Say: O my servants! who have acted extravagantly against their own souls, do not despair of the mercy of Allah.’[[560]](#footnote-560) so Wahshi became a Muslim but Abu Taalib didn’t!”[[561]](#footnote-561)

In order to certify this silly saying they ascribed it to ibn Abbas to show us the extent of confusion they reached.

It was the just one of those opinions put to serve the obscene aims and the fabricator would never mind whomever or whatever it defamed or what values it destroyed!

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), according to this thought, contradicted Allah (s.w.t.). He liked what Allah (s.w.t.) disliked and disliked what Allah (s.w.t.) liked!

Allah glory be to Him, didn’t want Abu Taalib to be a Muslim! Perhaps there was an old enmity between them or perhaps the reason of that enmity was because that Abu Taalib had brought up the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), protected him, defended him and defended his mission and his followers of the believers!

But the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) liked Abu Taalib to be a Muslim as a kind of loyalty to him and so the two wills contradicted but then the stronger will, the will of Allah, won and Allah achieved his opponency against Abu Taalib by preventing him from being a Muslim!

As for Wahshi, also the two wills; of Allah and that of His Messenger, contradicted and at the end Wahshi became a Muslim!

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hated Wahshi, who had killed his uncle Hamza, and the hatred grew in his heart that he didn’t want him to be a Muslim but Allah, the Merciful, the Kind forgive the crime of Wahshi against Hamza, the hero of Islam, and didn’t pay any attention to His Messenger’s emotions. The result of the fight between the two wills made Wahshi a believer because it was the will of Allah!!!

Wouldn’t it be better for them to add to the great faithfulness and high virtues of Wahshi his decision to the wine, which he didn’t leave a minute until it mixed with his blood and that he couldn’t wake up from its effects until the last moment of his life, which was full of sins and crimes![[562]](#footnote-562)

What raving and silly speech those dotards uttered without knowing what they raved!

How did this verse concern Wahshi whereas it was general and it concerned all the Muslims? It was revealed in Mecca whereas Wahshi pretended to be a Muslim many years after the revelation of this verse.[[563]](#footnote-563)

Worse than Wahshi were those, who never cared for any responsibility and who followed the mirage and jumbled in the darkness!

## The Inheritance of Abu Taalib

Among the fabrications against Abu Taalib (a.s.) was the pretense that Ali (a.s.) and Ja’far hadn’t taken anything from the inheritance of their father because they were Muslims while their father was unbeliever.[[564]](#footnote-564)

We didn’t find the narrators of this lie in order to remove the cover from above this scandal and this disgrace!

Surely this lie was fabricated by someone, who was ignorant of the conditions of inheritance among the Muslims. Definitely that fabricator didn’t know more than the tradition of “There is no succession between the followers of two different religions.”

We believe in this tradition but it means that the unbeliever is not to inherit from the Muslim.

This prophetic tradition wouldn’t prevent a Muslim from inheriting from an unbeliever because Islam exalted the Muslim as it was confirmed by many prophetic traditions such as: “Islam is exalted and nothing is to be more exalted than it.”

Hence Islam didn’t permit an unbeliever man to marry a Muslim woman because she was loftier than him whereas some of the ulema permitted a Muslim man to marry a (kitabi)[[565]](#footnote-565) unbeliever woman in a continuous marriage. The Shia agreed upon the permission of marrying a kitabi unbeliever woman in temporary marriage as I knew.[[566]](#footnote-566)

a. Continuous and temporary marriage was permissible.

b. Both were not permissible at all.

c. Continuous marriage was not permissible but temporary marriage was permissible. Refer to Nasseem and Zawba’a pp. 228-230.

If we submitted to this fabrication and supposed that it was true, although it wasn’t, it wouldn’t be as evidence showing that Abu Taalib was unbeliever because Ali (a.s.) and Ja’far, who were Muslims, had the right to inherit their father even if he was unbeliever as the fabricators pretended. The Islamic law didn’t forbid that but the one, who fabricated this lie, was unaware of Islam and its laws.

### The Tradition of az-Zihzah[[567]](#footnote-567)

We would like to quote the different ways of the tradition as fabricated by the fabricators and then to discuss it.

1. Obaidullaah bin Umar al-Qawareeri, Muhammad bin Abu Bakr al-Maqdimi and Muhammad bin Abdul Malik al-Amawi said: Abu Owana told us from Abdul Malik bin Omayr from Abdullah bin al-Haaris bin Nawfal that al-Abbas bin Abdul Muttalib had said: “O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Did you benefit Abu Taalib with something? He protected and defended you. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: Yes! He is in a shallow place of Hell but without me, he will be in the lowest bottom of Hell.”[[568]](#footnote-568)

2. Ibn Abu Umar from Sufyan from Abdul Malik bin Omayr that Abdullah bin al-Haaris said: “I heard al-Abbas saying: “I said: O Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.)! Abu Taalib used to protect and support you. Did that benefit him? He said: Yes! I found him in a flood of Fire and I took him out to a shallow place (in Hell).”[[569]](#footnote-569)

3. Muhammad bin Hatim from Yahya bin Saeed from Sufyan ... etc. like the first on.[[570]](#footnote-570)

4. Abu Bakr bin Abu Shayba from Wakee’ from Sufyan ... like the first one.[[571]](#footnote-571)

5. Qotaiba bin Saeed from Lays from ibn al-Had from Abdullah bin Khabbab that Abu Saeed al-Khudri said: “Once Abu Taalib was mentioned near the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: My intercession may benefit him in the Day of Resurrection. He may be put in a shallow place of Fire reaching his heels and making his brain boil.”[[572]](#footnote-572)

6. Abu Bakr bin Abu Shayba from Affaan from Hammaad bin Salama from Saabit from Usmaan an-Nahdi that ibn Abbas said: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: The least tortured one among the people of Hell is Abu Taalib where he wears two shoes, from which his brain boils.”[[573]](#footnote-573)

7. Musaddad from Yahya from Sufyan from Abdul Malik from Abdullah bin al-Haaris said: “Al-Abbas bin Abdul Muttalib (a.r.) told us that he had said to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “With what did you benefit your uncle? He protected and defended you.” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “He is in a shallow place of Fire and without me; he would be in the lowest bottom of Hell.”[[574]](#footnote-574)

8. Abdullah bin Yusuf from al-Lays ... etc. like the fifth tradition.[[575]](#footnote-575)

9. Ibrahim bin Hamza from Abu Hazim and ad-Darawardi from Yazeed ... like the fifth tradition.[[576]](#footnote-576)

### The Narrators

Now we discuss the series of narrators of these traditions to see their positions and their weights in the scales of the men of Hadith.

### 1. The first tradition:

a. Obaidullaah al-Qawareeri: we didn’t find any mention of him in Mizanul I’tidal. We found one tradition in al-Ghadeer that Obaidullaah was one of the narrators but the author said about him: “Al-Bukhari mentioned only five traditions narrated by Obaidullaah al-Qawareeri and Muslim mentioned forty traditions. Ahmed bin Yahya heard from him one hundred thousand traditions. So what about this rubbish narrated by this man that al-Bukhari and Muslim didn’t quote from this man save a few traditions and brushed the rest aside? It was not possible that they hadn’t known the rest of his traditions.”[[577]](#footnote-577)

b. Muhammad bin Abu Bakr al-Maqdimi: we didn’t find any mention of him save Muhammad bin Abu Bakr only and it was said that he was unknown.[[578]](#footnote-578)

A false tradition was mentioned in al-Ghadeer and one of its narrators was Muhammad bin Abu Bakr al-Maqdimi.[[579]](#footnote-579)

c. Muhammad bin Abdul Malik al-Amawi: It was enough for him to be an Umayyad man to fabricate such a tradition or to narrate traditions like it against Abu Taalib.

If he was Muhammad bin Abdul Malik bin Marwan bin al-Hakam, it would be enough for us that his father was that Umayyad tyrant and his two grandfathers were cursed by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), who called them as the deviants.

Al-Hakam and his offspring were cursed by the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had expelled al-Hakam from Medina.

Marwan was but a leftover of the curse of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as Aaesha had said.

As for this Muhammad, Abu Dawood said about him: “He was not sane.”[[580]](#footnote-580)

d. Abu Owana: we couldn’t know who he was.

e. Abdul Malik bin Omayr: az-Zahabi said about him: “He became the judge of Kufa after ash-Shi’bi. He lived for a long time and so his memory became weak.”

Abu Hatim said about him: “He was not a good memorizer. His memory changed. Imam Ahmed said about him: “He was weak and often mistook.” Ibn Mo’een said: “His mind was muddled.”

Ibn Kharash said: “Shu’ba wasn’t satisfied with him.” Al-Kawsaj mentioned that Ahmed said: “He was very weak.” Ibn Habban said: “He concealed when narrating traditions.”[[581]](#footnote-581)

Among the oddities of this bad judge -and how many oddities the umma was afflicted with- was that he passed by Abdullah bin Baqtar after the tyrant Obaidullaah bin Ziyad had thrown him from above the palace to the ground. The victim was still alive but this merciful (!!!) judge finished him off with his dagger.[[582]](#footnote-582)

Here is another event about this judge, who was the example of the judges of that time. He gave his judgements according to his emotion and fancy!

Kulsoom bint[[583]](#footnote-583) Saree’ came to him, when he was the judge of Kufa, with a claim against her family. He unthoughtfully judged for her against her family. His judgement was suspected and doubted by people. The poet Huthayl bin Abdullah al-Ashjaee recited a poem about this event:

Waleed came to him with witnesses,

Confirming his right of property and the servants,

and Kulsoom came to him with her sweet talks,

Which recovered from illness and madness.

Waleed proved his right he was eloquent and disputatious.

But she had coquetry and black eyes.

She flirted and exposed her kohl.

She fascinated al-Qubtiy[[584]](#footnote-584) so he judged for her

with other than the judgement of Allah revealed in the Holy Quran.

If those in the palace knew his news,

they wouldn’t employ him in any job.

When he judged for women, he glanced furtively.

If a woman complained to him,

He coughed and hastened to judge for her.

He flashed his eyes and chewed his tongue,

that he saw everything as nothing save her.[[585]](#footnote-585)

2. The narrators of the second tradition:

a. The series of the narrators began as usual with this obscure name: ibn Abu Umar!

b. After that came Sufyan as-Thawri, who we talked about when we discussed the first tradition fabricated against Abu Taalib and we found that he was a liar.

3. As for the narrators of the third tradition, we already talked about them before; they were Muhammad bin Hatim, Yahya bin Saeed and Sufyan.

4. The narrators of the fourth tradition:

a. Abu Bakr bin Abu Shayba: Az-Zahabi considered this name as one of the unknown names.[[586]](#footnote-586)

b. We couldn’t know who Wakee’ was.

If he was Wakee’ bin aj-Jarrah, then ibn al-Medeeni said about him: “Wakee’ often mistook and if I narrated from him, it would be so odd. He often said: Ash-Shi’bi told us from Aaesha...![[587]](#footnote-587)

Ahmed bin Hanbal was asked: “If Wakee’ and Abdur Rahman bin Mehdi disagreed about something, who’s saying we would depend upon?” He said: “Abdur Rahman is more fit especially if Sufyan was there.” And this tradition was narrated by Wakee’ from Sufyan.

Az-Zahabi thought that he might complete the ring of criticism by saying about ibn al-Medeeni in his book at-Tahzeeb: “He had a little thing of Shiism.”

This tone of az-Zahabi was clear in expressing his abominable sectarianism. If he wanted to exaggerate in criticizing someone, he would ascribe him to Shiism, which was considered by him as worse than unbelief and blasphemy.

We wouldn’t argue with him about this but we wanted to show that he had contradicted himself. If this narrator was not trusty because of his Shiism then why did they depend upon his tradition? If he was really a Shia, this tradition wouldn’t be his because it would contradict his actual belief about Abu Taalib.

Any how it was not important for us whether he was a Shia or not. It was important for us that the man was untrusted and unreliable for those, who stuck to the tradition of az-Zihzah.

5. The narrators of the fifth tradition:

a. Qotaiba bin Saeed: Az-Zahabi said about him: “No one knew who he was!”[[588]](#footnote-588)

b. Al-Lays: there were many persons having this name. Most of them were either unknown or weak or whose traditions were denied or confused ... etc.

If he was al-Lays bin Saeed – as the author of Sheikhul Abtah said[[589]](#footnote-589) then Yahya bin Mo’een said about him: “He took traditions from the old men unthoughtfully and depended upon hearing from this and that. Annabatiy mentioned him in his commenting on the book al-Kamil as one of the weak narrators.

c. Yazeed bin Abdullah bin al-Had: Abu Abdullah al-Hadda’ mentioned him among those, who were accused of being unreliable.

Ibn Mo’een said about him: “He narrated fro every one.”[[590]](#footnote-590)

d. Abdullah bin Khabba: aj-Jawzajani said about him: “No one knew him.”[[591]](#footnote-591)

6. The narrators of the sixth tradition:

a. Abu Bakr bin Abu Shayba: we talked about him in the fourth tradition.

b. Affaan: who was he?!

He might be Affaan bin Muslim because he narrated from Hammaad bin Salama and this was mentioned by az-Zahabi when talking about a tradition of his.

It was this one, about whom ibn Adi said: “... by Allah, if he tried his best to narrate one correct tradition from Shu’ba, he couldn’t. He was slow and bad in memorizing and he was slow in perceiving.”[[592]](#footnote-592)

Abu Kaysama said: “We denied (tradition of) Affaan some days before his death.”[[593]](#footnote-593)

c. Hammaad bin Salama: Az-Zahabi said about him that he had illusions.

Ibn al-Medeeni said: “Yahya bin az-Zareer had ten thousand traditions from Hammaad.”

Amr bin Salama said: “I have written down more than ten thousand traditions from Hammaad bin Salama.”[[594]](#footnote-594)

Did you see this plentifulness of traditions; one said that he had ten thousand traditions and the other said that he had more than ten thousand?

It was said that it was not known that Hammaad had these traditions until he went to Abadan one day. He began to narrate these traditions. The sayer said: “As if I thought that a Devil came out of the sea and threw these traditions to him (Hammaad).”

Ibn az-Zahabi said: “I heard Abbad bin Shoaib saying: Hammaad didn’t memorize (traditions) and it was said that the traditions were inserted in his books. it was said that ibn Abul Awja’, who was Hammaad’s stepson, inserted traditions in his books.”[[595]](#footnote-595)

It was enough to refute the trustiness and reliability of this man as it was pretended by some ones that az-Zahabi itself, after praising and defending Hammaad, mentioned some of Hammaad’s traditions violating the exaltedness of Allah the Almighty. He had embodied the Exalted Creator in the ugliest way of embodiment! Glory be to Him, and highly exalted is He above what they ascribe to Him.

Hammaad narrated a tradition saying: “Saabit narrated that Anass had said: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) recited: ‘...but when his Lord manifested His glory to the mountains He made it crumble...**’**[[596]](#footnote-596) then He extended the end of His pinkie and hit His thumb then the mountain sank.”

Hameed at-Taweel said to Saabit: “Do you narrate such things?”

He hit Hameed on the chest and said: “Do want me to conceal what Anass and the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) have said?”[[597]](#footnote-597)

Hammaad also narrated a tradition that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “I saw my God! Curled, beardless and wearing a green garment ... young ... there was a curtain of pearls before Him. His feet and legs were in green ...!”[[598]](#footnote-598)

Az-Zahabi forgot his previous praise to Hammaad when he commented on such traditions by saying: “This is one of the most denied oddities of Hammaad bin Salama. It was just a vision of sleep if it was true.”[[599]](#footnote-599)

Then he said that ibn Adi had mentioned some of single-narrated traditions of Hammaad.

Also he mentioned that al-Bukhari had avoided Hammaad and hadn’t narrated any of his traditions.[[600]](#footnote-600)

d. Saabit: we didn’t know who he was!

There were many persons having this name; among them there were the liars, the weak, the unknown and those, whose traditions were denied.[[601]](#footnote-601) We didn’t know where his place would be among these categories.

He might be Saabit bin Abu Saabit, the brother of Habeeb bin Abu Saabit, who was the first one we talked about in discussing this distortion and fabrication against Abu Taalib. If it was him, so az-Zahabi considered him as unknown.[[602]](#footnote-602)

Of course it was him, from whom Hammaad bin Salama narrated traditions and it was enough evidence for us to brush him aside that he agreed with Hammaad in narrating the tradition that embodied Allah the Almighty.

Hence whoever dared to violate the exaltedness of Allah, would definitely not refrain from violating the sanctity of people.

e. Abu Usmaan an-Nahdi: he was unknown.[[603]](#footnote-603)

7. The narrators of the seventh tradition:

a. Musaddad: we couldn’t know who he was. There was no one with this name in Mizanul I’tidal save al-Musaddad bin Ali, who was not so careful about traditions[[604]](#footnote-604) but we didn’t know if he was the same one or another.

b. The rest of the series; Yahya, Sufyan and Abdul Malik. We talked about each of them and knew their situations.

8. The narrators of the eighth tradition:

a. Abdullah bin Yusuf: if he was Abdullah bin Yusuf at-Taneesiy as the author of Sheikhul Abtah mentioned, then he was considered by ibn Adi as one of the weak narrators[[605]](#footnote-605) but if he was Abdullah bin Suleiman bin Yousuf, who narrated traditions from al-Lays, then he was not reliable[[606]](#footnote-606) and was suspected.[[607]](#footnote-607) He narrated a tradition about the virtues but it was denied by at-Zahabi[[608]](#footnote-608) and it would be denied by every prudent one.

b. Thus the series of the narrators reached al-Lays and then to the last one of the series we mentioned in the fifth tradition.

9. The narrators of the ninth tradition:

a. Ibrahim bin Hamza: we didn’t find anything leading to know him.

b. Ibn Abu Hazim, whose name was Abdul Azeez; ibn Sayyid an-Nass considered him as not so firm in his traditions as it was mentioned by al-Aqeeli in his book about the weak narrators. It was said that he used to narrate from his father but the books he had were not of his father. It was said that the books of Suleiman bin Bilal became with him and that Suleiman didn’t know that he distorted them.

Al-Fallas said: “I haven’t found ibn Mehdi narrating even a single tradition from ibn Abu Hazim.”

Ahmed bin Hanbal said: “It was not known that he cared for traditions. It was said that he was weak except in his father’s traditions.”

Ibn al-Madeeni said: “Hatim bin Ismael often criticized him about some traditions, which he narrated from his father. Hatim said to me: I forbade him from that but he paid no attention.”[[609]](#footnote-609)

c. Az-Zaraward, whose name was Abdul Azeez bin Muhammad:[[610]](#footnote-610) Imam Ahmed said about him: “If he narrated out of his memory, he would imagine. He was nothing. When he narrated traditions, he told of false things.” Abu Hatim said: “No one depended upon him.” Abu Zar’a said: “He was a bad memorizer.”[[611]](#footnote-611)

d. Yazeed: we didn’t know who he was. If he was Yazeed bin Kaysaan, we knew him previously. He was not reliable and no one depended upon him.

### A Look at the Tradition

This round we did about the narrators of the tradition didn’t leave for us a bit of trust in them so that we might accept any tradition narrated by any of them.

We found in every series a group of liars, weak narrators, malicious men, unknown persons and those, whom we couldn’t find anything about.

If we found something unacceptable in one of the narrators of the tradition, we wouldn’t trust in the tradition at all, so how about it when all the members of the series were suspected and doubted especially when the tradition was about the faithfulness of the man, who supported and defended Islam?

There were other sides that made us not trust in this tradition and brush it aside even if its narrators were trusty ... so how would it be where the narrators were liars or unknown persons and the tradition was false?

Here we discuss the other sides that confirmed the invalidity of the tradition:

1. There was a contradiction in the text of the tradition that made the meaning different from one narration to another.

In some narration we found that the pretended answer of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was: “Yes, he is in a shallowness of Fire and without me (without my intercession) he will be in the lowest bottom of Hell.”

This showed that the intercession of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was immediate and that it actually occurred. This appeared clearer in the second way of the tradition: “Yes, I found him in the deepest bottom of fire and I took him out to shallowness.” We didn’t know why the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hadn’t completed his favor upon his uncle whereas he had the power to take him out of the lowest bottom of Hell to a shallow place! Why did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) leave his favor uncompleted?

Al-Mutanabbi, the poet, said:

I haven’t seen among the defects of people something

worse than a shortage in a favor of those who are able to

complete it.

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was the perfect ideal example of mankind and he was chosen by Almighty Allah to perfect the morals and nobilities and it was him, who had been educated by his God so perfectly! Would he then leave his favors uncompleted?

Some ways of the tradition said: “... my intercession may benefit him in the Day of Resurrection.” This wording just showed a kind of praying.

The linguists said that it had the meaning of “hoping” that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) hoped that the intercession might benefit his uncle. It might benefit him and it might not. If it was supposed that it would benefit, then it would be delayed until the Day of Resurrection!

Some other ways of the tradition said: “The least tortured one among the people of Hell is Abu Taalib where he wears two shoes, from which his brain boils.” This didn’t show that he was the least tortured one among the people of Hell because of an intercession that interceded for him or because that he deserved the least torture among the tortured in Hell.

How would it be possible for an unbeliever to be the least tortured one among the people of Hell?

Was unbelieving easier than disobedience or committing a sin to be said that this one would be tortured less than that one?

Then was that the least torment among the people of Hell? Did it have a thing of rest and comfort?

Was this torment easy where it would make “his brain” flow over his feet”?[[612]](#footnote-612)

This saying contradicted the other that was said by someone, who justified this torture by saying that Almighty Allah would concentrate the torture on Abu Taalib’s feet because he (Abu Taalib) had fixed them on his old religion and so the punishment would conform to the guilt.[[613]](#footnote-613)

If the torture would be concentrated upon his feet only, then why would his brain boil, melt and flow over his feet? Was his brain an eternal spring that wouldn’t be empty?

O Allah! We seek Your protection against this silliness and superstition!

2. How would the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intercede for his uncle, who was unfaithful – as they pretended – whereas he had been forbidden from less than this according to the Quranic verses, because intercession was much greater than being loving or kind to the unfaithful people?

What was the reason behind the Prophet’s intercession for his uncle if he was forbidden from doing that?

Was the reason that because his uncle had supported him and his mission?

Then what made his uncle do that? And what made the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) accept this support from an unfaithful man whereas the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) himself had said: “O Allah! Don’t make a dissolute or an unbeliever have a chance of getting my kindness”?

What made the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intercede for his uncle – if he was unfaithful – whereas there were many Quranic verses confirming that unfaithful people would be perpetuated in Hell for ever, wouldn’t get the mercy of Allah at all, their punishment wouldn’t be lessened and no intercession would benefit them?

Here are some of the verses:

a. ‘Abiding in it; their chastisement shall not be lightened nor shall they be given respite.’[[614]](#footnote-614)

b. ‘These are they who buy the life of this world for the hereafter, so their chastisement shall not be lightened nor shall they be helped.’[[615]](#footnote-615)

c. ‘And leave those who have taken their religion for a play and an idle sport, and whom this world’s life has deceived, and remind (them) thereby lest a soul should be given up to destruction for what it has earned; it shall not have besides Allah any guardian nor an intercessor, and if it should seek to give every compensation, it shall not be accepted from it; there are they who shall be given up to destruction for what they earned; they shall have a drink of boiling water and a painful chastisement because they disbelieved.’[[616]](#footnote-616)

d. ‘And when those who are unjust shall see the chastisement, it shall not be lightened for them, nor shall they be respited.’[[617]](#footnote-617)

e. ‘And (as for) those who disbelieve, for them is the fire of hell; it shall not be finished with them entirely so that they should die, nor shall the chastisement thereof be lightened to them; even thus do We retribute every ungrateful one.’[[618]](#footnote-618)

f. ‘And those who are in the fire shall say to the keepers of hell: Call upon you Lord that He may lighten to us one day of the punishment. They shall say: Did not your Messenger come to you with clear arguments? They shall say: Yea. They shall say: Then call. And the call of the unbelievers is only in error.’[[619]](#footnote-619)

g. ‘In gardens, they shall ask each other the guilty: What has brought you into hell? They shall say: What were not of those who prayed; and we used not to feed the poor; and we used to enter into vain discourse with those who entered into vain discourse and we used to call the day of judgement a lie; till death overtook us, so the intercession of intercessors shall not avail them.’[[620]](#footnote-620)

h. ‘And warn them of the day that draws near, when hearts shall rise up to the throats, grieving inwardly; the unjust shall not have any compassionate friend nor any intercessor who should be obeyed.’[[621]](#footnote-621)

i. There is a Prophetic tradition saying: “When the people of Paradise enter into Paradise and the people of Hell enter into Hell, a caller stands up between them calling: O people of Hell! No death is here. O people of Paradise! No death is here. It is eternality!”[[622]](#footnote-622)

j. Another tradition saying: “It is said to the people of Paradise: Eternality ... no death! And it is said to the people of Hell: O people of Hell! Eternality... no death!”[[623]](#footnote-623)

The mentioned above verses and prophetic traditions confirmed that the unbelievers would remain in the abasing torment for ever and that the torment wouldn’t be lightened for the unbelievers even for a moment because intercession would include them.

3. This tradition (of az-Zihzah) -besides the contradiction in its text and the contradiction with the Quranic verses, which denied interceding for the unbelievers, contradicted the tradition fabricated against Abu Taalib when he was dying; the tradition, which was discussed in details in the previous chapter of this book.

So the tradition of az-Zihzah and that of the dying of Abu Taalib were contradicted and they couldn’t be depended upon even if the narrators were reliable.

In spite of that, we found that some of the narrators of the tradition of the dying of Abu Taalib participated in narrating the tradition of az-Zihzah. The two traditions were contradicted whether in the text or in the meaning, so how did the narrators narrate two contradicted traditions?

Ibn Abu Umar, Muhammad bin Hatim and Yahya bin Saeed might forget, when narrating the next tradition, what they had fabricated in the previous one!

They forgot that a liar had to have a good share of memory lest he would be involved in what they had been involved in of such contradicted falsehood in order that their ill - will wouldn’t be uncovered so easily. But in any case, this would be the end of every falsehood and fabrication!

They mentioned in the tradition of the dying of Abu Taalib that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had asked his uncle to declare the shahada so that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would witness for him with it in the Day of Resurrection and then he would deserve intercession.[[624]](#footnote-624) they said that he hadn’t declared shahada.

According to their tradition, they considered declaring shahada as the condition for deserving intercession and so Abu Taalib wouldn’t deserve intercession without declaring shahada.

Therefore they didn’t say that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) interceded for his uncle but they said that he prayed Allah to forgive him until Allah forbade him from doing that and made him know that he mistook all that time when he begged forgiveness for his uncle in spite of that there were many verses revealed to him forbidding him from that.

Then they said that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had interceded immediately for his uncle without declaring shahada when saying: “Yes! I found him in the lowest bottom of Fire but I took him out to a shallow place.”

So how did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) interceded for his uncle, who hadn’t declared shahada, if intercession was conditioned on declaring shahada?

Had Abu Taalib declared shahada or he hadn’t?

If Abu Taalib hadn’t declared it as they said in the tradition of his dying, then how would the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intercede for him neither whereas the Holy Quranic verses had confirmed that intercession would never include the unbelievers nor would their torment be lightened?

But if he had declared shahada, then the meaning of the tradition of the dying wouldn’t limit lightening the torment just to take Abu Taalib out of the lowest bottom of Hell to a shallow place!

Was the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) so stingy to a degree that he wouldn’t intercede for the man, who had brought him up, protected him, supported him and defended him? Would he reward him for all that just by lightening some of his torment?

And what lightening of torment it was if his brain would melt and flow over his feet!!

If Abu Taalib had declared shahada and the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) didn’t think that he had deserve intercession except after announcing shahada, then this tradition, which limited intercession just to lightening the torment, would contradict many other traditions mentioned in the books of Hadith (Sihah).[[625]](#footnote-625) The traditions said that whoever declared shahada would be in Paradise and not in Hell: “He, who died and knew that there was no god but Allah, would enter into Paradise.”[[626]](#footnote-626) And: “No one saying that there is no god but Allah will enter into Hell.”[[627]](#footnote-627)

Besides that the tradition of az-Zihzah itself in talking about the immediate intercession contradicted other traditions concerning the subject of intercessions:

Here are some of these traditions:

“It was said to me: Ask for anything because every Prophet had asked for something! I delayed my request until the Day of Resurrection to be for anyone of you witnessing that there is no god but Allah.”[[628]](#footnote-628)

The tradition showed that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) wouldn’t intercede for any one, who hadn’t declared shahad. So did the following traditions.

“I am granted intercession for my umma. It will never be for any polytheist.”[[629]](#footnote-629)

“My intercession will include every Muslim.”[[630]](#footnote-630)

“Allah revealed to Gabriel (a.s.): Go to Muhammad and say to him: Raise your head and ask for anything. You will be granted it. Intercede for anyone. Your intercession will be accepted ... until his saying: Let anyone of your umma, who witnesses sincerely that there is no god but Allah even for one day and then dies, enter into Paradise.”[[631]](#footnote-631)

According to these traditions no one would get intercession except who declared shahada. Although these traditions didn’t define intercession, they made us understand that the one, who would be interceded for, wouldn’t be in Hell.

Also we understood that the Prophet’s intercession was delayed until the Day of Resurrection where he didn’t ask for the request, which Allah had ordered him to ask for and delayed it until that day. He “will be the first intercessor and his intercession will be the first to be accepted.”[[632]](#footnote-632)

Then how did the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) intercede for his unbeliever uncle whereas he had been ordered to intercede just for those, who declared shahada and became sincere Muslims?

And how did they determine the intercession for Abu Taalib while it was delayed until the Day of Resurrection?

So this tradition not only contradicted the tradition of the dying of Abu Taalib but also it contradicted many other traditions.

This contradiction was sufficient evidence to refute the two false traditions even if their dishonest narrators were regarded as reliable.

So how about it when the narrators were actually regarded as liars and fabricators?

There were some traditions of another kind. It would be better to quote some of them:

a. “Seventy thousand persons of my umma will enter into Paradise without being inquired.”[[633]](#footnote-633) In some of them it was mentioned “seventy thousand or seven hundred thousand” that Abu Hazim didn’t know which of them.[[634]](#footnote-634) It was this Abu Hazim, who was one of the narrators of the tradition of the dying of Abu Taalib!

b. “Seventy thousand persons will be resurrected from this cemetery (al-Baqee’)[[635]](#footnote-635) and they will enter into Paradise without being inquired.”[[636]](#footnote-636)

c. “Seventy thousand persons of my umma will enter into Paradise without inquiry or torment, with every thousand of them will be seventy thousands.”[[637]](#footnote-637)

d. “I found my God glorious and generous; He granted me with every one of the seventy thousand ones, who would enter into Paradise without being inquired, seventy thousand ones.”[[638]](#footnote-638)

There was a long series of such traditions with great numbers but we didn’t want to busy the reader’s mind with them that the reader might multiply seventy thousand by seventy thousand to see what the result would be!

But did he, who fabricated the tradition of az-Zihzah, check this seventy thousands multiplied by seventy thousands and didn’t find Abu Taalib among them and then he entered into Hell to find Abu Taalib there and his brain flowing over his feet?

We would like to say that we didn’t trust in many of the traditions we mentioned above and we didn’t want to discuss them because they were away from our subject but we just wanted to argue by them with the fabricators of the tradition of az-Zihzah no more no less because all of these traditions were mentioned in the Sihah and they drew from the same source and met at the same purpose!

We quoted here a saying of someone of the Ansar, who was the last one of the public speakers, whom Mo’awiya had appointed to curse and abuse Imam Ali (a.s.) on the minbars. This man was called Onayss. He praised Allah (s.w.t.) and then said: “You have cursed and abused the man (Ali) too much today. I swear by Allah (s.w.t.) that I have heard the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) saying: “I will intercede for people in the Day of Resurrection as much as the clay and the trees on the earth.” I swear by Allah (s.w.t.) that no one was kinder to his relatives than him (the Prophet). Do you think that he will intercede for you and he will be unable to intercede for his family...?”[[639]](#footnote-639)

What a wonderful word it was that didn’t need any comment!

4. We saw that the tradition of az-Zihzah talked about the intercession of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) for his uncle. This intercession occurred either after Abu Taalib had declared the shahada and then it would save him from Hell according to the traditions of intercession we mentioned above or before declaring shahada and then the intercession would be invalid according to the clear Holy Quranic versed in this concern.

If we noticed Abu Taalib’s doings and sayings, the witnesses of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and his progeny about him and if we noticed the defects of the narrators, we would find that this tradition was invalid and untrue besides that it contradicted the Holy Quranic verses.

If a tradition contradicted the Holy Quran, it would be brushed aside even if the narrators were trusty and reliable.

5. The tradition was ascribed to al-Abbas, who was free from it, and it was contradicted by the tradition of the dying of Abu Taalib that was ascribed to al-Abbas, who said – or it was pretended that he had said – that he had heard Abu Taalib at the last moment of his life saying the shahada, which the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had asked him for so that he could intercede for him with Almighty Allah. It was mentioned in the tradition that al-Abbas had said to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “He said the word you asked him for.”

We said when commenting on the tradition that he, who thought that the tradition was true, had to take into consideration all the tradition until the end or he had to brush it all aside and not to take what satisfied his fancy and to leave what objected his purpose.

He, who thought that the two traditions; the tradition of the dying and the tradition of az-Zihzah, were true, would be involved in contradiction as we discussed before and he, who denied one of them, had to deny the other because the narrators of the two traditions were the same. He, who denied a tradition narrated by a liar, must not accept another one narrated by the same narrator.

6. How would the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), with his intercession, be unable to take his uncle out of the shallowness of Fire into Paradise after he had been able to take him out of the lowest bottom of Fire to a shallow place (dhihdhah) as they pretended and so the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would complete his favor without any shortage?

Couldn’t the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) do that whereas we found a tradition talking about the virtues of Usmaan saying: “Seventy thousand persons, who deserve to be in Hell, will enter into Paradise without being inquired by the intercession of Usmaan?”[[640]](#footnote-640)

You noticed this number; seventy thousand that marked all the traditions, which tried to insert this fixed number into Paradise without inquiring although they deserved to be in Hell!

Then we asked: Was the caliph Usmaan more honourable near Allah than Prophet Muhammad?

Didn’t the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) have a value near Allah that equalled to one in comparison with the seventy thousand values the third caliph had?

What made Allah not accept the Prophet’s intercession for his uncle, who deserved to be in Hell as they fabricated, to take him to Paradise whereas the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had done every Muslim great favors and at the same time Allah accepted the intercession of Usmaan for seventy thousand ones, who all deserved to be in Hell but the mercy of Allah took them to Paradise?

Why would this great mercy of Allah turn away from Abu Taalib, who had brought up the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), protected, assisted and defended him and his religion? Would Allah be satisfied with lightening Abu Taalib’s torment only by talking him out of the lowest bottom of Hell and putting him in a shallow place of Hell and not letting him be in Paradise?

Yes! Abu Taalib was not in need of any intercession! The justice of Allah the Almighty would lead him to Paradise as a reward for his great deeds! If Paradise wouldn’t be for Abu Taalib and his likes, for whom would it be then?

But as for intercession, it would be for those, who didn’t deserve to be in Paradise according to their deeds but by virtue of the forgiveness of Allah the Merciful they would be forgiven.

Allah wouldn’t forgive any polytheist; thus His justice had determine, while He would forgive whomsoever He pleased other than polytheists; and thus his pardon and forgiveness had determined.

Such a tradition against Abu Taalib was but a result of hatred and grudge towards good people, high values and benevolence!

O Allah! We seek your protection. We pray You not to let us deviate from the straight way or stay in the slips of dangers or the abysses of darkness!

## Al-Mo’min (The Faithful)

Eeman is the infinitive form of the verb (aamana) and it means believing or trusting. Later on the word eeman takes a religious sense to mean faithfulness and it has its special definition. Al-Mo’min is the opposite of al-kafir (the unfaithful).

Eeman according to the religious definition is: faith in the heart (mind) and certification by the tongue of what has been revealed by Allah to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

So al-Mo’min (the faithful) is he, who has these two conditions with their requirements of performing the religious obligations.

As for the faith of the heart, it can’t be known by people[[641]](#footnote-641) except by Allah the Creator, Who is the only aware of the hidden thinking and what is in the conscience of man.

As long as people are unable to know the hidden beliefs of each other, so they decide according to the outward of each other.

Whenever they see the signs of faithfulness in someone, then no one has the right to criticize that someone and whoever dares to do that will be a slanderer and has to be punished. Allah says:

... and do not say to any who offers you peach: You are not a believer.[[642]](#footnote-642)

Allah (s.w.t.) forbids from saying to anyone, who offers salaam, that he is not a faithful so how about that, who confesses faithfulness every moment and does his best to take care of the first seed of the mission!

If someone wants to know about the faithfulness of someone else, it will be not so easy unless that one shows one’s faithfulness through one’s sayings then it is decided that that one is faithful and it is decided that one will be among the people of Paradise if one’s sayings and inner beliefs were identical.

Also it is decided that someone is faithful if the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) or any other infallible one witnesses that that one is a faithful because the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) ‘doesn’t speak out of desire. It is naught but revelation that is revealed**’**[[643]](#footnote-643) as Allah says about him.

The infallible one informs of what he has heard from the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), who receives revelation from his God, so there is no distortion, fabrication, guessing or estimation coming out of emotion or fancy.

Therefore we can decide the faithfulness of Abu Taalib according to the two sides;

All the sayings of Abu Taalib confirmed his faithfulness besides his great deeds, his jihad for the sake of the mission and the witnesses of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and the infallible Imams of his progeny.

We already mentioned in the previous chapters of this book many of Abu Taalib’s sayings showing his true faith, bright pages of his glorious jihad and many witnesses that had come out of the holy mouth of the great Prophet and his pure progeny (a.s.).

We thought that it would be better to quote here some of Abu Taalib’s sayings concerning the subject.

He recited:

The Lord of people Who has no partner

The Liberal Giver, the Initiator,, the Resurrector.

Whoever is under the Heaven and whoever is above the Heaven are rightfully His servants.[[644]](#footnote-644)

These verses were clear evidence showing that the sayer was a monotheist believing sincerely in the One and Only God without any bit of polytheism or apostasy.

When he talked about Allah he used the phrase “the Lord of people (or the King of people)” which was an Islamic expression mentioned in the Holy Quran ‘The King (Lord) of people.**’**[[645]](#footnote-645) and he denied polytheism when he said: “Who has no partner”.

Then he talked about some of the attributes of Allah the Almighty. He described Him as the liberal Giver, the Initiator, Who had initiated the creation from nothing and the Resurrector, Who would resurrected His creatures after death. It was a clear confession of the great day; the Day of Resurrection when the scales of justice would be put to weigh the deeds where there would be no injustice or wrong.

Then he said in the other verses that all the creatures were servants of Allah (s.w.t.); whether those, who were under the Heaven or those, who were above the Heaven.

Would monotheism be something other than this? Did Abu Taalib, after this saying, let an outlet for any doubter or suspector?

Was our saying “There is no god but Allah” in its monotheistic meaning clearer than these verses of Abu Taalib?

Abu Taalib (a.s.) recited too:

O you the witness of Allah

Witness that I am on the religion of Prophet Ahmed[[646]](#footnote-646)

Let whoever deviates from the religion know that I am guided.[[647]](#footnote-647)

Here Abu Taalib confessed that he was on the religion of his nephew and then he said that whoever didn’t follow this religion would be deviant whereas he himself followed this religion and became guided.

By your God! Wasn’t this saying greater in meaning than to say: I am a Muslim?

If someone said to you that he was a Muslim, wouldn’t he be treated like the other Muslims concerning the rights and the obligations? Wouldn’t his blood, property and honour be protected and no one had any right to violate any thing of that?

So what about this man; Abu Taalib, who announced his faithfulness so loudly and who asked the witness of Allah to witness that he was guided by the religion of his nephew, that people denied his being a Muslim?

It was but deviation that covered the eyes thickly and prevented them from seeing the brightness of the truth!

Here is something else of Abu Taalib’s poetry:

Allah had honoured Prophet Muhammad,

who became the most honoured among all the peoples of Him,

Allah had derived a name for him

from His own name to glorify him;

the Lord was Mahmood[[648]](#footnote-648)

and His apostle was Muhammad,[[649]](#footnote-649)

These verses had many things of monotheism and confession of the prophecy of Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.).

As for what concerned his confession of the prophecy of his nephew, there were much many things, some of which was mentioned in the previous chapters of this book.

Here we quoted some individual verses chosen from Abu Taalib’s poems. Some of them might be mentioned in the previous chapters:

You are the Prophet; the Prophet of Allah that we know well,

to you the books of the Almighty have been revealed.

\*\*\*

Don’t you know that we have found Muhammad a Prophet

like Moses, this is true in the Books!

\*\*\*

You are the son of Aamena, you are the Prophet Muhammad...

A Prophet, to whom the revelation of his Lord has come...

You are the Prophet Muhammad...

Ahmed has come to them with truthfulness,

he hasn’t come to them with falseness.

\*\*\*

or they believe in a wonderful Book revealed to a Prophet

like Moses or Jonah.

\*\*\*

They have already known that our son is believed by us,

and we never care for the sayings of the falsifiers.

Among the obsurdities was the saying of al-Qarafi when commenting on this verse. He said to uncover the ill-will of him: “... declaring by the tongue and believing in the heart but he didn’t submit.”[[650]](#footnote-650)

Did this biased one have another definition of faithfulness or his inner feelings led him to deviate from the straight way?

This was some of Abu Taalib’s poetry and there was much more, full of his clear confession of the mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) and full of avocation showing his submission to his nephew. That was the clearest evidence proving his believing in the mission of his nephew, otherwise what would lead him to submit to his nephew; the orphan, who had been brought up by him and grown under his kindness and care, whereas he was the obeyed leader, the sheikh of Mecca and the chief of Quraysh?

Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) was a son or a grandson of Abu Taalib and therefore it was Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), who had to submit to Abu Taalib, but what made Abu Taalib submit to Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), call him “my Master” and address him with the best expression of praising, glorifying and sanctifying?

Was there anything else than believing in the mission of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) leading Abu Taalib to do so? Was it because of the uncle ship or any other kind of kinship? Would the sentiment of kinship stand against the religious enthusiasm, which defeated all the other sentiments and which nothing would resist whatever it was strong and firm?

We noticed how the religious enthusiasm had defeated the sentiment of fatherhood and son hood like the situation of Abdullah bin Abdullah bin Obeyy towards his father and the situation of Adi bin Hatim towards his son.

So the religious enthusiasm especially of this leader and sheikh Abu Taalib wouldn’t vanish when supporting his nephew, who was calling for a new religion other than the religion of Abu Taalib -as it was pretended- just because of kinship! This wouldn’t be believed even by those of a bit of reason.

Was the sentiment of kinship the only reason that led Abu Taalib to drive such signs of praise and glory to his nephew and all that sayings that invited people to follow and support him? Certainly not! Abu Taalib recited:

I seek protection of the Lord of the House,

from every defamer intending evil for us,

from a dissolute backbiting us,

from a falsifier ascribing to the religion what we are free from.

I swear by the House of Allah that you have told lies!

We never give up Muhammad; we struggle and fight for him,

We support him until we are killed around him.

For him we ignore our wives and children.

Men with iron rush to you swiftly;

By the House of Allah! When it is serious,

our swords will pierce the heroes!

And a white-faced, with whose face it is prayed,

so that the clouds bring goodness.

He is the shelter of the orphans and the guardian of the widows.

You know well that our son had never been a liar,

nor we care for absurdities.

I swear I love Ahmed as a passionate lover;

I sacrifice my soul for him,

I defend him with all I have.

He is still the beauty for this world and its people,

pang for his enemies, blessing for his fellows.

The hope of people;

He has no like if the prudent compare!

Patient, wise and fair,

devoted to his God, not ignorant of Him a bit!

So the Lord of the people assisted him,

spread the right religion with no vanity.

We don’t want to stay long at this wonderful poem so that not to violate its wonderfulness when trying to discuss or detail it. We let the reader take from it whatever he can because it will affect his heart so deeply.

Abu Taalib was not of that kind of people, who just said without carrying out the sayings! He carried out whatever he had said. He protected the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and supported him. He supported Islam and defended it that even his enemies, who had fabricated against him tens of lies, couldn’t deny his favors and virtues.

## The Final Word about the Faithfulness of Abu Taalib (a.s.)

The faithfulness of Abu Taalib was so clear and certain that it didn’t need any evidence to be proved except that if you wanted to certify for the blind that the sun was shining in the sky and sending its rays and that the day was bright!

All Abu Taalib’s sayings, his continuous jihad he had done for the sake of Islam and all the witnesses of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), his pure progeny and the companions confirmed his faith, his belief in monotheism and in the mission of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.).

Since all the evidences had confirmed Abu Taalib’s faith in Islam, so all of the Shia agreed upon that with no any bit of doubt or suspect, Whoever said other than that is not a Shia especially when the infallible Imams (a.s.) had confirmed that with their irrefutable witnesses.

So Shiism and believing that Abu Taalib was unbeliever would never meet together; for whoever said that Abu Taalib was unbeliever would deny the sayings of the infallible Imams of the Shia when confirming the faithfulness of Abu Taalib.

Would he, who objected his Imams, be a Shia?

Therefore the faithfulness of Abu Taalib was one of the necessities of Shiism. All the Shia said that and also many of the Zaydis.[[651]](#footnote-651) Some of the great personalities of the Mu’tazilites said that too.[[652]](#footnote-652) Among them was Sheikh Abul Qasim al-Balkhi and Abu Ja’far al-Iskafi.[[653]](#footnote-653)

Many of the saints and ulema said that it was proved for them that Abu Taalib was a Muslims[[654]](#footnote-654) and that he would be safe from punishment; among them was al-Qurtubi, as-Sabki, ash-Sha’arani and many others. They said: “This is what we believe in before Allah.”[[655]](#footnote-655)

Imam Ahmed bin al-Husain (a.s.) al-Moossily al-Hanafi, who was known as ibn Wahshi, said: “Hating Abu Taalib is unbelief.”[[656]](#footnote-656) So was said by al-Ajhoori, who was one of the Malikite Imams, in his fatwas.[[657]](#footnote-657)

At-Talmassani said when mentioning Abu Taalib: “He should not be mentioned except with protecting the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) because he protected and supported the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in saying and doing. Criticizing Abu Taalib would harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and he, who harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), would be unbeliever and the unbeliever should be killed.”[[658]](#footnote-658)

Abu Tahir said: “He, who hates Abu Taalib, is unbeliever.”[[659]](#footnote-659)

Dahlan said: “Believing in the sayings of these Imams that Abu Taalib was a faithful is safe for one before his God especially that the evidences proves that as it has been mentioned by al-Barazanji.”[[660]](#footnote-660)

As-Suyooti had written a book about this subject with this title: (Bughyat at-Taalib li Eeman Abu Taalib). The aim of the seeker for the faithfulness of Abu Taalib),[[661]](#footnote-661) The title of the book was enough to show the thought of the author about the subject.

Zayni Dahlan had written a book named (Asnaa al-Mataalib), which we referred to in a previous chapter, about the same subject.

We don’t want to quote all the names of the authors and their books written about the subject because they are so much many.

As for that, who thought that Abu Taalib was unbeliever, he deviated from the right way. He fabricated those accusations and lies and received his immediate fees in this life but he would receive his other fees in Hell and then he would know the lowest bottom of Hell would be for whom!

And then came those, who saw the fabrication but didn’t try to draw its cover for they knew well what they would uncover.

We were so astonished to see those people denying the faithfulness of Abu Taalib in spite of that there were much many clear evidences confirming it whereas at the same time we found such a tradition:

Ash-Shareed said: “One day I rode behind the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). He asked Me: “Do you have something of the poetry of Umayya bin Abus Salt?”

I said: Yes.

He said: Come on!

I recited him a verse.

He said: Come on!

I recited another verse.

He said: Come on!

I kept on reciting until I recited one hundred verses.

He said: “He was about to become a Muslim!” or he said: “He was about to be a Muslim with his poetry.”[[662]](#footnote-662)

Zayd bin Amr set out looking for the religion of Abraham (a.s.). He took his way towards Sham and then from Sham to Mecca but he died on his way to Mecca. It was related about Aaesha her saying: “The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: I entered into Paradise and found that there were two large trees for Zayd bin Amr.”[[663]](#footnote-663)

It was mentioned that Saeed bin Zayd bin Amr bin Nufayl and his cousin Umar bin al-Khattab said to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.): “Do you beg forgiveness for Zayd bin Amr?” The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “Yes! He would be resurrected as a nation by himself.”[[664]](#footnote-664)

It was mentioned too that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “May Allah have mercy upon Qass bin Sa’ida. He would be resurrected in the Day or Resurrection as one nation or as a nation by himself.”[[665]](#footnote-665)

So what was this contradiction?

Why was the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) so generous to the non-relatives, who had never done him any favor, and was so miser towards his uncle, who had done him great favors since his childhood until he became a Prophet? Hadn’t his Lord revealed to him: ‘Is the reward of goodness aught but goodness?’[[666]](#footnote-666)

Then why would the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) reward his uncle with else than goodness?

After all we found that accusing Abu Taalib of being unbeliever would harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and this would be a great sin that could never be forgiven.

Allah the Almighty said:

‘... and (as far) those who molest the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.), they shall have a painful punishment.’[[667]](#footnote-667)

‘...and it does not behave you that you should give trouble to the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.).’[[668]](#footnote-668)

‘Surely (as far) those who speak evil things of Allah and His Messenger, Allah has cursed them in this world and the hereafter, and He had prepared for them a chastisement bringing disgrace.’[[669]](#footnote-669)

Hence we found that at-Talmasaani had said that the one, who accused Abu Taalib of being unbeliever, should be killed because it would harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and whoever harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) should be killed.

The Muslims agreed upon killing the one, who harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), according to the Quranic verses, which confirmed that whoever harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would be in Hell for ever.

No harm was caused to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) more than defaming his uncle and supporter and accusing him of being unbeliever whereas he was a sincere believer and a nonesuch supporter.

They mentioned that one day Subay’a bint Abu Lahab had come to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) complaining that people often said to her: “You are the daughter of the firewood of Hell (for she was the daughter of Abu Lahab).”

The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) stood up angrily and said: “Why do some people harm me with my relatives? He, who harms me, will harm Allah.”[[670]](#footnote-670)

What kind of kinship with Abu Lahab, who had cut every relation and perished every connection by harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) so severely, it was!

They also mentioned that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: “Don’t curse the dead lest you harm the live.”[[671]](#footnote-671)

They determined that: “Harming the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) is unbelief. Whoever does that shall be killed if he doesn’t repent.”[[672]](#footnote-672)

The Malikites thought that whoever harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) should be killed even if he repented.[[673]](#footnote-673)

If it was so according to their thought, then wouldn’t defaming Abu Taalib and accusing him wrongly harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)?

It would be enough sin to make its committer deserve to be killed as punishment in this world and to be in Hell for ever as punishment in the afterlife.

Therefore as-Suyooti aid that their purpose behind defaming Abu Taalib was to defame Ali himself but their arrow missed and hit the Prophet’s parents; Abdullah and Aamena, and Grandfather Abdul Muttalib.

Any how the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and Ali (a.s.) were as one soul and Abu Taalib was to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as was Abdullah to him and Fatima (Ali’s mother) was to the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as Aamena was.

As-Suyooti said: “I didn’t pretend that the matter of the parents was agreed upon by the consensus but there was disagreement[[674]](#footnote-674) about it like the other matters, which were disagreed upon, but I chose the sayings of those, who thought that the Prophet’s parents were pure, and this was the most suitable.

Be cautious of mentioning them (the Prophet’s parents) with anything bad because this may harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)[[675]](#footnote-675) because the traditional custom determined that defaming one’s parents would harm the son undoubtedly.”[[676]](#footnote-676)

If it would defame the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when one of his forefathers was a polytheist, then definitely it would defame him to be brought up in a house of a polytheist,[[677]](#footnote-677) who looked after him, assisted him, defended him and defended his religion and defended the followers of his religion. Then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) with all his glory and success would be indebted to that polytheist man! What a great value and a high position that polytheist would have!

Hadn’t the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said: “O Allah! Don’t make a dissolute or an unbeliever have a chance of getting my kindness!”?

If the polytheist father would defame the faithful son, so the polytheism of Abu Taalib would defame his son Ali! Definitely Abu Taalib was accused of being polytheist just to defame Ali in order to perish his virtues and high qualities, which no one at all had save Ali. No one of the companions’ fathers was faithful nor were they themselves free from polytheism at some time of their lives whereas Ali was pure, since his birth in the Kaaba, whether in his lineage or his beliefs.

Hence we found how they fabricated different traditions pretending that some of the companions’ fathers were Muslims.

They fabricated such traditions besides the tradition talking about the polytheism of Abu Taalib just to lighten the scales of Ali (a.s.) and to make the scales of others outweigh!

Even if those traditions were true, the two scales of the balance would never be equal in any case that their fathers were polytheists and then became Muslims -if sincerely- while Abu Taalib was Monotheist where polytheism could never find any outlet to his heart at all.

The same was fabricated against the antecedence of Ali’s faithfulness in the Prophet’s mission. They fabricated as possible as they could until they reached a point that they couldn’t deny the truth but they tried to clothe it. Ignorantly they tried by saying: “The first of boys, who believed in Muhammad (s.a.w.a.), was Ali (a.s.), the first of men was Abu Bakr and the first of women was Khadeeja (a.s.).”

If it was said that somebody became a Muslim, that was because that somebody was unbeliever and then became a Muslim but this was not true concerning Ali (a.s.), who had never been unbeliever for a moment of his life nor had he bowed before an idol! He always raised his head upwards looking at the greatness of the great Creator. He had been faithful since the first day. He had never been unbeliever and then turned to be faithful. He had never prostrated himself before anything save Allah (s.w.t.).

Therefore discussing the subject of antecedence in being faithful wouldn’t be fit about Ali (a.s.).

Then if the unbelief of Abu Taalib would defame his son Ali, it would, at the same time, defame the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) as long as Muhammad and Ali were as one soul. The participated in having the same qualities of the house of deep-rooted faithfulness.

Muhammad and Ali had to be in one degree of virtues and qualities except for the prophecy, which distinguished Muhammad from Ali, in order to be united as one self.

Therefore Abu Taalib must be like Abdullah and Fatima must be like Aamena either in faithfulness or unfaithfulness so that the parents were to be united as the sons were united; so Muhammad and Ali were but one!

If the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would be harmed when it was said to Sabee’a, whose father and mother were cursed by the Holy Quran, that she was the daughter of the firewood of Hell, then how would he be when his uncle was accused of what he was free from?

Wouldn’t that harm him so much because it was unjust accusation and violation of the truth against his nearest relative; Abu Taalib, who was the kindest one to him and who supported him until the last moment of his life? Wasn’t that required the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) to be loyal towards the favors of his kind uncle and to suffer when something harmed his uncle; the faithful, the supporter and the nearest relative to him?

It also did harm the equivalent of his soul; Ali, whom whatever harmed, would harm the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) and whatever harmed the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) would harm Allah (s.w.t.) as the true prophetic tradition said.

And if the intercession benefited all those great numbers of people, most of whom deserved to be in Hell, wouldn’t it benefit his uncle even if he was not faithful as they pretended?

And as long as the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) was the kindest one to his relatives as Onayss had sworn of that and so had every one, who knew the merciful Muhammad, then would his intercession benefit all those great numbers of sinful people but it would fail to include his loving uncle, who was to him like his father and who was the father of Ali; his own self, his beloved brothers, his son-in-law and his guardian?

But Abu Taalib, as we said and so did every fair one, saw the rightness and followed it and so he would enter into Paradise deservingly as a reward for his deeds with no need for intercession, which would benefit those whose doings didn’t save them from the torment of Hell.

He, who did his duties rightfully, would deserve to be in Paradise according to the justice of Allah the Beneficent, with no need for any intercession.

If Abu Taalib wouldn’t enter into Paradise, then for whom would it be?

In fact for whom would it be if Abu Taalib wasn’t the first to be in it rewardingly?

If Abu Taalib entered into Hell, as they raved, then who would be safe from it even the Prophets? Then Hell wouldn’t be feared, the values would be perished, punishment would be random, justice would be lost and judgement would be unfair! Allah forbid!

O Allah! Forgive us and don’t destroy us for what the fools have done! ‘And those who speak evil things of the believing men and the believing women without their having earned (it), they are guilty indeed of a false accusation and a manifest sin.’[[678]](#footnote-678)

# Biography Of The Author

Full name: Shaikh Abdullah bin Shaikh Ali bin Hasan bin Mehdi bin Kazim bin Ali bin Abdullah al-Khunayzi.

Birth-date: 1350 AHV 1931 AD.

Birth-place: al-Qara/al Qateef.

He went to a local school and learned the Holy Quran, reading, writing and first principles of mathematics in his early years.

He studied the Arabic language with the old style by his brother Muhammad Sa'eed in 1361 A.H.

In the same year he began to write short stories. He liked writing stories. He began to poetize stanzas of not more than two verses. He wrote a book called al-Hadeeqa al-Adabiyya (literature garden). He divided this book into three parts; poetry, prose and tales, in which he used old and modern styles.

In the night of 21/11/1363 A.H. his kind father left to the better world. It caused him a great shock that affected him so greatly. He felt that he lost the spring of kindness and sympathy, from which he used to ladle.

The loss of his father affected him so much. He elegized him in every occasion with articles and poems but later on he got rid of many of his articles for his style and thinking advanced much better than before.

He published articles in many newspapers and magazines in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, Iraq, Lebanon and Egypt. The first article he published was in al-Irfan magazine in 1368 A.H.

He tried to work in trade for about one year but he didn't succeed. His loss in trade was because of his indulgence and leniency in getting back his debts besides that he had no commercial tendency. He was obliged to close his shop after the loss.

The costs of life forced him to look for a job where he couldn't devote himself to the study that his father had wished for him. He didn't find any way except to join a goverment job. He worked in this job for more than twenty years.

In 1390 A.H. he left his country to Iraq and after some months his wife and children joined him there. He lived in the holy Najaf. He bought a house and kept on the religious study. He studied the books that were taught in the advanced stages for he thought that he was not in need of studying the books taught in the primary stages. In fact he was able to teach those books himself. He taught many students some of those books.

After this stage he attended the highest level of study near Imam Sayyid Abul Qasim al-Khoo'iy, who had a good relation with him and took much care for him. He (Sayyid Abul, Qasim) often appreciated him and entrusted him with many duties like answering some asking of people for the legal fatwas, answering some of the letters and some other jobs, which he was fit for.

In 1401 A.H. he went to his country to visit his relatives and friends but his family remained in Najaf. The war between Iraq and Iran had broken out two months ago. He couldn't come buck to Iraq. He stayed there for nearly one year without being able to come back. Then his family became obliged to go back to the home country. He settled down in his country performing his religious and national duties.

He taught many people before his emigration to Iraq, during his emigration and after coming back to his country.

Here are some names of those, who were taught by him in Najaf and al-Qateef:

a. Ordinary-people: Saeed al-Khabbaz, Muneer al-Khabbaz, Muhammad al-Awami, Haydar al-Awami, Majeed ash-Shakhoor, Mehdi ash-Sho’la and Hashem al-Khabbaaz.

b. Sheikhs; Mansoor Musa Taahir, Muhammad Abdullah Kazim, Nizar Sumbul, Ziya’ Sumbol, Abdullah Sumbol, Muhammad Husain, Sadiq al-Maqeeli, Mehdi al-Awazim, Abdul Azeem ash-Shaikh, Muhammad Obaydan, Abbas al-Anki, Abbas al-Mahroos, Muhammad Ali al-Bayyabi, Hasan as-Saffaar, Ibrahim al-Hammood, Sa’d Abus Sa’ood and others.

### His works

1. Zikra (memory of) Imam al-Khunayzi (his first work).

2. Zikra az-Za’eem (leader) al-Khunayzi.

3. Abu Talib; the faithful of Quraysh.

4. Ada’ona (our performance).

5. Zaw’oti fiz Zil (a light in the shadow).

6. Naseem wa Zawba’a (breeze and hurricane).

7. Madameek Oqadiyya, in two volumes.

8. Zahrat (flowers), a collection of poetry.

9. Short stories.

10. Sowar menal Hayaat (scenes from the life).

11. The rest of Madameek Oqadiyya.

12. Ibnul Moqarrab: the revolutionary poet.

13. Al-Harakat al-Fikriyya (the intellectual movements) in al-Qateef.

14. Laa Ikraah (no coercion).

15. Al-Mar'a benazra Islamiyya (Woman according to the Islamic view.

16. Praying and Fasting during travel according to the Quran and the Sunna.

17. Autobiography.

18. Ad Du’a wal Akhlaaq fee Madrasat Ahlul Bayt (praying and morals according to the school of Ahlul Bayt).

19. Alaq min az-Zikrayat (a shine of memories).

20. As-Sayyid as-Sabzawi Irfaniyyen (mystically).

21. Qitaful Masjid (the fruits of the mosque).

22. A collection of different studies and articles.

and other works like editing his father’s books and other famous books.

# Reference Books

1. The Holy Quran

2. Sharh Nahjul Balagha by ibn Abil Hadeed, Dar al-Kutub al-Arabiyyah press, Egypt 1329 A.H.

3. Al-Bayaan wat Tabyeen by al-Jahiz, edited by Hasan as-Sandoobi, al-Istiqama press, Cairo 1366 A.H.

4. Musnad of Imam Ahmed bin Hanbal, al-Maymaniyya press, Egypt 1313 A.H.

5. Tareekhul Omam wal Molook by ibn Jareer at-Tabari, al-Istiqama press, 1357 AH/ 1939 AD.

6. Al-Kaamil fit-Tareekh by ibnul Aseer ash-Shaybani al-Jazriy, Egypt 1356 A.H.

7. Al-Ghadeer fil Kitab was Sunna by Sheikh Abdul Husain al-Ameeni, al-Haydari press, Tehran 1372 A.H.

8. Saheeh of Muslim, Muhammad Ali Sabeeh press, Egypt 1324 A.H.

9. Mo’awiya bin Abu Sufyan fil Meezan by Abbas al-Aqqaad, Cairo 1375 A.H.

10. The thesis of al-Jahiz, collected by as-Sandoobi, ar-Rahmaniyya press, Egypt 1352 A.H.

11. Sulh al-Hasan by Sheikh Razi Aal-e-Yaaseen, az-Zahra press, Baghdad 1372 A.H.

12. Al-Hasan bin Ali by Kamil Sulayman, Beirut 1373 A.H.

13. Ad-Da’wa al-Islamiyya elaa Wahdat Ahlul Sunna wal Imamiyya by Sheikh Ali Abul Hasan al-Khunayzi, al-Iqbal press, Beirut 1376 A.H.

14. Al-Kaamil fil Lugha wal Adab wan Nahw wat Tasreef by al-Mobarrid, al-Babi press, Egypt 1356 A.H.

15. Aryan ash-Shia by Mohsin al-Ameen, al-Insaaf press, Beirut 1370 A.H.

16. Lubab an-Nuqool fee Asbaab an-Nuzool by as-Sayooti, al-Baabi press, Egypt 1373 A.H.

17. Majma’ul Bayaan fee Tafseer al-Quran by at-Tabarsi, Beirut 1376 A.H.

18. Al-Kashshaaf a’n Haqaaeq Ghawamiz at-Tanzeel by az-Zamakhshari, al-Istiqama press, Egypt 1373 A.H.

19. As-Seera al-Halabiyya by al-Halabi, al-Azhariyya press, Egypt 1351 A.H.

20. Ehya’ Uloom ad-Deen by al-Ghazali, al-Babi press, Egypt 1358 A.H.

21. Sirrul Aalameen wa Kashf ma fid-Daarayn by al-Ghazzaali, al-Hajar press, Bombay 1314 A.H.

22. Al-Isteeaab fee Asmaaul Ashaab by Yousuf an-Namri al-Qurtubi, Mustafa Muhammad press, Egypt 1358 A.H.

23. Muqaddamaat ibn Khaldoon, Mustafa Muhammad press, Egypt.

24. Yanabeeul Mawaddah by Sheikh Sulayman al-Husaini, al-Irfan press, Sayda – Lebanon and Bombay press.

25. Fasl al-Hakeem fee an-Neza’ wat Takkassom fee maa bayna Bani Umayya wa Bani Hashem by Muhammad bin Aqeel, al-Irfan press, Sayda – Lebanon 1343 A.H.

26. Kashful Astaar an Wajh al-Ghaeb an al-Absaar by Mirza Husain an-Noori, Ahmad Agha press 1318 A.H.

27. Abu Huraira by Abdul Husain Sharafuddeen, al-Irfan press, Sayda – Lebanon 1365 A.H.

28. As-Seera an-Nabawiyyah wal Aasaar al-Muhammadiyyah by Ahmed Zayni Dahlan.

29. Al-Esaaba fee Temyeez as-Sahaba by ibn Hajar al-Asqalani.

30. Imam Ali; the Voice of Justice by George Jordaq, 1956 A.D.

31. Imam Ali bin Abu Talib by Abdul Fattah Abdul Maqsood, Dar al-Kitab al-Arabi, Egypt 1366 A.H.

32. Mo’jamul Qoboor by Muhammad Mehdi al-Musawi, an-Najah press, Baghdad 1358 A.H.

33. Asl ash-Shia wa Usoolohaa by Sheikh Muhammad al-Husain Kaasheful Ghetaa, al-Irfan press 1355 A.H.

34. Murooj az-Zahab by Abul Husain Ali al-Masoodi, as-Sa’da press, Egypt 1377 A.H.

35. Behaarul Anwaar by Muhammad Baqir al-Majlisi, Khursheed press, Tehran 1323 A.H.

36. Al-Abbas bin Ameerul Mo’mineen by Abdur Razaq al-Muqarram, al-Haydariyyah press, Najaf.

37. Haleef Makhzoom by Sadruddeen Sharafuddeen, al-Irfan press 1373 A.H.

38. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyyah by ibn Hisham, al-Babi press, Egypt 1355 A.H.

39. Ala Hamish as-Seera by Taha Husain, Dar al-Ma’ref, Egypt 1952 A.D.

40. Al-Majaalis as-Saniyyah fee Manaaqib wa Masaaeb al-Itra an-Nabawiyyah by Mohsin al-Ameen, ibn Zaydoon press, Damascus 1363 A.H.

41. Tazkeratul Khawaas by Sibt bin al-Jawzi, al-Ilmiyyah press, Najaf 1369 A.H.

42. Isbaatul Wasiyyah by al-Masoodi, al-Haydariyyah press, Najaf.

43. Umdatut Taalib fee Ansaab Aal Abu Taalib by (Ahmad) bin Ali ad-Dawoodi, Ja’fariyya press, Lucknow’.

44. Manaaqib Aal Abu Taalib by ibn Shahr Aashob al-Mazindaraani, Bombay.

45. Al-Hujjah a’laa as-Saahib elaa Takfeer Abu Talib by Shamsuddin Fakhar bin Ma’z – al-Alawiyyah press, Najaf 1351 A.H.

46. Majalis Za’lab by Abul Abbas Ahmad Za’lab, Dar al-Ma’ref, Egypt 1348 A.H.

47. Abu Taalib; Shaikh Bani Hashem by Abdul Azeez Sayyedul Ahl, Dar al-Ilm lil Malayeen, Beirut 1951 A.D.

48. Hashem wa Umayya fee Jaaheliyyah by Sadruddeen, Baghdad 1365 A.H.

49. Saheeh of al-Bukhaari, al-Babi press, Egypt.

50. Shaikhul Abtah, or Abu Taalib by Muhammad Ali Sharafuddeen, Dar as-Salaam press, Baghdad 1349 A.H.

51. Mo’jamul Buldaan by Yaqoot al-Hamawi, Beirut 1376 A.H.

52. Fatemah bint Muhammad and Muhammad al-Arabi by Umar Abun-Nasr, al-Wataniyyah press, Beirut 1953 A.D.

53. Qesas al-Arab by Muhammad Jadul-Mawla, Egypt 1367 A.H.

54. E’jaazul Quran by Abu Bakr al-Baqelaani, Dar al-Ma’ref, Egypt.

55. Ghaayatul Maraam by Hashem al-Bahraani, Iran 1272 A.H.

56. Ar-Riyaz an-Nazara fee Manaaqib al-Ashara by al-Muhib at-Tabari, al-Husainiyyah press 1327 A.H.

57. Tafseer Ali bin Ibraheem, Iran 1363 A.H.

58. Divan Abu Talib, Fayz Rasan press, Bombay 1326 A.H.

59. Eemaan Abu Talib by Sheikh al-Mufeed, al-Haydariyyah press, Najaf 1372 A.H.

60. Samaratul Awraaq fil-Mohazaraat by Taqiyyuddeen bin Hujja al-Hamawi, al-Mashhad al-Husaini press, 1368 A.H.

61. Nasab Quraysh by Musa’b az-Zubayri, Dar al-Ma’ref 1953 A.D.

62. Al-Aghani by Abul Faraj al-Isfahaani, at-Taqaddum press, Egypt.

63. Tafseer al-Quran al-Azeem by Abul Fida’ bin Kusayr, Dar Ehyaa al-Kutub al-Arabiyyah, Egypt.

64. Waq’at Siffeen by Nasr bin Muzahim, Cairo 1365 A.H.

65. As-Sawaaequl Mohreqa by Ahmed bin Hajar al-Haysami, al-Maymaniyyah press, Egypt 1312 A.H.

66. Al-Fitnatul Kubra by Taha Husain, Daar al-Ma’ref, Egypt 1947. A.D.

67. Mohazaraat Tareekh al-Omam al-Islamiyyah by Shaikh Muhammad al-Khuzari, al-Istiqama press, Cairo 1364 A.H.

68. Meezaanul E’tedaal fee Naqd ar-Rejaal by Muhammad az-Zahabi, as-Sa’da press, Egypt 1325 A.H.

69. Tafseer of al-Bayzawi, Mustafa Muhammad press, Egypt.

70. Dalaael as-Sidq by Sheikh Muhammad Hasan al-Muzaffar, Taban press 1379 A.H.

71. Is’aaf al-Mubatta’ Berejaal al-Mowatta’ by Jalaaluddeen as-Suyooti, Mustafa Muhammad press 1358 A.H.

72. Al-Fehrist by ibnul Nadeem, ar-Rahmaaniyyah press, Egypt 1348 A.H.

73. Seyer A’lam an-Nobala by Muhammad az-Zahabi, Daar al-Ma’ref, Egypt 1957 A.D.

74. Futooh al-Buldaan by Abul Abbas al-Balazari, Daar an-Nashr lij-Jamiyyeen 1377 A.H.

75. Al-Itqaan fee Uloom al-Quran by Jalaaluddeen as-Suyooti, Hejaazi press, Cairo 1368 A.H.

1. Holy Quran, 40:28 [↑](#footnote-ref-1)
2. Holy Quran, 40:38-45 [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
3. He means Imam Ali (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
4. The first letter was written in the draft of the book in 9/8/1373 A.H. 14/4/1954 A.D. and the last letter of the draft was in 2/8/1374 A.H., 27/3/1955 A.D. [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
5. A place in the Arabia [↑](#footnote-ref-5)
6. Quraysh was the greatest tribe of the Arabia at that time. [↑](#footnote-ref-6)
7. One of Imam Ali (a.s.)’s surnames [↑](#footnote-ref-7)
8. Sayyed al-Bathaa was a surname of Abu Taalib. (Ibn) means the son of Shaybatul Hamd was a surname of Abdul Muttalib; Abu Taalib’s father and the Prophet’s grandfather. [↑](#footnote-ref-8)
9. She’b means a mountain pass and saheefa means a book, a charter or a covenant, which usually written on a leaf or a piece of leather. [↑](#footnote-ref-9)
10. Mo’awiya was the first caliph of the Umayyads [↑](#footnote-ref-10)
11. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 15 [↑](#footnote-ref-11)
12. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-12)
13. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 15 [↑](#footnote-ref-13)
14. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 16 [↑](#footnote-ref-14)
15. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-15)
16. In Arabic ‘bin’ means ‘son of’ and ‘abeeh’ means ‘his father’ Ziyad was called the son of his father because he was illegitimate child. Later on he was ascribed to Abu Sufyan (Mo’awiya’s father) [↑](#footnote-ref-16)
17. I didn’t expect to find a saying of a man of letters living in the twentieth century where he thought that he had got rid of the dregs of that odious Dark Age with all what it had of selling the conscience and distorting the truth like the saying of Hasan as-Sandoobi. It seems that there are many persons, who still live with the dregs of that dark history and try to spread its poisons among the people.

    Hasan as-Sandoobi in his book Sharh al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen, vol. 1, p. 204 when talking about Ziyad says this malicious and repugnant saying: “I don’t think that it would defame his thinking, virtues and deeds ... because Mo’awiya acknowledged that he was his brother from Abu Sufyan and nothing would be more important for man than to be certain about his lineage.” If we had time to comment on this false saying, we would uncover what destruction, misleading, fabrication and distortion of the principles of Islam and humanity these little words had. It objected the tradition of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) when saying: “The new-born baby is to be ascribed to its mother and it is prohibited to ascribe it to the adulterer). It encouraged joining the illegitimate child to the adulterer and it didn’t consider seceding from the legal Imam as a sin or guilt...! Yes, all these bad doing proved the good thinking, the virtue and the excellent deeds of Ziyad ... what disgrace! What a difference between this Sandoobi and al-Jahiz was when talking about the disgrace of ascribing Ziyad to Abu Sufyan as his father. This considered it as virtue and excellence of Ziyad and that excluded Mo’awiya, when he joined Ziyad to his father, from the dissolute to join him to the unbelievers depending upon true evidences in a word we will mention soon when discussing the lie of (Aam al-Jama’a; the year of the unity).  
    My wonder and surprise about this repugnant saying of as-Sandoobi dwindled after steps of reading his explanation. I stopped surprisedly before his comment, which blackened seven lines in, p. 183-184, vol. 2. It was a black stain in his explanation when he defended the Abadites (a sect of the Kharijites) opposing all the true traditions mentioned in all of the Sahihs (the books of Hadith) and agreed upon by all the Muslims. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said when referring to the Kharijites: “They renegade like the arrow going out of the game animal”. But this Sandoobi said about them: “They are the best of the Muslims. They detest the heresies, which are so far from the true religion and hence some of the Muslims accuse them of being inflexible and that they don’t comply with the civilized progress. In fact they are accused of what they are free from.” Do you see how this man accused all the Muslims falsely whereas they just followed what the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said about those people, whom as-Sandoobi defended?

    He wasn’t satisfied with this. He added: “I was deceived by the sayings of their opponents about them and I used the same accusations in some of the footnotes in the first volume of my book but then the truth appeared. I knew that they (the Kharijites) were among the best of the Muslims, who depended –in all their worships and dealings – upon the Quran and the Sunna. Don’t care or al-Jahiz’s opinion about them because they were, before, opponents of the Mu’tazilites (a sect of the Muslims). May Allah be pleased with all of the Muslims?” He prayed Allah to be pleased with those, who renegaded Islam and he considered them as being devoted to the Sunna. I don’t know what he will say about what was mentioned in the Prophet’s tradition, which was agreed upon among all the Muslims, about those people. How did he gather between this and his beseeching Allah to be pleased with all of the Muslims if the Kharijites, after they renegaded Islam, were among the Muslims? The Muslims, except those who contradicted the true Sunna, were certain of what the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said about the Kharijites and they didn’t consider them but as the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had considered them. They were but apostates. Their prayers were but whistling and clapping.

    They read the Holy Quran but it didn’t reach their clavicles as the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had described them. They were a great image of cunning religious hypocrisy which deceived the naive like this inexperienced Sandoobi! I noticed a Kharijite tendency in him before I quoted his footnote here. Whenever he talked about one of the Kharijites, he filled his speech with praise, tribute and commendation but, on the contrary, when he wanted to talk about someone having a Shiite tendency, he abridged -if he didn’t ignore him or criticized him- as possible as he could whatever personality that one had except for what he was obliged to mention unwillingly. The main cause behind his situation concerning Ziyad, the Kharijites and the Shia was because there was something in his heart towards Imam Ali... It was not but a fruit from the seed of Mo’awiya to resist Imam Ali (a.s.) in order to control the Muslims’ affairs. [↑](#footnote-ref-17)
18. It is the old name of Syria, Jordan, Lebanon and Palestine. [↑](#footnote-ref-18)
19. It would be better to show the reader a simple account of some of the horrid crimes committed by Samra:

    Imam Ahmad bin Hanbal mentioned in his *Musnad,* vol. 1, p. 25 a tradition narrated by ibn Abbas: “It was said to Umar that Samra had sold wine. He said: “Allah may kill Samra. The Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had said: Allah cursed the Jews; the fats were forbidden for them but they dissolved them and sold them.” Samra had committed crimes that the hard rocks would feel ashamed and shy with. He killed from Basra, when Ziyad appointed him as his successor, eight thousand persons! It was incredible number. You can imagine the great destruction happened to the umma because of those oppressive rulers. Eight thousands of innocent people were killed by Samra while he was just a temporary emir! And he didn’t feel ashamed or sorry about it. He answered Ziyad when asked him to know his innerness: “Don’t you fear that you might have killed an innocent one?” He answered in a way that was so near to the very filthy innerness of Ziyad: “If I had killed as double as them, I wouldn’t have feared.” He didn’t think that the umma had any dignity or value. The umma, under a rule like this, was insignificant thing. The killing of a man equaled nothing at all. It was enough for a procession of an emir like Samra, just when passing, to kill whomsoever without any guilt or sin. Samra passed by a man killed with a dagger by one of his knights. He saw him immerged in his blood but he did never feel sorry. He said his saying that explained his complete indifference: “If you hear that we ride our horses, you have to avoid our arrowheads.” He, with all his crimes and sins, was one of those, whose psychologies Mo’awiya had studied and found that they would satisfy his fancies and walk in his way. Samra himself acknowledged that when saying: “By Allah, if I obeyed Allah as I obeyed Mo’awiya, He would never punish me.” He obeyed Mo’awiya and disobeyed Allah, so what a torture he would face in Hell! This was a summary about some of Samra’s crimes, which couldn’t be included in this summary. Refer to at- Tabari’s *Tareekh,* vol. 4, p. 176, *al-Kaamil,* vol. 3, p. 229 and *al-Ghadeer, vol.* 11, pp. 29-30 to see more and more of this criminal’s sins. 1 He was the man who assassinated Imam Ali (a.s.) in the Mosque. [↑](#footnote-ref-19)
20. Holy Quran, 2:204-5 [↑](#footnote-ref-20)
21. He was the man who assassinated Imam Ali (a.s.) in the Mosque [↑](#footnote-ref-21)
22. Holy Quran, 2:207 [↑](#footnote-ref-22)
23. Refer toSharhNahjulBalagha*,* vol. 1, p. 361 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 2, p. 101 and vol. 11, p. 30 [↑](#footnote-ref-23)
24. I wonder about those, who sanctify all the companions without criticizing or blaming any of them, who had committed sins! How do they gather between this and the verdicts of the Holy Quran and the Sunna that contradict their thoughts? There are many Quranic verses and prophetic traditions talking about the hypocrisy spread among the Muslims during the reign of the Prophet (s.a.w.a.). If we supposed that there were neither Quranic verses nor prophetic traditions talking about the hypocrites among the Muslims, we wouldn’t sanctify and purify all the companions and wouldn’t trust in them all in all to depend upon their sayings and doings as undebatable evidences, whereas indeed the conducts of some of them destroyed the bases of Islam one after the other as Mo’awiya and his likes... so how about all the verses and traditions that exposed the hypocrites and warned the Muslims of them? This did not mean that all the companions were so. Among them there were those great companions, who were the example of justice and righteousness and who were to be honoured and glorified. But it became clear that Mo’awiya’s attempt was the cornerstone of the continuous war declared against Imam Ali (a.s.), who was the separative line between faith and hypocrisy as the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had described him in many of his traditions. In order to fight Imam Ali (a.s.) and defame him they created this lie and it became the first brick of their unjust construction. [↑](#footnote-ref-24)
25. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 358. We don’t want to mention the details of the event of al-Mugheera’s adultery for it had blackened some lines in history. Whoever wants to know about it-it was so famous in history- let refer to its sources. [↑](#footnote-ref-25)
26. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 358 [↑](#footnote-ref-26)
27. Ibid, p. 318 and vol. 3, p. 11, Muslim’s (Muslim here is a name of a man, who collected the prophetic traditions in a book called Saheeh) Saheeh, vol. 1, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-27)
28. Thus some of the historians became pleased to call this year so whereas this name, indeed, did never express the reality of this year, in which Mo’awiya had seized the rule of the Islamic umma. In fact it was the year of separation, difference and dissension and had nothing of unity. After sometime of writing these lines it happened that I read the book Mo’awiya bin Abu Sufyan in the scales. I read the comments about the reason of calling this year with this name. I found in the book a good attempt to weigh the matter with justice in spite of that the book, in some of its points, wronged the scales and slipped times and times so clearly but this had nothing to do with our subject.

    On p. 66 the author said: “If the history criticized him (Mo’awiya) rightfully, it wouldn’t describe him except as the separative of the unities. But it is the reader of history who will weigh the deeds and the men; where you find that some of the historians called the year when Mo’awiya seized the rule for himself alone as the year of the unity because he separated the umma into fighting groups that didn’t know how to agree with each other if they tried to agree! Then he left the umma after his death to separate into more groups during the reign of each caliph.”

    The author gave many examples about the plans of this separation until he said in, p. 188: “No one is more deviate and more ignorant than the historians, who called the year forty-one of hijra as the year of the unity because it was the year when Mo’awiya appropriated the caliphate for himself without letting anyone participate with him for the first age of Islam didn’t face any year, in which the umma separated as it separated in this year or dispersed as what happened in this year.” He went on showing Mo’awiya’s separative doings, which crumbled the tenacious Islamic unity and threatened its strong pillars. The Muslims still pick the bitter fruits of that Dark Age and still drink from its turbid water, in which those, who don’t live except in the infected environment, fish and hold the pick of destruction and walk in the same devious way that Mo’awiya walked in.

    Aj-Jahid had a valuable word concerning this point, in which the mercenary pens had played their round widely. We think that we have to quote it here because it explains the subject with evidences. He said in his thesis about the Umayyads in, p. 293-294 after relating some of the events that paved the way for Mo’awiya to seize the caliphate of the great Islamic umma: “Then Mo’awiya sat firmly on the throne and overcame the rest of the shura and all the Muslims; the Muhajireen and the Ansar (Muhajireen: the first Muslims, who emigrated from Mecca to Medina. Ansar: the people of Medina, who believed in the Prophet and assisted him and his companions), in the year, which they called as the year of the unity, It was not a year of unity but it was a year of separation, subdual, compulsion and surmounting. It was the year, in which the imamate was changed into hereditary rule and the caliphate into Caesarean position. His conduct was a combination of deviation and debauchery. He kept on his sins until he denied the tradition of the Prophet openly and contradicted his verdict about the illegitimate child and what had to be decided about the adulteress in spite of the consensus of the umma that Sumayya (Ziyad’s mother, whom Abu Sufyan committed adultery with) was not Abu Sufyan’s wife and so Mo’awiya, was to be considered as unbeliever rather than to be considered just as dissolute. Killing Hujr bin Adi, donating the revenue of Egypt to Amr bin al-Aas, the homage of the dissolute Yazeed (Mo’awiya’s son), appropriating the booties, choosing the walis according to fancy and voiding the legal laws before intercession and relationship were all of that kind, which denied the certified verdicts and the legal laws of the Sharia. There was no difference whether the unbelievers denied the Holy Quran or the Sunna if the Sunna was as famous as the verdict of the Holy Quran but one of them was greater than the other...and the punishment in the Hereafter would be greater. This was the first unbelieving among the umma and it was committed by him, who pretended to be the imam and the caliph of the umma. Many people of that age became unbelievers when they didn’t declare his (Mo’awiya’s) unbelieving. The juveniles of our time and the heresiarchs of our age exceeded by saying: “Don’t abuse Mo’awiya because he had a companionship with the Prophet. Abusing him is a heresy. He, who hates him, contradicts the Sunna.” They pretended that it was a part of the Sunna not to acquit from those, who denied the very Sunna!” This is enough to show the reader a side of many bad sides of Mo’awiya. On the other side it shows the corruption of the values where the truth was distorted, the rightfulness was marred and the concepts and the criteria were changed. This saying got great importance because the sayer was al-Jahiz. [↑](#footnote-ref-28)
29. This was an acknowledgement of Abu Hurayra imposed upon him by the association of ideas and the inner speech. [↑](#footnote-ref-29)
30. Ibn Abul Hadeed in his Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. l p.360, after mentioning this lie denied (from Eer to Thour) and corrected it with (from Eer to Ohad). Eer, Saur and Ohad were names of places (mountains) in Medina. [↑](#footnote-ref-30)
31. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360. In al-Ghadeer by al-Ameeny, vol. 5, p. 251 many of Hurayz’s obscene deeds and impudent fabrications towards Imam Ali (a.s.) were mentioned. We don’t wonder about all what Htirayz fabricated after we know that he was one of those, who cursed Imam Ali (a.s.) and that he wasn’t satisfied until he cursed him seventy times. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 250 and vol. 11, p. 87. Al-Hakim confirmed Hurayz’s enmity to Imam Ali (a.s.) (Al-Ghadeer, vol. 1, p. 87) but in spite of all that and unfortunately al-Bukhari depended upon him in his Saheeh as a trustworthy narrator of Hadith! [↑](#footnote-ref-31)
32. Ibid, p. 360 [↑](#footnote-ref-32)
33. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 356 and al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen by al-Jahiz, vol. 2, p. 209 [↑](#footnote-ref-33)
34. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 256, al-Ghadeer, vol. 2, p. 102. In al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, pp. 257-271 there is a simplified discussion about Mo’awiya’s heresy of cursing Imam Ali (a.s.) and a wonderful comment about it. [↑](#footnote-ref-34)
35. It was the name of Abu Bakr’s tribe. [↑](#footnote-ref-35)
36. The name of Umar’s tribe [↑](#footnote-ref-36)
37. The tribe of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) Hashem was the great grandfather of the Prophet. [↑](#footnote-ref-37)
38. Refer to Sulh al-Hasan, p. 225, Murooj az-Zahab by al-Masodi, vol. 2, p. 342, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 2, p. 357, al-Hasan bin Ali, p. 212, al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, pp. 283-284 and ad-Da’wa by the father of the author of this book, vol. 1, pp. 273, 312 [↑](#footnote-ref-38)
39. It was mentioned in Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 77 that al-Mugheera had said: “By Allah, I hadn’t been sincere to him (Ali) before and I will never be sincere to him as long as I live.” How fair and honest companion he was!!! [↑](#footnote-ref-39)
40. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 356, al-Ghadeer, vol. 2, p. 102, (al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen) by al-Jahiz, vol. 10, p. 290 and ad-Da’iua vol. 1, p. 155. [↑](#footnote-ref-40)
41. Imam Ali (a.s.) many times prayed to Allah (s.w.t.) against the people of Iraq like his saying: “O Allah, set up the man of Saqeef (the tribe al-Hajjaj belonged to) to rule them and to make them drink the bitter sap of aloes.” Imam Husain (a.s.) also had prayed to Allah (s.w.t.) against the people of Iraq in the day of at-Taff (the day of Aashura’ or the day of Karbala’, the day when he was martyred) especially his saying: “O Allah, and don’t make the walis content with them at all...” [↑](#footnote-ref-41)
42. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 356 and vol. 3, p. 16 [↑](#footnote-ref-42)
43. Thus the history had described him. He might be of the family of monkeys or pigs! [↑](#footnote-ref-43)
44. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 357 and ad-Da’wa, vol. 1, p. 210 [↑](#footnote-ref-44)
45. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol, l, p. 356, al-Kaamil by al-Mubarrid, vol. 2 pp 677-678. He added: ‘...bin Abd Manaf, the cousin of the Messenger of Allah (s.a.w.a.) and the husband of his daughter Fatima (s.a.).’ The author found it too difficult to mention the curse so he said: ‘the (doing) of Allah be upon Ali.’ [↑](#footnote-ref-45)
46. Aayaan Ash Shia, vol. 35, p. 78 and the Thesis of Al-Jahiz, p. 15 [↑](#footnote-ref-46)
47. The commander of the believers [↑](#footnote-ref-47)
48. Holy Quran, 4:43 [↑](#footnote-ref-48)
49. Refer to Asbaab an-Nozool (by As-Suyooti), p. 63 [↑](#footnote-ref-49)
50. Holy Quran, 33:33 [↑](#footnote-ref-50)
51. Holy Quran, 3:61 [↑](#footnote-ref-51)
52. Majmaul Bayaan, vol. 5, p. 112 and al-Kashhaf, vol. 1, p. 397 [↑](#footnote-ref-52)
53. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 195 [↑](#footnote-ref-53)
54. Ehyaaul Oloom, vol. 3, p. 121, Al-Ghazzaali had another opinion contradicting his previous one showing that he recovered his senses. It was mentioned in Sirrul Aalameen, p. 10. It seemed that his situations changed according to the motive of writing this book or that. [↑](#footnote-ref-54)
55. Ehyaaul Oloom, vol. 3, p. 122 [↑](#footnote-ref-55)
56. Wahshi was the one, who assassinated Hamza, the Holy Prophet’s uncle, in the battle of Ohad. He was instigated by Hind, the wife of Abu Sufyan and the mother of Mo’awiya. [↑](#footnote-ref-56)
57. Wahshi in Arabic means: beastly [↑](#footnote-ref-57)
58. Al-Isteaab, vol. 3, p. 61 [↑](#footnote-ref-58)
59. Ehyaaul Oloom, vol. 3, p. 121 [↑](#footnote-ref-59)
60. Ibid, p. 120 [↑](#footnote-ref-60)
61. The Thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 294 [↑](#footnote-ref-61)
62. The Thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 295 [↑](#footnote-ref-62)
63. A scientific degree among the ulema [↑](#footnote-ref-63)
64. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 211 from Tafseer Roohul Bayan, vol. 4, p. 142 by Ismael al-Buroossawi [↑](#footnote-ref-64)
65. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 4, p. 6 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 326 [↑](#footnote-ref-65)
66. Muqaddamaat ibn Khaldoon**,** p**.** 217 [↑](#footnote-ref-66)
67. The Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)’s family [↑](#footnote-ref-67)
68. Muqaddamaat ibn Khaldoon,p**.** 446 [↑](#footnote-ref-68)
69. Al-Ghadeer,vol.10, p. 209 [↑](#footnote-ref-69)
70. Ibid, p. 210 [↑](#footnote-ref-70)
71. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-71)
72. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 210 [↑](#footnote-ref-72)
73. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-73)
74. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-74)
75. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-75)
76. Mustahab refers to the optional religious duties. [↑](#footnote-ref-76)
77. Refer to Ehyaaul Oloom and Sirrul Aalameen to see the two contradicted situations of al-Ghazzaali about Yazeed and the murder of al-Husain (a.s.) [↑](#footnote-ref-77)
78. Refer to Yanaabeeul Mawaddah, p. 256, an-Niza’ wal-Takhassum, p. 5, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 55, Kashful Astar, p. 85, Abu Hurayra by Sharafuddeen al-Aamily, p. 126, ad-Da’wa, vol. 1, p. 198, al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, pp. 130, 252, vol. 8, p. 266. The author of al-Ghadeer mentioned that al-Hakim had collected all the traditions related to this subject in his Mustadrak, vol. 4, pp. 479-482. [↑](#footnote-ref-78)
79. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. , p. 66, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 250, 260, the thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 80 [↑](#footnote-ref-79)
80. Usmaan [↑](#footnote-ref-80)
81. Sharh Nahjul Balagah, vol. 1, p. 232 [↑](#footnote-ref-81)
82. As-Seerah an Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 229 [↑](#footnote-ref-82)
83. Refer to al-Istee’ab, vol. 4, p. 86, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 4, p. 208, al-Ghadeer, vol. 3, p. 223. Aj-Jahiz referred to that in his Thesis, p. 78 (the preferability of Hashem to Abd Shams) and he referred to Abu Sufyan’s words of blasphemy after his being a Muslim [↑](#footnote-ref-83)
84. Al-Issaba, vol. 2, p. 172, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 285, vol. 10, p. 83 [↑](#footnote-ref-84)
85. Imam Ali (a.s.), the Voice of Human Justice, pp. 207-208 (vol. 4, p. 771) [↑](#footnote-ref-85)
86. He meant the caliphate. Taym was the tribe of Abu Bakr and Adi was the tribe of Umar. [↑](#footnote-ref-86)
87. The reader plight not ignores what Abu Sufyan would swear by. The Echo of his word in one of his wars against the Holy Prophet was still roving. He said: “Glorify Hubal!” (Hubal was the name of an idol in the pre-Islamic age). The end of this saying of him has many and many evidences ...but! [↑](#footnote-ref-87)
88. Refer to al-Istee’ab, vol. 4, pp. 87-88, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 130, Imam Ali, vol. 1, p. 319, an-Niza’ wet-Takhassum, p. 5,27, Mu’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 193, Assl ash-Shia, pp. 55-56, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, pp. 285,339 vol. 10, p. 83 and Imam Ali, the Voice of Justice, p. 249 [↑](#footnote-ref-88)
89. An Niza’ wet-Takhassum, p. 27, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 4, p. 51, Murooj az-Zahab, vol. 2, pp. 351, 353, Imam Ali, vol. 1, p. 322, al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 83, in Imam Ali, the Voice of Justice, p. 209 (vol.4, p. 772) there is another word somehow like it or it may be more bitter “Get up! The rule that you fought us for came to us.” [↑](#footnote-ref-89)
90. When Wahshi killed Hamza, Hind (Abu Sufyan’s wife) came to the field, split the chest of Hamza and ate his liver to put out her spite! [↑](#footnote-ref-90)
91. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, pp. 79-80 [↑](#footnote-ref-91)
92. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 15. Ibn Abul Hadeed concluded when explaining the speech of Imam Ali (a.s.) that these two were meant by Imams of deviation. [↑](#footnote-ref-92)
93. This book was printed on the margins of his book as-Sawaaeq al-Mohreqa [↑](#footnote-ref-93)
94. Among the fabricated traditions were the following: “The trustees are seven, The Tablet, The Pen, Israfel, Michael, Gabriel, Mohammad and Mo’awiya.” In some traditions the number become three “Allah has entrusted Gabriel, me (Muhammad); and Mo’awiya with His revelation.... and Mo’awiya was about to be sent as prophet because of his great knowledge and his being entrusted with the revelation of my God. Allah has forgiven ‘Mo’awiya sins, rewarded him in full, taught him His book and has guided him well and made him as a guide for people.” Refer to Al Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 262. [↑](#footnote-ref-94)
95. Refer to Asl ash-Shia, p. 50 [↑](#footnote-ref-95)
96. In his book (The dispute between Islam and the idolatry) he meant by Islam the Sunni and by idolatry the Shia. My father (Allah may have mercy upon him) answered him with a scientific answer hoping to firm the unity between the Muslims and to clear the sphere of every blemish besides refuting his lies and fabrications in an honest way and a good will where he didn’t intend but to show the truth and to get the Muslims to their real source of Islam, the religion of leniency, love and cordiality before the biased separators tried to pollute it as possible as they could and used every means to separate the umma and to split its unity. But unfortunately the fate didn’t respite him to complete his book in order to get to his aim but what he had done was enough to answer al-Qusseimi, whose book with its two volumes was but a heap of repeated curses and abuses. [↑](#footnote-ref-96)
97. In his book (The Sunna and the Shia or the Wahhabis and the Raafeza (deniers)) and other books, it sufficed him to have such a false, deviative and destructive book filled with intrigues, lies and abuses. [↑](#footnote-ref-97)
98. In much of what he wrote and commented like his poisonous shameful impudent comments, which was full of abuses, in his book ‘Mukhtasar Minhaj as-Sunna’, in which he defamed many ulema and personalities of the Shia in a shameless dishonest way. All that was out of his latent hatred and poisonous passion

    What he writes in al-Azhar magazine is clear evidence showing polluted psychology. Unfortunately this magazine is established by the university of al-Azhar; this great religious establishment, whose duty imposes upon it to firm and spread the true religion, to strive to remove the sectarianism, to unite all the Muslims and to purify the Muslim society from its enemies, who slips it to separate the Muslims and split their unity.

    Today sheikh of al-Azhar Professor Shaltoot has, after achieving his great decision of teaching the Shia jurisprudence in this university, to achieve another important step by silencing this cawing voice of al-Khateeb because the structure won’t be erected as long as there is someone demolishing the base with his pick. [↑](#footnote-ref-98)
99. Holy Quran, 61:8 [↑](#footnote-ref-99)
100. Holy Quran, 11:88 [↑](#footnote-ref-100)
101. He was a famous poet. He lived during the Abbasid age. He used to defend the Hashemites and to criticize the rulers in his poems. [↑](#footnote-ref-101)
102. Mahram: the near relative, with whom marriage is not permissible. [↑](#footnote-ref-102)
103. Refer to as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 5, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 21, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 38, al-Abbas, p. 17 and Yanaabeeul Mawaddah, vol. 2, p. 90 [↑](#footnote-ref-103)
104. Ibid, p. 4 Ibnul Aseer, in his Tareekh, p. 209, mentioned this event in another way. He said that the Jew was a rich merchant and that made Harb envious and angry. He sent him someone to kill him and seize his wealth. The author added that they prosecuted their suit to an-Najashi the king of Abyssinia but he refused to intervene between them. Then Nufeil bin Abdul Uzzaa al-Adawi judged between them. He said to Harb: “O Abu Amr! Do you dispute with a man, who is taller than you, more handsome, stronger, and less blameable, have more sons, more generous, more able to quarrel than you ... etc.?” It was mentioned in Haleef Bani Makhzoom, p. 27 in a way someone different and it was mentioned in al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen, vol. 1, p. 293. [↑](#footnote-ref-104)
105. Ibn Abul Heed said in his Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 39 when he talked about the nation that Almighty Allah had sent Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) as prophet for: “Those, who didn’t deny the existence of the Creator and the resurrection among the Arabs, were very few. They were God-fearing and pious. They refrained from committing obscenities. Among them were Abdullah (the Prophet’s father), Abdul Muttalib and his son Abu Taalib ... etc.” [↑](#footnote-ref-105)
106. Refer to al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 1, p. 261, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 23 and Murooj az-Zahab, vol. 2, p. 128. [↑](#footnote-ref-106)
107. Refer to As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 2, p. 21, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 4, al-Abbas, p. 17 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 352. [↑](#footnote-ref-107)
108. Refer to Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, pp. 6-7, Murooj az-Zahab, vol. 2, p. 281 and Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 79, 91 [↑](#footnote-ref-108)
109. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 129, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 23, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, p. 178, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 42, al-Abbas, p. 18. [↑](#footnote-ref-109)
110. Al-Majaalis as-Saniyya, vol. 4, p. 36 [↑](#footnote-ref-110)
111. It was one of the Arab tribes at that time. [↑](#footnote-ref-111)
112. Refer to as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 129, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 48, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 8 and Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, p. 10. [↑](#footnote-ref-112)
113. Refer to Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, p. 9 [↑](#footnote-ref-113)
114. Refer to as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 135-137, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 66-68, 79 and Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 28. [↑](#footnote-ref-114)
115. Ibid, pp. 131-133 and Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 2, p. 255 to know more about this vision [↑](#footnote-ref-115)
116. The surname of Abdul Muttalib [↑](#footnote-ref-116)
117. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 133, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 64, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 127-128, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 2, p. 255. [↑](#footnote-ref-117)
118. With reference to that when he was ordered to dig the well of Zamzam ... and when water welled from under the hoofs of his horse when he was on his way to the judgement of Quraysh that his companions were about to die of thirst but the people of Quraysh refused to give them even a sip of water. Allah (s.w.t.) granted him that flowing water, from which he watered the all even those who prevented him, and hence they submitted to him before they reached to the rule. History repeated itself when Mo’awiya prevented Imam Ali (a.s.) and his army from water but when Imam Ali (a.s.) controlled the drinking fountains, he didn’t prevent them from it ... and then the same story of Yazeed with Imam Husain (a.s.)! [↑](#footnote-ref-118)
119. Qays and Muzar were two tribes of the Arabia. [↑](#footnote-ref-119)
120. Refer to as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 133 and As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 65. [↑](#footnote-ref-120)
121. Abdul Muttalib. [↑](#footnote-ref-121)
122. Isbatul Wasiyya, p. 87 [↑](#footnote-ref-122)
123. It was the name of Abu Taalib. Abu Taalib was his surname. [↑](#footnote-ref-123)
124. Refer to Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 3, p. 7, vol. 39, p. 125, Umdat at-Taalib, p. 6, al-Manaqib, vol. 1, p. 21, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 47 and Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 183. [↑](#footnote-ref-124)
125. Al-Manaqib, vol. 1, p. 21, al-Abbas, p. 19, Aayaansh Shia, vol. 39, p. 125 [↑](#footnote-ref-125)
126. In al-Majaalis as-Saniyya, vol. 4, p. 37 and Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 43 there is an addition after this: “O Abu Taalib, if you remain alive until his days, you will know that I am the most discerning and the most knowing about him ... etc.” [↑](#footnote-ref-126)
127. Refer to Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 43. It was mentioned in another ways in Isbatul Wasiyya, p. 107 and Al-Hujja, p. 77. [↑](#footnote-ref-127)
128. Two surnames of Abu Taalib. Sheikhul Batha’ means: Sheikh of (the valley) or of Mecca. Bayzatul Balad means: the master of the country. [↑](#footnote-ref-128)
129. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 137 [↑](#footnote-ref-129)
130. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 9, vol. 3, p. 461, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 99, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 53, the Thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 109, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 198, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 124 and Imam Ali (a.s.); The Voice of Justice, vol. 1, p. 55. [↑](#footnote-ref-130)
131. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 461, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. , p. 17, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 99, al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 14, al-Majaalis by Sa’lab, vol. 1, p. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-131)
132. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-132)
133. Refer to al-Abbas, pp. 18-19, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 302, 475, Ikmaluddeen, p. 102, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, pp. 190, 200 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 390, 395. [↑](#footnote-ref-133)
134. Thus he was described by the historians. Refer to Isbatul Wassiyya, pp. 107-108. [↑](#footnote-ref-134)
135. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 79, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 134, Abu Taalib, p. 23, Hashem and Umayya, p. 157, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 198. [↑](#footnote-ref-135)
136. Qassama means swearing. The relatives of the killed person gathered to swear that a certain person was the killer if there was no clear evidence. [↑](#footnote-ref-136)
137. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 461, Saheeh of al-Bukhari, vol. 2, p. 196. [↑](#footnote-ref-137)
138. Two Arab tribes [↑](#footnote-ref-138)
139. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 462, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 98, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 152. [↑](#footnote-ref-139)
140. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 80, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 138 [↑](#footnote-ref-140)
141. The most famous idols of Quraysh [↑](#footnote-ref-141)
142. Another famous idol [↑](#footnote-ref-142)
143. This event was mentioned in al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 346 with reference to Sharh al-Bukhari by al-Qastalani, vol. 2, p. 227, al-Mawahib al-Laduniyya, vol. 1, p. 1, p. 48, al-Khasaaesul Kubra, vol. 1, pp. 86, 124 and Tulbat at-Taalib, p. 42. Refer to Al-Hujja, p. 91, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 388, Abu Taalib, p. 49, Imam Ali (a.s.), the Voice of Justice, p. 34, vol. 1, p. 55 and Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 126. [↑](#footnote-ref-143)
144. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 80, as-Seerah al-Halbiyya, vol. 1, p. 138, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 129, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, p. 11. [↑](#footnote-ref-144)
145. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 88 [↑](#footnote-ref-145)
146. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 22, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 348, al-Abbas, pp. 18, 21 [↑](#footnote-ref-146)
147. It was a place that was taken as a market in the pre-Islamic time at a distance from Arafa. [↑](#footnote-ref-147)
148. Refer to As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 89, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 139, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 9, al-Abbas 20 and Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 129. [↑](#footnote-ref-148)
149. A name of a family or a tribe [↑](#footnote-ref-149)
150. As-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, p. 190, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 190, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 139, Abu Taalib, p. 32. [↑](#footnote-ref-150)
151. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 180, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 137-138, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 124, 129. Umar Abu an-Nasr mentioned this in his book Fatima Bint Muhammad, p. 18 and in his book Muhammad, the Arab Prophet, p. 47. It was mentioned in the book Abbas, p. 20. Abu Taalib saw the same thing in the day when the Quranic verse of al-Inthar (the warning) was revealed. He saw that the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had made forty persons drink from one cup of milk as it was narrated by Imam Ali (a.s.) (s). All of the historians mentioned this event so there is no need to mention the reference books. [↑](#footnote-ref-151)
152. When As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 190 and as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, and vol. 1, p. 140 mentioned this event, they added: “Before the caravan reached Busra it stopped at a monastery. The monk of the monastery said to Abu Taalib: What relation is between this boy and you? Abu Taalib said: He is my son. The monk said: He is not your son and his father must not be alive because these qualities are of a prophet and the sign of the prophet according to the old books that his father dies while he is still in his mother’s womb and then his mother dies when he is yet a child. Abu Taalib asked: What is a prophet? The monk said: It is he, who receives revelations from the Heaven to inform the people of the earth of them. Abu Taalib said: Allah is more glorious than what you say. The monk warned Abu Taalib and asked him to protect this boy from the Jews. The caravan passed by another monastery and there was a same conversation between Abu Taalib and the monk of the other monastery. After that Abu Taalib said to his nephew: O my nephew! Do you hear what they say? He said: O uncle, don’t deny the power of Allah! [↑](#footnote-ref-152)
153. As-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, pp. 191-194, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 90-92, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 139-142, at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, pp. 22-24, al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, pp. 23-24, Qissas al-Arab, vol. 1, pp. 99-100, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 59-61, 62, 129, 130, Abu Taalib, p. 31. [↑](#footnote-ref-153)
154. The mother of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) [↑](#footnote-ref-154)
155. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 345-346, Al-Hujja, p. 77-78, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 148, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 185 [↑](#footnote-ref-155)
156. She was one of the wealthiest people of Mecca. Later on she became the wife of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.). [↑](#footnote-ref-156)
157. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 106, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. , p. 165, Fatima bint Muhammad, p. 44, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, Abu Taalib, p. 4, Al-Hujja, p. 36, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 135, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 312 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 274. Some of this speech was mentioned in Ejaazul Quran by al-Baqillany, p. 234, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 137 and al-Kaamil by al-Mobarrid, vol. 3, pp. 1174-1175. [↑](#footnote-ref-157)
158. Refer to al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 348, at-Tara’if by ibn Tawoos, p. 8, Zeyaaul Aalameen by Sheikh Abul Hasan ash-Shareef, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 22 and al-Abbas, pp. 18, 21. [↑](#footnote-ref-158)
159. Holy Quran, 26:214 [↑](#footnote-ref-159)
160. Al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 41 [↑](#footnote-ref-160)
161. He was one of the Prophet’s uncles. [↑](#footnote-ref-161)
162. Al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 41, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 321 [↑](#footnote-ref-162)
163. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 22 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 355 [↑](#footnote-ref-163)
164. Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 450, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 355 and Sheikhul Abtah, p. 22 [↑](#footnote-ref-164)
165. Refer to al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 41, at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 63, Ghaayatul Maraam, pp. 70, 78, 153, 164, 185, 320, 322, 613, al-Ghadeer, vol. 2, pp. 279-283, vol. 3, p. 209, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, pp. 98-102, vol. 39, p. 164, the Thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 31 and ad-Da’wa by the father the author of this book, vol. 1, pp. 124, 241. [↑](#footnote-ref-165)
166. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 355 [↑](#footnote-ref-166)
167. Refer to at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 58, al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 216, as-Seerah al-Hashamiyya, vol. 1, p. 264, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 176, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 306, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 305, Yanaabeeul Mawaddah, p. 168 (vol. 2, p. 28), ar-Riyaaz an-Nazara, vol. 2, p. 159, Ghaayatul Maraam, p. 500, Abu Taalib, p. 50, al-Abbas, p. 23, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 356, as-Sa’labi’s Tafseer, Oyoonul Aasaar, vol. 1, p. 94 and Asnaa al-Mataalib, p. 10. [↑](#footnote-ref-167)
168. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 314, al-Hujja ala as-Saaheb elaa Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 63, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 3, p. 9, vol. 39, p. 144, Hashem and Umayya, p. 163. [↑](#footnote-ref-168)
169. Refer to As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 1, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 304, al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 116, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 272, Al-Hujja, p. 65, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 403, 444, 445, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 3, p. 9, vol. 16, p. 10, 11, vol. 39, p. 139, Tafseer of Ali bin Ibrahim, p. 353, Abu Taalib, p. 50, Hashem and Umayya, p. 163, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 357, Osadul Ghaba, vol. 1, p. 287, Asnaa al-Matalib, p. 6, al-Awayil by al-Assakari and the Thesis of al-Jahiz, pp. 49, 51. [↑](#footnote-ref-169)
170. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 272, 314, Al-Hujja, p. 65, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 11, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 38, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 19, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 3, p. 9, vol. 16, p. 11, vol. 39, p. 144, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, pp. 196, 201, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 356 and the Thesis of al-Jahiz, p. 49. [↑](#footnote-ref-170)
171. Abu Ya’la was the Surname of Hamza. [↑](#footnote-ref-171)
172. Another name of Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) [↑](#footnote-ref-172)
173. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, al-Hujja ala as-Saaheb elaa Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 71, al-Manaqib, p. 36, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 454, al-Abbas, p. 22, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 16, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 144, 145 and Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-173)
174. Refer to al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 358 [↑](#footnote-ref-174)
175. This showed the secret of concealing the faith by Abu Taalib; otherwise they wouldn’t go to him complaining against his nephew unless they thought that Abu Taalib had the same belief of theirs. But if they knew that he had believed in the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.), they would declare the war against him and the results would be very bad against the new mission, which was still fresh and in the beginning of its long difficult way. [↑](#footnote-ref-175)
176. We don’t think that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) thought that his uncle would fail him whereas he knew well his uncle’s firm situation but those tears were because the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) felt pity for his uncle, who would be in a very critical situation for the sake of him. [↑](#footnote-ref-176)
177. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, pp. 64, 67, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 196, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 323, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, pp. 283, 285, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 305, 306, Abu Taalib, p. 57, 61, Hashem and Umayya, p. 166, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 127, 128, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 363. [↑](#footnote-ref-177)
178. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 306, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 85, 197, Samaraat al-Awraq, vol. 2, p. 4, al-Abbas, pp. 22-23, Hashem and Umayya 167, al-Kashshaf, vol. 1, p. 448 (vol. 2, p. 10), Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 9, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 186, al-Manaqib, p. 34, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 7, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 128, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 322, al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 116, Al-Hujja, p. 63, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 27, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 334. [↑](#footnote-ref-178)
179. Refer to al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 334, Asna al-Matalib, p. 14 [↑](#footnote-ref-179)
180. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 67, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 323, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 197, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, p. 286, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 306, Abu Taalib, pp. 61, 63, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 446, Tazkeratul Khawaas, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 306, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 129. [↑](#footnote-ref-180)
181. Abd Manaf was the father of Hashem and Hashem was the grandfather of Abu Taalib and Muhammad (s.a.w.a.). [↑](#footnote-ref-181)
182. The poem was mentioned in as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, p. 288. The first three verses were mentioned in As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 20 and as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 33. The poem was mentioned in Al-Hujja, pp. 79, 80 without the last two verses. The first four verses were mentioned in Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 148. It was mentioned in al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 362, 363 and in Sheikhul Abtah, p. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-182)
183. Refer to Al-Hujja, p. 61, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 349, 352, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 26-27, Ithabatul Wassiyya, p. 96 and Abu Taalib, pp. 67-68. [↑](#footnote-ref-183)
184. Qussay was the tribe of the Hashemites (their great grandfather). [↑](#footnote-ref-184)
185. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 350-351, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 149 [↑](#footnote-ref-185)
186. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 395, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 28, Al-Hujja, pp. 106, 108, Samaratul Awraaq, vol. 2, pp. 3-4, Abu Taalib, p. 63, al-Manaqib, p. 35. [↑](#footnote-ref-186)
187. Hashem; the grandfather [↑](#footnote-ref-187)
188. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, Al-Hujja, p. 72, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 28, Hashem and Umayya, pp. 173-174, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 12-13, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 143, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 336. [↑](#footnote-ref-188)
189. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, Al-Hujja, p. 74, Abu Taalib, p. 33, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 11, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 150 [↑](#footnote-ref-189)
190. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. , Al-Hujja, p. 74, Abu Taalib, p. 33, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 11, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 150. [↑](#footnote-ref-190)
191. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 313, Al-Hujja, p. 50, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 335, Hashem and Umayya, p. 164, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 30, Divan Abu Taalib, pp. 9-10, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 9, p. 42. [↑](#footnote-ref-191)
192. Holy Quran, 72:1-2 [↑](#footnote-ref-192)
193. The Arabs use the words uncle and nephew for persons even if they are not direct uncles and direct nephews just because the mother or the grandmother is from that certain family or tribe. [↑](#footnote-ref-193)
194. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 2, p. 314, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, p. 375, Al-Hujja, p. 56, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 337, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 144, vol. 16, p. 27, Hashem and Umayya, p. 164. [↑](#footnote-ref-194)
195. Al-Hujja, pp. 56-57, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 521, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 18, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 87-88, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 37, al-Abbas, p. 22, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 331, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 16, p. 19. [↑](#footnote-ref-195)
196. Al-Hujja, p. 62, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 314, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 336-337, Aayaan ash-Shia, vols. 142-143, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 9-10 [↑](#footnote-ref-196)
197. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 312-313, Al-Hujja, pp. 37-38, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 333-334, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 13, Hashem and Umayya, pp. 171-172, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 141. [↑](#footnote-ref-197)
198. Refer to Mo’jamul Buldan by Yaqoot al-Hamawi, vol. 5, p. 270 (vol. 3, p. 347). [↑](#footnote-ref-198)
199. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 74, al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 59, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, pp. 375-376. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 173, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 374, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 307, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 363. [↑](#footnote-ref-199)
200. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 310, al-Manaqib, vol. 1, p. 37, Al-Hujja, p. 70, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 358, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 12, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 276, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 38, Abu Taalib, pp. 73-74. [↑](#footnote-ref-200)
201. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 313, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 1, pp. 377-379, Al-Hujja, pp. 39-40, Hashem and Umayya 172-173, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 15, al-Manaqib vol. 1, p. 36, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 35-36, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 332-333, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 140-141. [↑](#footnote-ref-201)
202. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 313, Al-Hujja, pp. 43-44, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 38-39, Hashem and Umayya, p. 173, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 331-332, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 14, al-Abbas, p. 22, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 141-142. [↑](#footnote-ref-202)
203. Abd Shams, Nawfal, Taym and Makhzoom were great grandfathers of some families of Quraysh. [↑](#footnote-ref-203)
204. Ma’jamul Buldan, vol. 5, p. 270 (vol. 3, p. 347), as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, p. 11, and the first verse was mentioned in As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 273 and as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 375 as a first verse of one of Abu Taalib’s poems. [↑](#footnote-ref-204)
205. Refer to As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 2, pp. 276-277, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 381-382, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, p. 160, al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, p. 71, Al-Hujja, p. 41, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 364, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 425, 523 and Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 9, pp. 130, 132. [↑](#footnote-ref-205)
206. Holy Quran, 2:260 [↑](#footnote-ref-206)
207. Al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 2, pp. 61-62, Al-Hujja, pp. 45-46, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 523, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 146, Eemaan Abu Taalib, pp. 15-16, al-Manaqib vol. 1, p. 37, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 369, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 37. [↑](#footnote-ref-207)
208. The Emigrant Muslims in Abyssinia [↑](#footnote-ref-208)
209. As-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, pp. 17-19, al-Istee’ab, vol. 2, p. 92, Nasab Quraysh, p. 431, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 365-366, Divan Abu Taalib, pp. 6-7, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 134 [↑](#footnote-ref-209)
210. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 86-87, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 390-391, Thamaratul Awraq, vol. 2, pp. 14-15, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 39-41, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 164-165, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 367-368, al-Abbas, p. 21, Imam Ali (a.s.), the Voice of Justice, p. 36 (vol. 1, pp. 59-60). [↑](#footnote-ref-210)
211. This was a definite conclusion because when Abu Taalib witnessed that his nephew was the most truthful and the most loyal one among the Arabs, surely he would believe him when he said that he was the Messenger of Allah, whereas the polytheists of Quraysh, who were certain that Muhammad was the most truthful -and they always called him the truthful, the loyal-before the mission, after the mission they began to describe him oppositely. They described him as magician and liar. It was because they hadn’t believed in him as Prophet. [↑](#footnote-ref-211)
212. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 86, 281, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, pp. 388, 391, Abu Taalib, p. 91, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 368. [↑](#footnote-ref-212)
213. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 1, p. 342, vol. 7, p. 401, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 17, Al-Hujja, pp. 97-98, al-Manaqib, vol. 1, p. 35, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 2, pp. 120-121, vol. 35, p. 145, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 37 [↑](#footnote-ref-213)
214. Refer to As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 84, al-Ghadeer, vol. 3, p. 99, vol. 7, p. 373, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 44, Al-Hujja, p. 67, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 204, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 10, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 10 and Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 161. [↑](#footnote-ref-214)
215. Ghusl means washing the dead in a certain way according to the laws of the Islamic Sharia. [↑](#footnote-ref-215)
216. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 314, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 445, 523, 529, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 43, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 374, 387, Al-Hujja, p. 67, Abu Taalib, p. 89, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, pp. 191, 204, Tafseer Ali bin Ibrahim, p. 355, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 10, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 10, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 139, 161. [↑](#footnote-ref-216)
217. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 314, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 445, 523, 529, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 43, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 374, 387, Al-Hujja, p. 67, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 204, Eemaan Abu Taalib, p. 10, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 161. [↑](#footnote-ref-217)
218. Sheikh Abtah, p. 44 quoted from al-Majlisi, al-Mufeed and ibn Hajar in his Issaba, vol. 7, p. 112. [↑](#footnote-ref-218)
219. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 88, 281, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 291, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, p. 58, at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 80, ibnul Aseer’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 63, al-Manaqib, vol. 1, p. 38, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, pp. 430, 528, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 51, Abu Taalib, p. 91, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 377, Imam Ali (a.s.), the Voice of Justice, p. 36 (vol. 1, p. 60), Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 127. [↑](#footnote-ref-219)
220. She was the Prophet’s wife. [↑](#footnote-ref-220)
221. There were different news about the death of Abu Taalib (a.s.) and Khadija (a.s.). Some historians said that Abu Taalib died in Rajab, Ramazan, Shawwal or Zulqadah and whether in the tenth or eleventh year after the mission. The historians where different about who had died before the other and how many days were between their deaths [↑](#footnote-ref-221)
222. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, p. 81, ibnul Aseer’s Tareekh, vol. 4, p. 64, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 322, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 353, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 286, al-Seera al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, pp. 61-62, al-Manaqib, vol. 38, p. 1, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 529, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 52, Ala Hamish as-Seerah, vol. 3, pp. 149-150, Muhammad, the Arab Prophet, pp. 65-66. [↑](#footnote-ref-222)
223. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 10, Al-Hujja, p. 17, 64, 103, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 543, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 51, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 197, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 3, p. 7, vol. 39, p. 127. [↑](#footnote-ref-223)
224. He described the famine they were suffering. [↑](#footnote-ref-224)
225. Refer to Yanaabeeul Mawaddah, p. 263 (vol. 2, p. 141), Ghaayatul Maraam, p. 497 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 378, 388. [↑](#footnote-ref-225)
226. He was the elder brother of Ali. [↑](#footnote-ref-226)
227. Abu Yazeed was Aqeel’s surname. [↑](#footnote-ref-227)
228. Al-Isteaab, vol. 3, p. 157, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, Al-Hujja, p. 34, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 15, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 202, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 377, 387. [↑](#footnote-ref-228)
229. Badr was the first battle between the Muslims and the polytheists of Quraysh. [↑](#footnote-ref-229)
230. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 316, 334, vol. 1, pp. 305-306, Al-Hujja, p. 84, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 47-48, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 151. It was mentioned in Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 595 in a way different from this. [↑](#footnote-ref-230)
231. Refer to al-Aghani by Abul Faraj al-Isfahani, vol. 17, p. 28, al-Ghadeer, vol. 1, p. 378, vol. 2, p. 4, Tilbat at-Taalib, p. 48 and Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 309. [↑](#footnote-ref-231)
232. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 311, Al-Hujja, p. 15, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 10, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 189, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 374, 387, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136. [↑](#footnote-ref-232)
233. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 311, Tafser of Ali bin Ibrahim, pp. 355,490, Al Hujja, pp. 3-5, Al Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 379, 386 [↑](#footnote-ref-233)
234. Holy Quran, 58:22 [↑](#footnote-ref-234)
235. Al-Kashshaf by az-Zamakhshari, vol. 2, p. 444, vol. 4, p. 396, Tafseer of ibn Kaseer, vol. 4, p. 330 [↑](#footnote-ref-235)
236. vol. 28, p. 19 [↑](#footnote-ref-236)
237. Holy Quran, 60:1 [↑](#footnote-ref-237)
238. Holy Quran, 9:23-24 [↑](#footnote-ref-238)
239. Al-Kashf, p. 548 (vol. 2, pp. 201-202) [↑](#footnote-ref-239)
240. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-240)
241. vol. 10, p. 34 [↑](#footnote-ref-241)
242. Holy Quran, 5:54 [↑](#footnote-ref-242)
243. Holy Quran, 5:81 [↑](#footnote-ref-243)
244. Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 6, p. 122 [↑](#footnote-ref-244)
245. Al-Kashshaf by az-Zamakhshari, vol. 1, p. 430 (vol. 1, p. 520) [↑](#footnote-ref-245)
246. Holy Quran, 48:29 [↑](#footnote-ref-246)
247. Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 26, p. 80, al-Kashshaf, vol. 3, p. 115 (vol. 4, p. 375) [↑](#footnote-ref-247)
248. Islam doesn’t accept such strictness and inflexibility that one may think that Islam calls for boycott and fighting anyone, who is not a Muslim. Islam has given (ahlul-thimmah) the Jews and the Christians, who live in the state of the Muslims, same rights like the rights of the Muslims; such as keeping their properties, their lives and their honors. Islam has legislated ideal laws to control the relation between the peoples of different religions and beliefs but this strictness is to be towards those, who don’t keep to or obey those rules. Then those ones have to be fought as enemies whether they are clear or covered with hypocrisy and deceit. There was a great difference between the monotheists (the Jews and the Christians) and the polytheists or the unbelievers. The polytheists and the unbelievers must be avoided and treated severely and there was no any way of being kind to them. It was these people, who were means by these Holy Quranic verses. Hence Abu Taalib, according to the thought of the evil-willed fabricators, was not one of the monotheists but was one of the polytheists and unbeliever; therefore he would be, according to their malicious thinking, among those, who must be avoided. [↑](#footnote-ref-248)
249. Al-Kashshaf, vol. 3, p. 115 (vol. 4, p. 275) [↑](#footnote-ref-249)
250. Al-Mustafa is one of the Prophet’s surnames. Refer to Al-Hujja, p. 24, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 12, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 50, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 206, al-Ghadeer, vol. 3, p. 99, vol. 7, pp. 379, 389 and Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 140. [↑](#footnote-ref-250)
251. Al-Hujja, p. 15, Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 11, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 32, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 388 [↑](#footnote-ref-251)
252. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 388, al-Abbas, p. 18, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 200 [↑](#footnote-ref-252)
253. Al-Hujja, p. 23, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 388 [↑](#footnote-ref-253)
254. Ibid, p. 389, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 200 [↑](#footnote-ref-254)
255. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 370, 389, Al-Hujja, p. 23, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-255)
256. Holy Quran, 9:114 [↑](#footnote-ref-256)
257. Az-Zamakhshari said: “The name of this Abdullah was Hubab bin Abdullah bin Ubayy but the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) changed it into Abdullah and said: Hubab is a name of the Satan.” [↑](#footnote-ref-257)
258. Az-Zamakhshari said: “When Abdullah bin Ubayy (the father of the Abdullah) wanted to enter Medina, his son objected him and said to him: “Go back! By Allah, you won’t enter Medina unless you say: The Messenger of Allah is the most honoured and I am the meanest.” He was still captive under his son’s control until the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) ordered to be freed. It was also said that he said to his father: “If you don’t declare that all honour is for Allah and His Messenger, I will kill you.” His father said: “Woe unto you! Do you do that?” He said: “Yes, I do.” When he saw that his son was determined, he said; “I witness that honour is for Allah, his Messenger and the believers.” Then the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) said to Abdullah (the son): “May Allah reward you with all goodness.” [↑](#footnote-ref-258)
259. Refer to ibnul Aseer’s Tareekh, vol. 2, pp. 131-132, at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 2, pp. 260-263, al-Kashshaf, vol. 2, pp. 461-462 (vol .4, pp. 423-424), Tafseer Ali bin Ibrahim, pp. 680-682, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 28, pp. 85-87. [↑](#footnote-ref-259)
260. Refer to Waq’at Siffeen, pp. 599-600 and ibnul Aseer’s Tareekh, vol. 3, p. 165. [↑](#footnote-ref-260)
261. Waq’at Siffeen, p. 308 [↑](#footnote-ref-261)
262. Waq’at Siffeen, p. 597 [↑](#footnote-ref-262)
263. Ahlul Bayt (a.s.): The Prophet’s progeny. [↑](#footnote-ref-263)
264. Imam Sajjad (a.s.) was the fourth Imam of the Shia. His full name was Ali bin al-Husain (a.s.) bin Ali bin Abu Taalib. [↑](#footnote-ref-264)
265. She was Imam Ali (a.s.)’s mother. Bint means the daughter of. [↑](#footnote-ref-265)
266. Al-Hujja, p. 24, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 76, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 381, 390-391, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, pp. 136-37 [↑](#footnote-ref-266)
267. He was the son of Imam Sajjad (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-267)
268. Abdullah and Aamena were the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)’s father and mother. [↑](#footnote-ref-268)
269. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 311, Al-Hujja, p. 18, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 23, 76, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 381, 391, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-269)
270. He was the son of Imam Baqir (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-270)
271. The Progeny of Ali bin Abu Taalib (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-271)
272. Al-Hujja, pp. 17, 15, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 381, 391, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 191, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-272)
273. Al-Hujja, p. 17, Sheikhul Abtah, pp. 23, 75, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 394 [↑](#footnote-ref-273)
274. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 392 [↑](#footnote-ref-274)
275. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-275)
276. Al-Hujja, p. 25, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 395 [↑](#footnote-ref-276)
277. Imam Kazim (a.s.) was the son of Imam Sadiq (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-277)
278. It was though that Abu Taalib was a guardian of the previous Prophet (Jesus Christ (a.s.)). He had the precepts, which he had to deliver to the next Holy Prophet (Muhammad [s.a.w.a.]). [↑](#footnote-ref-278)
279. Al-Abbas, p. 18, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 395 [↑](#footnote-ref-279)
280. He was the son of Imam Kazim (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-280)
281. Holy Quran, 4:115 [↑](#footnote-ref-281)
282. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 311, Al-Hujja, p. 16, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 381, 396, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 189, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 (without mentioning what was after the Quranic verse). [↑](#footnote-ref-282)
283. Holy Quran, 33:57 [↑](#footnote-ref-283)
284. Holy Quran, 9:61 [↑](#footnote-ref-284)
285. As-Sawaaequl Mohreqa, p. 111 [↑](#footnote-ref-285)
286. He was the eleventh Imam of the Shia. [↑](#footnote-ref-286)
287. Al-Hujja, p. 115, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 368 [↑](#footnote-ref-287)
288. Holy Quran, 9:26 [↑](#footnote-ref-288)
289. Holy Quran, 9:40 [↑](#footnote-ref-289)
290. Holy Quran, 3:124 [↑](#footnote-ref-290)
291. Holy Quran, 3:125 [↑](#footnote-ref-291)
292. Holy Quran, 8:9 [↑](#footnote-ref-292)
293. We began our book with the verses talking about the believer of The Pharaoh’s people because they had a similarity to our subject. [↑](#footnote-ref-293)
294. Holy Quran, 33:33 [↑](#footnote-ref-294)
295. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 71, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 370, 401, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-295)
296. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 71, 73, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 399, 401, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-296)
297. Al-Hujja, p. 94, 115, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 397 [↑](#footnote-ref-297)
298. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 399 [↑](#footnote-ref-298)
299. Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 31 [↑](#footnote-ref-299)
300. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 314, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 337, Al-Hujja, p. 54, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 10, The Theses of al-jahidh, p. 32. [↑](#footnote-ref-300)
301. The Theses of al-Jahiz, p. 32 [↑](#footnote-ref-301)
302. Taqqayya means: (“self-protection”), in Islam, the practice of concealing one’s belief and foregoing ordinary religious duties when under threat of death or injury to oneself or one’s fellow Muslims.

     b) The Theses of al-Jahiz, p. 51 [↑](#footnote-ref-302)
303. The Theses of al-Jahiz, p. 5 [↑](#footnote-ref-303)
304. Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 10-11 [↑](#footnote-ref-304)
305. Tazkeratul Khawaas, p. 11 [↑](#footnote-ref-305)
306. It is one of the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.)’s Surname [↑](#footnote-ref-306)
307. Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, pp. 194-195 [↑](#footnote-ref-307)
308. Al-Fitnatul Kubra: Usmaan, p. 151 [↑](#footnote-ref-308)
309. We wished if the Professor had referred to the source of this saying of ibn Khaldoon [↑](#footnote-ref-309)
310. Abu Taalib; the Sheikh of the Hashemites, p. 5-6 [↑](#footnote-ref-310)
311. Ibid, p. 7 [↑](#footnote-ref-311)
312. Abu Taalib; the Sheikh of the Hashemites, p. 89 [↑](#footnote-ref-312)
313. Imam Ali (a.s.); the Voice of the Human Justice, p. 34 (vol. 1, p. 154) [↑](#footnote-ref-313)
314. Imam Ali (a.s.); the Voice of the Human Justice, p. 54 (vol. 1, p. 55) [↑](#footnote-ref-314)
315. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-315)
316. Ibid, p. 56 [↑](#footnote-ref-316)
317. Ibid, p. 35 (vol. 1, p. 58) [↑](#footnote-ref-317)
318. Ibid, p. 59 [↑](#footnote-ref-318)
319. Ibid, p. 60 [↑](#footnote-ref-319)
320. Imam Ali (a.s.); the Voice of the Human Justice, p. 46 (vol. 1, p. 71) [↑](#footnote-ref-320)
321. The author of Sharh Nahjul Balagha [↑](#footnote-ref-321)
322. It was a group of people denying the existence of Allah the Creator and denying the resurrection after death. [↑](#footnote-ref-322)
323. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 39 [↑](#footnote-ref-323)
324. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, pp. 9-10 [↑](#footnote-ref-324)
325. Ibid vol. 3, p. 322 [↑](#footnote-ref-325)
326. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 47 [↑](#footnote-ref-326)
327. The fidelity of research (!!!) led Muhammad Abul Fazl Ibrahim to omit this word from the origin! Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 142, which was edited by this man! [↑](#footnote-ref-327)
328. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 305-318 [↑](#footnote-ref-328)
329. Ibid, p. 310 [↑](#footnote-ref-329)
330. Ibid, pp. 310-311 [↑](#footnote-ref-330)
331. He was Muhammad bin Abdullah bin al-Hasan bin Imam Hasan bin Ali bin Abu Taalib (a.s.). [↑](#footnote-ref-331)
332. He was an Abbasid caliph [↑](#footnote-ref-332)
333. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 317 [↑](#footnote-ref-333)
334. Refer to at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 6, p. 196. You find it in al-Kaamil by ibnul Aseer, vol. 5, p. 5 with some difference and in Muhadharat Tareekhul Umam -the Abbasid state (lectures on the history of the nations), p. 65 in a different way. Al-Mobarrid mentioned this letter in his book al-Kaamil vol. 3, pp. 1274-1275 but he didn’t mention anything of this passage [↑](#footnote-ref-334)
335. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 81 [↑](#footnote-ref-335)
336. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 6, p. 195 [↑](#footnote-ref-336)
337. It was mentioned in al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 329 that Muhammad bin Yahya bin Razeen al-Maseesi was a liar fabricating traditions. So was mentioned in Meezaanul Eatedaal vol. 3, p. 147 [↑](#footnote-ref-337)
338. Meezaanul Eatedaal vol. 3, pp. 146-148 [↑](#footnote-ref-338)
339. Meezaanul Eatedaal vol. 3, p. 31 [↑](#footnote-ref-339)
340. Ibn Abul Hadeed said: ... I am the son of the evil ... whereas the others said: ... I am the son of the best of the evil... [↑](#footnote-ref-340)
341. Refer to at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 6, p. 197, al-Kaamil, vol. 5, p. 6, Mohaazaratul Umam – the Abbasid state, p. 66, al-Kaamil fil Logha, p. 1277,3 [↑](#footnote-ref-341)
342. Holy Quran, 26:227 [↑](#footnote-ref-342)
343. This question was just for arguing, otherwise there was no any way of comparison between Abu Taalib and these two wicked unbelievers at all [↑](#footnote-ref-343)
344. Refer to Nasab Quraysh, pp. 53, 227 and Sheikhul Abtah, p. 82 [↑](#footnote-ref-344)
345. The reality showed that the letter was fabricated or at least some statements were inserted into it just for defame and disgrace and not for proudness. It was the unjust policy that inserted such lies to assist the Abbasid rule [↑](#footnote-ref-345)
346. The progeny of Abu Taalib [↑](#footnote-ref-346)
347. It was the book Al-Hujja Ala As-Saaheb Elaa Takfeer Abu Taalib by Sayyed Shamsuddeen. It was one of our references in this book [↑](#footnote-ref-347)
348. Abd Manaf was the name of Abu Taalib [↑](#footnote-ref-348)
349. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, pp. 317-318 [↑](#footnote-ref-349)
350. Holy Quran, 6:25-27 [↑](#footnote-ref-350)
351. Az-Zamakhsari said in his book al-Kashshaaf, vol. 1, p. 447 (vol. 2, p. 10) when explaining these verses: “It was mentioned that Abu Sufyan, al-Waleed, an-Nazr, Otba, Shayba, Abu Jahl and their likes gathered to listen to the Prophet’s recitation of the Holy Quran. They said to an-Nadhr: O Abu Qotaiba! What is Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) saying? He said: I swear by Him, Who made it (the Holy Kaaba) as his House. I don’t know what he says. He just moves his tongue and tells of the myths of the ancient people.” ... until az-Zamakhshari said: “... then this verse was revealed ...” It was also mentioned by al-Bayzawi in his Tafseer, vol. 2, p. 184 and Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 33 [↑](#footnote-ref-351)
352. Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer, vol. 2, p. 127, al-Ghadeer, vol. 3, p. 8 [↑](#footnote-ref-352)
353. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 398 and Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 34 [↑](#footnote-ref-353)
354. Is’aful Mubta’, p. 2 and Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 34 [↑](#footnote-ref-354)
355. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 34, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, p. 38 [↑](#footnote-ref-355)
356. Mursal is a tradition narrated without a series of narrators or with incomplete series of narrators or the narrators are unknown [↑](#footnote-ref-356)
357. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 34 [↑](#footnote-ref-357)
358. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-358)
359. Jarh means proving the unreliability and untruthfulness of a certain person, who narrates prophetic traditions. Ta’deel means proving that a certain person, who narrates prophetic traditions, is reliable and truthful [↑](#footnote-ref-359)
360. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 38, Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 468 [↑](#footnote-ref-360)
361. vol. 35, pp. 137-138 [↑](#footnote-ref-361)
362. Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, pp. 142-148 [↑](#footnote-ref-362)
363. Ibid, p. 141 [↑](#footnote-ref-363)
364. Zaydiyya was a sect of Shi’ite Muslims owing allegiance to Zayd bin Ali, grandson of Imam Husain (a.s.). Refer to Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, pp. 139-141 [↑](#footnote-ref-364)
365. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 4 from Tahzeeb at-Tahzeeb, vol 2, p. 179 [↑](#footnote-ref-365)
366. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 26 [↑](#footnote-ref-366)
367. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 3 [↑](#footnote-ref-367)
368. Ibid, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 35 [↑](#footnote-ref-368)
369. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 3 [↑](#footnote-ref-369)
370. Ibn Abbas was Abu Taalib’s nephew too [↑](#footnote-ref-370)
371. Under the title of (the sayings of the companions and others) [↑](#footnote-ref-371)
372. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 3 [↑](#footnote-ref-372)
373. vol. 4, p. 28 [↑](#footnote-ref-373)
374. vol. 2, p. 27 [↑](#footnote-ref-374)
375. It was also mentioned in Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 7, p. 36 narrated by ibn Abbas, Muhammad bin al-Hanafiyya, al-Hasan, as-Saddiy, Qatada and Mujahid [↑](#footnote-ref-375)
376. vol. 2, p. 1 [↑](#footnote-ref-376)
377. vol. 1, p. 448 (vol. 2, p. 10) [↑](#footnote-ref-377)
378. vol. 2, p. 103 [↑](#footnote-ref-378)
379. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, pp. 7-8 [↑](#footnote-ref-379)
380. Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 98, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer, vol. 2, p. 12 [↑](#footnote-ref-380)
381. Holy Quran, 9:113 [↑](#footnote-ref-381)
382. Holy Quran, 28:56 [↑](#footnote-ref-382)
383. Al-Bukhari’s Saheeh, vol. 2, p. 201, vol. 3, p. 87 [↑](#footnote-ref-383)
384. Al-Bukhari’s Saheeh, vol. 3, p. 107 [↑](#footnote-ref-384)
385. Muslim’s Saheeh, vol. 1, p. 40 [↑](#footnote-ref-385)
386. Ibid, p. 41 [↑](#footnote-ref-386)
387. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-387)
388. A city in Syria [↑](#footnote-ref-388)
389. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, pp. 84-86 [↑](#footnote-ref-389)
390. Ibid, p. 85 [↑](#footnote-ref-390)
391. Ibid vol. 1, p. 70 [↑](#footnote-ref-391)
392. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 86 [↑](#footnote-ref-392)
393. Ibid vol. 2, p. 126 [↑](#footnote-ref-393)
394. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 188. This Abdur Razzaq defamed Usmaan as it was mentioned in al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 252. [↑](#footnote-ref-394)
395. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 188 [↑](#footnote-ref-395)
396. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 70 [↑](#footnote-ref-396)
397. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 188 [↑](#footnote-ref-397)
398. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-398)
399. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 388 [↑](#footnote-ref-399)
400. Ibid vol. 1, pp. 447-448. It was mentioned in al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 204: “...Shoaib bin Amr at-Tahhan. Al-Azdi said about him that he was a liar.” [↑](#footnote-ref-400)
401. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 358 [↑](#footnote-ref-401)
402. Refer to Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 126 [↑](#footnote-ref-402)
403. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 358 [↑](#footnote-ref-403)
404. Ibid, p. 371 [↑](#footnote-ref-404)
405. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 219 [↑](#footnote-ref-405)
406. If we compared with what was said about Harmala and what was said about bin Wahab, the phrase “one hundred and twenty thousand traditions” wouldn’t go with the talk about Harmala [↑](#footnote-ref-406)
407. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 86 [↑](#footnote-ref-407)
408. Ibid vol. 3, pp. 336-340 [↑](#footnote-ref-408)
409. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 370 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, pp. 9, 56 [↑](#footnote-ref-409)
410. It was just a metonymy because he was not his nephew [↑](#footnote-ref-410)
411. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 370, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 9, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, pp. 78-79 [↑](#footnote-ref-411)
412. Rak’a is a unit of prayer [↑](#footnote-ref-412)
413. Sheikhul Abtah vol. 1, p. 370, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 9, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, pp. 72-73 [↑](#footnote-ref-413)
414. There was a tradition, in which it was pretended that the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had promised ten certain persons of being among the people of Paradise [↑](#footnote-ref-414)
415. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 38, ibn Kaseer’s Tareekh, vol. 8, pp. 139-140 [↑](#footnote-ref-415)
416. Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, p. 80 [↑](#footnote-ref-416)
417. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-417)
418. One of the earliest Islamic sects to believe in the postponement of judgement on committers of serious sins, recognizing Allah alone as being able to decide whether or not a Muslim had lost his faith [↑](#footnote-ref-418)
419. Al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen, vol. 1, p. 302 [↑](#footnote-ref-419)
420. Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 35, p. 80 [↑](#footnote-ref-420)
421. Nasab Quraysh, p. 35 [↑](#footnote-ref-421)
422. Al-Issaba, vol. 3, p. 401 [↑](#footnote-ref-422)
423. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 77 [↑](#footnote-ref-423)
424. Ibid, pp. 159-160 [↑](#footnote-ref-424)
425. Ibid, p. 37, Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 59 [↑](#footnote-ref-425)
426. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 289 [↑](#footnote-ref-426)
427. Yahya bin Saeed al-Qattan might be another one, other than Saeed bin Yahya, who narrated traditions from Yazeed [↑](#footnote-ref-427)
428. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 68 [↑](#footnote-ref-428)
429. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 252 [↑](#footnote-ref-429)
430. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 318 [↑](#footnote-ref-430)
431. Abu Hazim al-Ashjaee was just a surname [↑](#footnote-ref-431)
432. Refer to al-Issaba and al-Istee’ab, vol. 4, p. 200 an Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’, vol. 2, p. 47 [↑](#footnote-ref-432)
433. Al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 202 [↑](#footnote-ref-433)
434. Musnad is a book of Hadith [↑](#footnote-ref-434)
435. Al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 202, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 115, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’, vol. 2, p. 453 [↑](#footnote-ref-435)
436. Al-Issaba vol. 4, p. 205 [↑](#footnote-ref-436)
437. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 358 [↑](#footnote-ref-437)
438. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 359 [↑](#footnote-ref-438)
439. Sayer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 442 [↑](#footnote-ref-439)
440. Dous was the tribe of Abu Hurayra [↑](#footnote-ref-440)
441. Sayer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 425 [↑](#footnote-ref-441)
442. Ibid vol. 1, p. 360 [↑](#footnote-ref-442)
443. Sayer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 434, al-Ghadeer, vol. 6, p. 295 [↑](#footnote-ref-443)
444. Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 104, Futooh al-Buldan, p. 112-114, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 440, Abu Hurayra, p. 15 and al-Ghadeer, vol. 6, p. 271 [↑](#footnote-ref-444)
445. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 6, p. 295, In Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, pp. 433-434 something like that [↑](#footnote-ref-445)
446. Ibid, In Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, pp. 433-434 something like that [↑](#footnote-ref-446)
447. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 438 [↑](#footnote-ref-447)
448. As for his traditions, which were of another kind, we mention here an example to know the reality of this man. Ash-Shafi’iy mentioned a tradition from at-Tabari that Abu Hurayra had said: “Once I saw Hind (Mo’awiya’s mother) in Mecca. Her face was like a full moon. Her buttocks were like a sitting man. There was a little boy with her ... etc.” Refer to Mo’awiya fil Mizn (Mo’awiya in the scales), p. 159.

     What led him to describe the beauty of Mo’awiya’s mother and her big buttocks whereas he was talking about the future of Mo’awiya and that it was thought that he would the master of his people. His mother Hind said: “If he doesn’t rule save his people, may Allah kill him.” Really I don’t know why he said that! [↑](#footnote-ref-448)
449. Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 437 [↑](#footnote-ref-449)
450. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 438 [↑](#footnote-ref-450)
451. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360 [↑](#footnote-ref-451)
452. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-452)
453. Abu Hurayra, p. 39 [↑](#footnote-ref-453)
454. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360, Abu Hurayra, p. 39, al-Ghadeer, vol. 1, p. 204 [↑](#footnote-ref-454)
455. Tazkeratul Khawaas, pp. 91-92, al-Ghadeer, vol. 1, pp. 202, 302 [↑](#footnote-ref-455)
456. He meant Abu Hurayra. In Arabic hurayra means a small cat and sannoor also means a cat [↑](#footnote-ref-456)
457. At-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 4, p. 107, al-Kaamil fit-Tareekh, vol. 3, p. 193 [↑](#footnote-ref-457)
458. Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 439 [↑](#footnote-ref-458)
459. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360 [↑](#footnote-ref-459)
460. This was not the first time he became the wali of Medina. Before that, he had been appointed by Bisr bin Arta’a, who had been sent by Mo’awiya to wage raids against Medina during the caliphate of Imam Ali (a.s.). It was a dark disgraceful day for Medina; bloods were shed, dignities were violated and morals were trodden upon. In this black day a bitter seed was planted. One of its fruits was the day of (al-Harra).

     After the terrible crimes of Bisr in Medina, he said to the people: “I appointed Abu Hurayra as the wali so beware of objecting him!” Refer to Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 118, Abu Hurayra, p. 25, al-Ghadeer, vol. 11, p. 24, at-Tabari’s Tareekh, vol. 4, p. 107 and al-Kaamil, vol. 3, p. 193. [↑](#footnote-ref-460)
461. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 440 [↑](#footnote-ref-461)
462. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 360 [↑](#footnote-ref-462)
463. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-463)
464. Some sources mentioned that the companion of Abu Hurayra was Abu Darda’. Perhaps this event happened two times; one was with an-No’man and the other was with Abu Darda’.

     Some sources mentioned that the jurist companion Abdur Rahman bin Ghanam blamed Abu Hurayra and Abu Darda’ in Hims after they came back from Imam Ali (a.s.) as the Messenger of Mo’awiya. He said to them: “How wonder it was of you! How did you permit yourselves to invite Ali to make it (the caliphate) shura whereas you have known well that the Muhajireen, the Ansar and the people of Hijaz and Iraq had paid homage to Ali (a.s.) and you have known well that he, who like Ali (a.s.), was much better than who hated him and he, who paid homage to him, was much better than that, who didn’t pay homage?

     Then what did Mo’awiya have to do with shura whereas he was one of the Tulaqa’ (the freed captives of war), who had no right of the caliphate at all, besides that he and his father were among the chiefs of the Ahzab ‘the parties that fought against the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) in the battle of Ahzab’.” They felt sorry and repented. Refer to al-Istee’ab vol. 2, p. 417, al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 31, 331, Osadul Ghaba, vol. 3, p. 318.

     We don’t want to discuss this repent whether it was true or not or it was an imagination but we ponder about the mistakes and sins committed by Abu Hurayra after this repent such as obeying Mo’awiya so blindly in carrying out all his desires and fancies. The least of that was Abu Hurayra’s successive travels to Imam Ali (a.s.) asking him that impudent and disgraceful ask; to deliver Mo’awiya the killers of Usmaan as a first step to move Imam Ali (a.s.) from his divine position; the caliphate, besides his fabricated traditions against Imam Ali (a.s.) and his father. But as for Abu Darda’, we don’t have anything to do with him save to mention his saying: “I recreate my soul with something of sins to be more determined in the way of rightness.” Refer to al-Kaamil by al-Mobarrid, vol. 2, p. 668. [↑](#footnote-ref-464)
465. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 1, p. 213, Abu Taalib, pp. 22-23. Here we quoted the comment of Imam Sharafudden, the author of the book (Abu Hurayra) about this event: “Imam Ali (a.s.) turned away from Abu Hurayra and didn’t talk to him because he thought that Abu Hurayra didn’t deserve any respect for he used his religion as a means to flatter Mo’awiya. Ameerul Mo’mineen (Ali) knew the plot of Mo’awiya behind sending these two men asking for the killers of Usmaan so he didn’t answer them about their request whether positively or negatively. In fact he turned away from their request and talked with an-No’man about another subject and this showed his intelligent policy.” [↑](#footnote-ref-465)
466. Abu Hurayra, p. 48, with reference to Hilyatul Awliya’ by Abu Na’eem, p. 381, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, pp. 429, 430, 442 [↑](#footnote-ref-466)
467. Al-Kaamil by al-Mobarrid, vol. 3, p. 1241 [↑](#footnote-ref-467)
468. Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 442 [↑](#footnote-ref-468)
469. Ibid, p. 430 [↑](#footnote-ref-469)
470. Ibid, p. 429 [↑](#footnote-ref-470)
471. Refer to Abu Hurayra by Sharafuddeen al-Aamily and Siyer A’lam an-Nubala [↑](#footnote-ref-471)
472. Al-Issaba, vol. 4, p. 203, Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 64, 423, 425, 436 [↑](#footnote-ref-472)
473. Abu Taalib died in Mecca three years before the hijra (migration) to Medina [↑](#footnote-ref-473)
474. Al-Bukhari’s Saheeh, vol. 3, p. 77, al-Kashshaf, vol. 1, p. 570 (vol. 2, p. 246), Ta’leeq Sharih al-Kashshaf, vol. 2, p. 188, al-Bayzawi’s Tafseer, vol. 2, p. 274, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 10, p. 5, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer, vol. 2, p. 331, al-Itqan, vol. 1, p. 27. It was mentioned in vol. 1, p. 26 that nothing was revealed of the Quran after this except its end. He (the author of al-Itqan) was surprised at the saying of ibnul Farass: “The sura was revealed in Medina except two verses ...” He said: “How wonder! How was that and it was said that this was the last thing to be revealed of the Holy Quran.” Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 10 [↑](#footnote-ref-474)
475. Holy Quran, 58:22 [↑](#footnote-ref-475)
476. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 10, al-Itqan vol. 1, p. 17 [↑](#footnote-ref-476)
477. Ibid as mentioned by Abu Hatim, al-Hakim, Abu Na’eem, al-Bayhaqi, ibn Kaseer in his Tafseer vol. 4, p. 329, ash-Shawkani in his Tafseer vol. 5, p. 189 [↑](#footnote-ref-477)
478. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 10 [↑](#footnote-ref-478)
479. Many of the interpreters referred to that. [↑](#footnote-ref-479)
480. Holy Quran, 4:144 [↑](#footnote-ref-480)
481. Al-Itqan vol. 1, p. 12 [↑](#footnote-ref-481)
482. Ibid, al-Bukhari’s Saheeh, vol. 3, p. 141, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 11 [↑](#footnote-ref-482)
483. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 11 [↑](#footnote-ref-483)
484. Ibid, al-Itqan, vol. 1, p. 26 [↑](#footnote-ref-484)
485. Holy Quran, 4:139 [↑](#footnote-ref-485)
486. Holy Quran, 3:28 [↑](#footnote-ref-486)
487. As-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, p. 225, Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 43, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer, vol. 1, p. 343 [↑](#footnote-ref-487)
488. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 11 [↑](#footnote-ref-488)
489. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-489)
490. Ibid with reference to al-Itqan, vol. 1, p. 17 [↑](#footnote-ref-490)
491. Holy Quran, 63:6 [↑](#footnote-ref-491)
492. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-492)
493. Holy Quran, 9:113-114 Refer to al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 12 to see the true tradition mentioned by at-Tabari, ibn Abu Shayba, Ahmad, at-Tirmizi, an-Nesaaee, Abu Ya’la, ibn Jareer, ibnul Munzir, ibn Abu Hatim, Abush Sheikh, al-Hakim, ibn Mardwayh and al-Bayhaqi. Refer to Sheikhul Abtah, p. 67, al-Itqan vol. 1, p. 34, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 158, Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 127, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 2, p. 393 and al-Kashshaf vol. 2, p. 247. [↑](#footnote-ref-493)
494. He was the uncle of Prophet Abraham (a.s.) and not his father but he brought him up and in Arabic the uncle was called as father metonymically. [↑](#footnote-ref-494)
495. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 13 from Asna al-Matalib, p. 17, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 67 [↑](#footnote-ref-495)
496. Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 158, Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 10, p. 150 [↑](#footnote-ref-496)
497. Aayaan ash-Shia, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 2, p. 394, al-Kashshaf vol. , p. 570 (vol. 2, p. 246) [↑](#footnote-ref-497)
498. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 13 from at-Tabari, al-Hakim, ibn Abul Hatim and al-Bayhaqi from ibn Mas’ood, Burayda, at-Tabari, ibn Mardwayh and at-Tabari from Akrima from ibn Abbas [↑](#footnote-ref-498)
499. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 13 from at-Tabari in his Tafseer vol. 1, p. 31 [↑](#footnote-ref-499)
500. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 3, p. 65, al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 13 [↑](#footnote-ref-500)
501. Al-Hudaybiyya was a place near Mecca in which the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) had concluded a covenant of peace with the polytheists [↑](#footnote-ref-501)
502. The margins of As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 193 [↑](#footnote-ref-502)
503. Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 127 from al-Hakim and al-Bayhaqi and others, Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 2, p. 393, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 72, al-Itqan vol. 1, p. 34 [↑](#footnote-ref-503)
504. An act of ablution that is required before the performance of certain actions such as prayer [↑](#footnote-ref-504)
505. Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 127 from Ahmad and ibn Mardwayh, He said too: “At-Tabari and ibn Mardwayh mentioned a tradition narrated by Ibn Abbas that when the Holy Prophet (s.a.w.a.) came back from the battle of Tabook, he travelled to Mecca to perform the minor hajj and he went to Asfan: “Ibn Kaseer mentioned something like that in his Tafseer vol. 2, p. 393-394 and commented: “This is a strange tradition and a surprising context.” [↑](#footnote-ref-505)
506. Al-Kashshaf vol. 1, p. 570 (vol. 2, p. 246), something like this was mentioned by al-Bayzawi in his Tafseer vol. 2, p. 298. [↑](#footnote-ref-506)
507. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 14 from Irshad as-Sari vol. 7, p. 270, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 126 [↑](#footnote-ref-507)
508. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 14 from at-Tabari’s Tafseer vol. 1, p. 131, Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 2, p. 394 [↑](#footnote-ref-508)
509. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 14 from ad-Durr al-Manthoor vol. 3, p. 283 [↑](#footnote-ref-509)
510. Ala Hamish as-Seerah vol. 1, p. 193, ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 2, p. 393 but this mentioned that the tomb was of the Prophet’s mother. [↑](#footnote-ref-510)
511. Ala Hamish as-Seerah vol. 1, p. 193 [↑](#footnote-ref-511)
512. Ala Hamish as-Seerah vol. 1, p. 193 [↑](#footnote-ref-512)
513. Al-Fitnatul Kubra: Usmaan, p. 151 [↑](#footnote-ref-513)
514. Ala Hamish as-Seerah vol. 1, p. 194 [↑](#footnote-ref-514)
515. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 14-15 from at-Tabari’s Tafseer vol. 11, p. 33 [↑](#footnote-ref-515)
516. A ritual wash in a certain manner according to the Sharia [↑](#footnote-ref-516)
517. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 15 from ibn Sa’d’s Tabaqat vol. 1, p. 105 and ad-Durr al-Mansoor vol. 3, p. 282 [↑](#footnote-ref-517)
518. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 15 from Ishaq bin Bishr and ibn Assakir in ad-Durr al-Mansoor vol. 3, p. 283 [↑](#footnote-ref-518)
519. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 15 from ad-Durr al-Mansoor [↑](#footnote-ref-519)
520. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 60, Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 1, p. 132 [↑](#footnote-ref-520)
521. As-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 60 [↑](#footnote-ref-521)
522. Aamena was the Prophet’s mother [↑](#footnote-ref-522)
523. With reference to the Quranic verses ‘And your turning over and over among those who prostrate themselves before Allah’ 26:219 and ‘Allah only desires to keep away the uncleanness from you, O people of the House! and to purify you a (through) purifying’ 33:33. [↑](#footnote-ref-523)
524. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 83, as-Seerah al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 388, as-Seerah al-Hishamiyya, vol. 2, p. 59, Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 523, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 312, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 73, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 136 [↑](#footnote-ref-524)
525. Refer to al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 17 about their names. Also they were mentioned in As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 77 [↑](#footnote-ref-525)
526. Holy Quran, 28:56 [↑](#footnote-ref-526)
527. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 20 from ad-Durr al-Mansoor vol. 5, p. 133 [↑](#footnote-ref-527)
528. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 370 [↑](#footnote-ref-528)
529. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 202, vol. 8, pp. 20, 143-144 [↑](#footnote-ref-529)
530. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 143 [↑](#footnote-ref-530)
531. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 208, vol. 8, p. 21 [↑](#footnote-ref-531)
532. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 90 [↑](#footnote-ref-532)
533. Al-Issaba vol. 2, p. 322 [↑](#footnote-ref-533)
534. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 21 from ad-Durr al-Mansoor vol. 5, p. 133 [↑](#footnote-ref-534)
535. Al-Issaba vol. 2, p. 338 [↑](#footnote-ref-535)
536. Holy Quran, 28:55-57 [↑](#footnote-ref-536)
537. Holy Quran, 2:272 [↑](#footnote-ref-537)
538. Holy Quran, 16:37 [↑](#footnote-ref-538)
539. Holy Quran, 4:88 [↑](#footnote-ref-539)
540. Holy Quran, 10:43 [↑](#footnote-ref-540)
541. Holy Quran, 14:4 [↑](#footnote-ref-541)
542. Holy Quran, 47:31 [↑](#footnote-ref-542)
543. Holy Quran, 18:17 [↑](#footnote-ref-543)
544. Holy Quran, 10:108 [↑](#footnote-ref-544)
545. Al-Hujja, p. 29, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 159 [↑](#footnote-ref-545)
546. Holy Quran, 3:28 [↑](#footnote-ref-546)
547. Al-Hujja, p. 30, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 259 [↑](#footnote-ref-547)
548. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 69 [↑](#footnote-ref-548)
549. Al-Kashshaf vol. 2, p. 167 (vol. 3, p. 333), Majm’ul Bayan, vol. 20, p. 309, Asbaab an-Nozool, p. 169, Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 3, p. 395, al-Bayzawi’s Tafseer vol. 4, p. 9 [↑](#footnote-ref-549)
550. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 69 [↑](#footnote-ref-550)
551. Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 3, p. 395 [↑](#footnote-ref-551)
552. Al-Kashshaf vol. 3, p. 332 [↑](#footnote-ref-552)
553. Al-Kashshaf vol. 3, pp. 332-333 [↑](#footnote-ref-553)
554. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 22 from al-Qurtubi’s Tafseer vol. 13, p. 299 [↑](#footnote-ref-554)
555. Saheeh of al-Bukhari and Saheeh of Muslim [↑](#footnote-ref-555)
556. Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 3, p. 349, He meant that Abu Taalib loved Muhammad as his nephew not as the Prophet [↑](#footnote-ref-556)
557. Ibn Kaseer’s Tafseer vol. 3, p. 349 [↑](#footnote-ref-557)
558. Asbaab an-Nozool [↑](#footnote-ref-558)
559. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 22 from al-Qurtoobi’s Tafseer vol. 13, p. 299 and ad-Durr al-Mansoor vol. 5, p. 133 [↑](#footnote-ref-559)
560. Holy Quran, 29:53 [↑](#footnote-ref-560)
561. Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 20, pp. 207-208 [↑](#footnote-ref-561)
562. Al-Isteaab vol. 3, p. 61 [↑](#footnote-ref-562)
563. Majma’ul Bayan, vol. 23, p. 163 [↑](#footnote-ref-563)
564. Al-Seera al-Halabiyya, vol. 1, p. 74, Al-Hujja, p. 32, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 78 [↑](#footnote-ref-564)
565. Kitabi is a follower of judaism or Christianity [↑](#footnote-ref-565)
566. When referring to the sources concerning this subject, three opinions appeared [↑](#footnote-ref-566)
567. Zihzah means shallowness [↑](#footnote-ref-567)
568. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 1, p. 34-135 [↑](#footnote-ref-568)
569. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-569)
570. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 1, p. 134-135 [↑](#footnote-ref-570)
571. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-571)
572. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-572)
573. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-573)
574. Al-Bukhari’s Saheeh vol. 2, p. 201 [↑](#footnote-ref-574)
575. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-575)
576. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-576)
577. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 9, p. 295 from Tahzeeb at-Tahzeeb vol. 7, p. 41 [↑](#footnote-ref-577)
578. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 96 [↑](#footnote-ref-578)
579. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 9, p. 270 [↑](#footnote-ref-579)
580. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 96 [↑](#footnote-ref-580)
581. Dalaael as-Sidq, vol. 1, p. 45 [↑](#footnote-ref-581)
582. Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 4, p. 222 [↑](#footnote-ref-582)
583. “Bint” means the daughter of and “bin” means the son of [↑](#footnote-ref-583)
584. It was the surname of the judge Abdul Malik bin Omayr. Refer to Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 151. [↑](#footnote-ref-584)
585. Al-Bayan wat-Tabyeen vol. 3, p. 371 [↑](#footnote-ref-585)
586. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 395 [↑](#footnote-ref-586)
587. There were a long period between ash-Shi’bi and Aaesha [↑](#footnote-ref-587)
588. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 345 [↑](#footnote-ref-588)
589. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 75 [↑](#footnote-ref-589)
590. Ibid, p. 314 [↑](#footnote-ref-590)
591. Ibid vol. 2, p. 33 [↑](#footnote-ref-591)
592. Ibid vol. 2, p. 302 [↑](#footnote-ref-592)
593. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 203 [↑](#footnote-ref-593)
594. Ibid, vol. 1, p. 277 [↑](#footnote-ref-594)
595. Ibid, vol. 1, p. 478 [↑](#footnote-ref-595)
596. Holy Quran, 7:143 [↑](#footnote-ref-596)
597. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 1, p. 278 [↑](#footnote-ref-597)
598. Ibid, p. 228 [↑](#footnote-ref-598)
599. Ibid, p. 28 [↑](#footnote-ref-599)
600. Ibid, p. 279 [↑](#footnote-ref-600)
601. Ibid, pp. 168-172 [↑](#footnote-ref-601)
602. Ibid, p. 168 [↑](#footnote-ref-602)
603. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 3, p. 370 [↑](#footnote-ref-603)
604. Ibid, p. 162 [↑](#footnote-ref-604)
605. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 74 [↑](#footnote-ref-605)
606. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 89 [↑](#footnote-ref-606)
607. Ibid, p. 42 [↑](#footnote-ref-607)
608. Ibid, p. 42 [↑](#footnote-ref-608)
609. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, p. 135 [↑](#footnote-ref-609)
610. Sheikhul Abtah, p. 75 [↑](#footnote-ref-610)
611. Meezaanul Eatedaal, vol. 2, pp. 137, 139 [↑](#footnote-ref-611)
612. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 84 [↑](#footnote-ref-612)
613. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 84 [↑](#footnote-ref-613)
614. Holy Quran, 2:162, 3:88 [↑](#footnote-ref-614)
615. Holy Quran, 2:86 [↑](#footnote-ref-615)
616. Holy Quran, 6:70 [↑](#footnote-ref-616)
617. Holy Quran, 16:85 [↑](#footnote-ref-617)
618. Holy Quran, 35:36 [↑](#footnote-ref-618)
619. Holy Quran, 40:49-50 [↑](#footnote-ref-619)
620. Holy Quran, 74:40-48 [↑](#footnote-ref-620)
621. Holy Quran, 40:18 [↑](#footnote-ref-621)
622. Al-Bukhari’s Saheeh vol. 4, p. 84 [↑](#footnote-ref-622)
623. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-623)
624. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, pp. 370-371 from two sources, vol. 8, p. 24 from six sources [↑](#footnote-ref-624)
625. Sihah is the plural form of Saheeh. Saheeh is the book, in which the prophetic traditions are collected. [↑](#footnote-ref-625)
626. Muslims Saheeh, vol. 1, p. 41, al-Ghadeer, vol. 9, pp. 64-65, vol. 10, pp. 19-120 [↑](#footnote-ref-626)
627. Siyer A’lam an-Nubala’ vol. 2, p. 295 [↑](#footnote-ref-627)
628. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 24 from al-Hafidh al-Munthiri in his book al-Targheeb wet-Terheeb vol. 4, pp. 150-158 [↑](#footnote-ref-628)
629. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 8, p. 24 [↑](#footnote-ref-629)
630. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-630)
631. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-631)
632. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 7, p. 59 [↑](#footnote-ref-632)
633. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 1, p. 36, al-Bukhari’s Saheeh vol. 4, p. 84, al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 283 [↑](#footnote-ref-633)
634. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. , p. 137, al-Bukhari’s Saheeh vol. 4, p. 84 [↑](#footnote-ref-634)
635. It was the great cemetery of the Muslims in Medina [↑](#footnote-ref-635)
636. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 283 from at-Tabarani in his al-Kabeer vol. 4, p. 13, There are many other traditions mentioned in al-Ghadeer, talking about such numbers that will enter into Paradise without being inquired from other towns; from between the wall of Hims and az-Zaytoon there will be seventy thousands, from Kufa the same number and from Hims ninety thousands! [↑](#footnote-ref-636)
637. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 10, p. 120 from Majma’ az-Zawaaed vol. 10, p. 405 [↑](#footnote-ref-637)
638. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 5, p. 283 [↑](#footnote-ref-638)
639. Ibid, vol. 10, p. 261 from Osadul Ghaba vol. 1, p. 134, It was mentioned in al-Issaba vol. 1, p. 89 but the author didn’t mention that it was Mo’awiya, who had held that dark day! Refer to al-Istee’ab vol. 1, p. 37 about the tradition narrated by Onays [↑](#footnote-ref-639)
640. As-Sawaaequl Mohreqa, p. 65, al-Ghadeer, vol. 9, p. 248 and in, p. 303 there is another tradition of the same kind [↑](#footnote-ref-640)
641. It means that one cannot know all what there is inside the others [↑](#footnote-ref-641)
642. Holy Quran, 4:94 [↑](#footnote-ref-642)
643. Holy Quran, 53:3-4 [↑](#footnote-ref-643)
644. Eeman Abu Taalib, p. 20, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 11, Al-Hujja, p. 80, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 85 [↑](#footnote-ref-644)
645. Holy Quran, 114:2 [↑](#footnote-ref-645)
646. Ahmed was another name of Prophet Muhammad (s.a.w.a.) [↑](#footnote-ref-646)
647. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, Al-Hujja, p. 81, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 80. Al-Mobarrid mentioned these verses in his al-Kaamil vol. 3, p. 919 thinking that they were Imam Ali (a.s.)’s poetry because Imam Ali (a.s.) used to recite them. His ascribing these verses to Imam Ali (a.s.) was without evidence. It was just because that Imam Ali (a.s.) often recited them. It was something natural of Imam Ali (a.s.); firstly to show the faithfulness of his father through reciting his poetry and secondly to refresh the memory of his kind father. [↑](#footnote-ref-647)
648. Mahmood means praiseworthy [↑](#footnote-ref-648)
649. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 315, Al-Hujja, p. 75, Mo’jamul Qoboor, vol. 1, p. 197, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 335, Divan Abu Taalib, p. 12, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 147 [↑](#footnote-ref-649)
650. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 85 [↑](#footnote-ref-650)
651. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 310, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 55, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 135 [↑](#footnote-ref-651)
652. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 310, Sheikhul Abtah, p. 55, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 135 [↑](#footnote-ref-652)
653. Sharh Nahjul Balagha, vol. 3, p. 310, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 135. [↑](#footnote-ref-653)
654. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 87, al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 382, Aayaan ash-Shia, vol. 39, p. 135 [↑](#footnote-ref-654)
655. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 383 [↑](#footnote-ref-655)
656. Ibid. [↑](#footnote-ref-656)
657. Al-Ghadeer, vol. 7, p. 382 [↑](#footnote-ref-657)
658. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-658)
659. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-659)
660. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-660)
661. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-661)
662. Muslim’s Saheeh vol. 1, pp. 48-49 [↑](#footnote-ref-662)
663. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 96 [↑](#footnote-ref-663)
664. Ala Hamish as-Seerah, p. 136, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 73, 76, 95 [↑](#footnote-ref-664)
665. Behaarul Anwaar, vol. 6, p. 57, As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, pp. 73, 76, Murooj az-Zahab vol. 1, pp. 69-70 [↑](#footnote-ref-665)
666. Holy Quran, 55:60 [↑](#footnote-ref-666)
667. Holy Quran, 9:61 [↑](#footnote-ref-667)
668. Holy Quran, 33:53 [↑](#footnote-ref-668)
669. Holy Quran, 33:57 [↑](#footnote-ref-669)
670. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 77 [↑](#footnote-ref-670)
671. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-671)
672. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-672)
673. Ibid [↑](#footnote-ref-673)
674. We don’t think that there was any kind of disagreement upon this matter. It had been proved by the Holy Quran and the sayings of many scholars that the Prophet’s parents and grandparents were faithful until they reached the first faithful Adam (a.s.) [↑](#footnote-ref-674)
675. There was no any doubt that this would harm the Prophet (s.a.w.a.) not because of the justification of as-Suyooti but because it would wrong those faithful ones, who were the source of faithfulness and Monotheism [↑](#footnote-ref-675)
676. As-Seerah an-Nabawiyya, vol. 1, p. 76 [↑](#footnote-ref-676)
677. No doubt that a child will be affected by the manners of the house, in which he is brought up, and that he/she is ready to initiate the one, who brings him/her up, and definitely that one will be considered as his/her example [↑](#footnote-ref-677)
678. Holy Quran, 33:58 [↑](#footnote-ref-678)